Introduction

Congratulations on your selection of the 2010 Acura RL. We are certain you will be pleased with your purchase of one of the finest luxury vehicles in the world.

One of the best ways to enhance the enjoyment of your new vehicle is to read this manual. In it, you will learn how to operate its driving controls and convenience items. Afterwards, keep this owner's manual in your vehicle so you can refer to it at any time.

Several warranties protect your new vehicle. Read the warranty booklet thoroughly so you understand the coverages and are aware of your rights and responsibilities.

Maintaining your vehicle according to the maintenance minder shown in the instrument panel helps to keep your driving trouble-free while it preserves your investment. When your vehicle needs maintenance, keep in mind that your dealer's staff is specially trained in servicing the many systems unique to your vehicle. Your dealer is dedicated to your satisfaction and will be pleased to answer any questions and concerns.

As you read this manual, you will find information that is preceded by a NOTICE symbol. This information is intended to help you avoid damage to your vehicle, other property, or the environment.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Introduction

California Proposition 65 Warning

WARNING: This product contains or emits chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm.

Event Data Recorders

This vehicle is equipped with one or more devices commonly referred to as event data recorders. These devices record front seat belt use, front passenger seat occupancy, airbag deployment data, and the failure of any airbag system component. This data belongs to the vehicle owner and may not be accessed by anyone else except as legally required or with the permission of the vehicle owner.

Service Diagnostic Recorders

This vehicle is equipped with service-related devices that record information about powertrain performance. The data can be used to verify emissions law requirements and/or help technicians diagnose and solve service problems. It may also be combined with data from other sources for research purposes, but it remains confidential.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Main Menu

A Few Words About Safety

Your safety, and the safety of others, is very important. And operating this vehicle safely is an important responsibility.

To help you make informed decisions about safety, we have provided operating procedures and other information on labels and in this manual. This information alerts you to potential hazards that could hurt you or others.

Of course, it is not practical or possible to warn you about all the hazards associated with operating or maintaining your vehicle. You must use your own good judgement.

You will find this important safety information in a variety of forms, including:

- **Safety Labels** — on the vehicle.
- **Safety Messages** — preceded by a safety alert symbol ⚠ and one of three signal words: **DANGER**, **WARNING**, or **CAUTION**. These signal words mean:

⚠ DANGER	You WILL be KILLED or SERIOUSLY HURT if you don't follow instructions.
⚠ WARNING	You CAN be KILLED or SERIOUSLY HURT if you don't follow instructions.
⚠ CAUTION	You CAN be HURT if you don't follow instructions.

- **Safety Headings** — such as Important Safety Reminders or Important Safety Precautions.
- **Safety Section** — such as Driver and Passenger Safety.
- **Instructions** — how to use this vehicle correctly and safely.

This entire book is filled with important safety information — please read it carefully.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Contents

Owner's Identification Form

Your Vehicle at a Glance (main controls) 4

Driver and Passenger Safety (seat belts, SRS, and child protection) 7

Instruments and Controls (indicators, gauges, multi-information display, dashboard, and steering column) 59

Features (climate control, audio, steering wheel, security, cruise control, HomeLink®, and other convenience items) 203

Before Driving (fuel, vehicle break-in, and cargo loading) 377

Driving (engine and transmission operation) 395

Maintenance (minders, fluid checking, minor services, and vehicle storage) 437

Taking Care of the Unexpected (flat tire, jump starting, overheating, fuses) 487

Technical Information (vehicle specifications, tires, and emissions controls) 515

Warranty and Client Relations (U.S. and Canada only) (warranty and contact information) 531

Authorized Manuals (U.S. only) (how to order) 535

Index I

Service Information Summary (fluid capacities and tire pressures)

00X31-SJA-6500
© 2009 American Honda Motor Co., Inc. - All Rights Reserved

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

09/04/02 18:37:26 31SJA650 0007

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Overview of Contents

Contents
A convenient reference to the sections in this manual.

Your Vehicle at a Glance
A quick reference to the main controls in your vehicle.

Driver and Passenger Safety
Important information about the proper use and care of your vehicle's seat belts, an overview of the supplemental restraint system, and valuable information on how to protect children with child restraints.

Instruments and Controls
Explains the purpose of each instrument panel indicator and gauge, and how to use the controls on the dashboard and steering column.

Features
How to operate the climate control system, the audio system, and other convenience features.

Before Driving
What gasoline to use, how to break-in your new vehicle, and how to load luggage and other cargo.

Driving
The proper way to start the engine, shift the transmission, and park; plus what you need to know if you're planning to tow a trailer.

Maintenance
The maintenance minder shows you when you need to take your vehicle to the dealer for maintenance service. There is also a list of things to check and instructions on how to check them.

Taking Care of the Unexpected
This section covers several problems motorists sometimes experience, and details how to handle them.

Technical Information
ID numbers, dimensions, capacities, and technical information.

Warranty and Client Relations (U.S. and Canada only)
A summary of the warranties covering your new vehicle, and how to contact us for any reason. Refer to your warranty manual for detailed information.

Authorized Manuals (U.S. only)
How to order manuals and other technical literature.

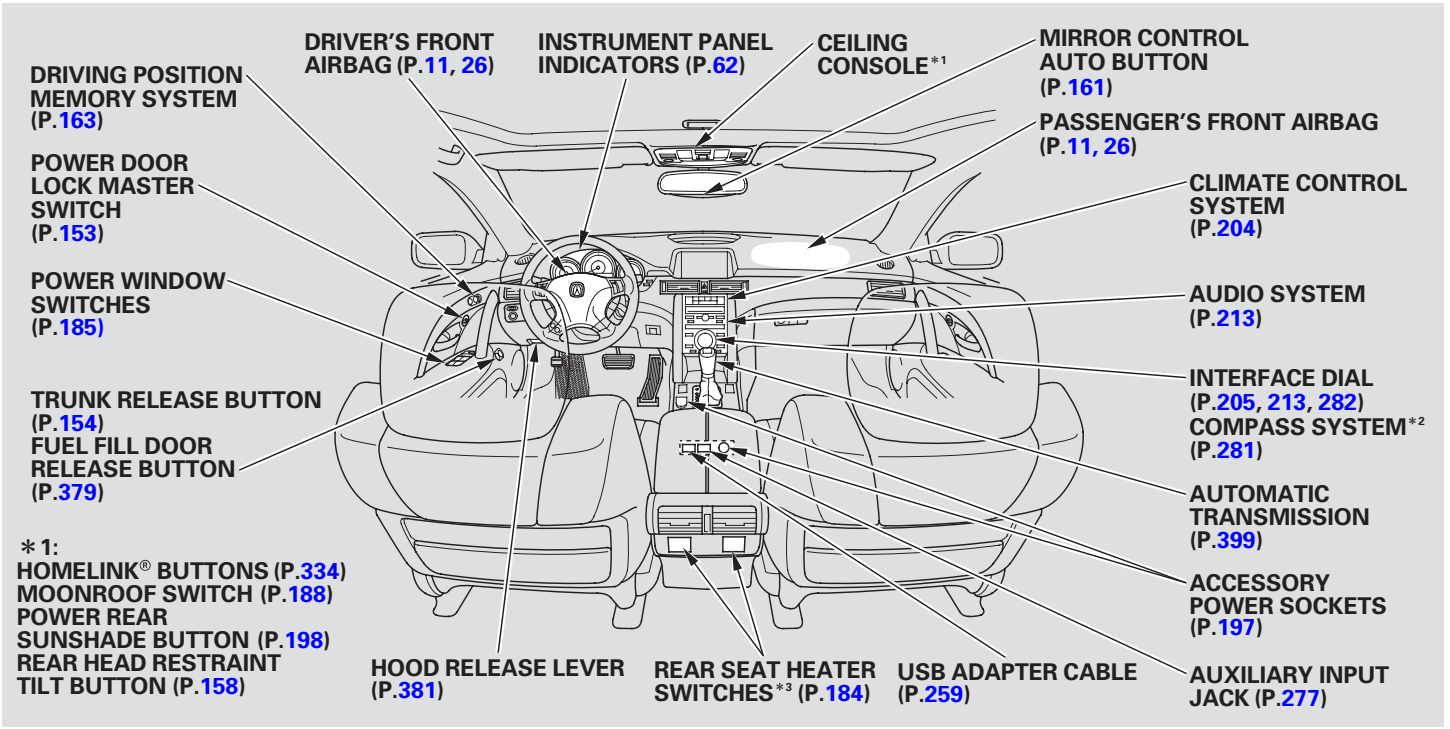
Index

Service Information Summary
A summary of the information you need when you pull up to the fuel pump.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

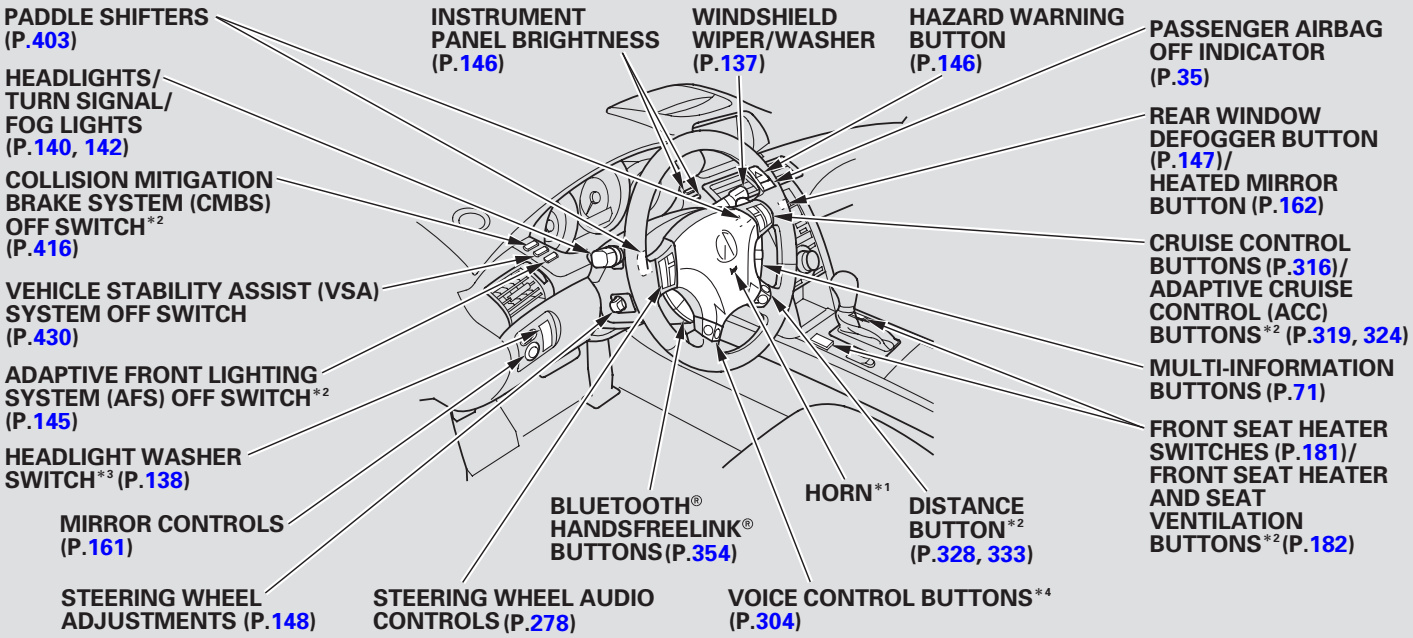
Main Menu

Your Vehicle at a Glance


DRIVER'S FRONT AIRBAG (P.11, 26)
INSTRUMENT PANEL INDICATORS (P.62)
CEILING CONSOLE*1
MIRROR CONTROL AUTO BUTTON (P.161)
DRIVING POSITION MEMORY SYSTEM (P.163)
PASSENGER'S FRONT AIRBAG (P.11, 26)
POWER DOOR LOCK MASTER SWITCH (P.153)
CLIMATE CONTROL SYSTEM (P.204)
POWER WINDOW SWITCHES (P.185)
AUDIO SYSTEM (P.213)
INTERFACE DIAL (P.205, 213, 282)
TRUNK RELEASE BUTTON (P.154)
FUEL FILL DOOR RELEASE BUTTON (P.379)
COMPASS SYSTEM*2 (P.281)
AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION (P.399)
ACCESSORY POWER SOCKETS (P.197)
*1:
HOMELINK® BUTTONS (P.334)
MOONROOF SWITCH (P.188)
POWER REAR SUNSHADE BUTTON (P.198)
REAR HEAD RESTRAINT TILT BUTTON (P.158)
HOOD RELEASE LEVER (P.381)
REAR SEAT HEATER SWITCHES*3 (P.184)
USB ADAPTER CABLE (P.259)
AUXILIARY INPUT JACK (P.277)

*2 : RL models
*3 : Canadian models only

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine


PADDLE SHIFTERS (P.403)
HEADLIGHTS/ TURN SIGNAL/ FOG LIGHTS (P.140, 142)
COLLISION MITIGATION BRAKE SYSTEM (CMBS) OFF SWITCH*2 (P.416)
VEHICLE STABILITY ASSIST (VSA) SYSTEM OFF SWITCH (P.430)
ADAPTIVE FRONT LIGHTING SYSTEM (AFS) OFF SWITCH*2 (P.145)
HEADLIGHT WASHER SWITCH*3 (P.138)
MIRROR CONTROLS (P.161)
STEERING WHEEL ADJUSTMENTS (P.148)
INSTRUMENT PANEL BRIGHTNESS (P.146)
WINDSHIELD WIPER/WASHER (P.137)
HAZARD WARNING BUTTON (P.146)
PASSENGER AIRBAG OFF INDICATOR (P.35)
REAR WINDOW DEFOGGER BUTTON (P.147)/ HEATED MIRROR BUTTON (P.162)
CRUISE CONTROL BUTTONS (P.316)/ ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL (ACC) BUTTONS*2 (P.319, 324)
MULTI-INFORMATION BUTTONS (P.71)
FRONT SEAT HEATER SWITCHES (P.181)/ FRONT SEAT HEATER AND SEAT VENTILATION BUTTONS*2 (P.182)
BLUETOOTH® HANDSFREELINK® BUTTONS (P.354)
HORN*1
DISTANCE BUTTON*2 (P.328, 333)
STEERING WHEEL AUDIO CONTROLS (P.278)
VOICE CONTROL BUTTONS*4 (P.304)

*1 : To use the horn, press the center pad of the steering wheel.
*2 : If equipped.
*3 : Canadian models only
*4 : Refer to the navigation system manual.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

09/04/02 18:38:03 31SJA650 0011

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Driver and Passenger Safety

This section gives you important information about how to protect yourself and your passengers. It shows you how to use seat belts. It explains how your airbags work. And it tells you how to properly restrain infants and children in your vehicle.

Important Safety Precautions 8
Your Vehicle's Safety Features..... 9
Protecting Adults and Teens..... 13
1. Close and Lock the Doors..... 13
2. Adjust the Front Seats 15
3. Adjust the Seat-Backs 16
4. Adjust the Head Restraints 16
5. Fasten and Position the Seat Belts 17
6. Maintain a Proper Sitting Position 19
Advice for Pregnant Women..... 19
Additional Safety Precautions.... 20
Additional Information About Your Seat Belts 21
Seat Belt System Components... 21
Lap/Shoulder Belt..... 22
Automatic Seat Belt Tensioners..... 23
Seat Belt e-pretensioners..... 24
Seat Belt Maintenance 25
Additional Information About Your Airbags 26
Airbag System Components..... 26
How Your Front Airbags Work..... 29
How Your Side Airbags Work.... 32
How Your Side Curtain Airbags Work..... 34
How the SRS Indicator Works... 34
How the Side Airbag Off Indicator Works..... 35
How the Passenger Airbag Off Indicator Works..... 35
Airbag Service..... 36
Additional Safety Precautions.... 37
Protecting Children — General Guidelines..... 38
All Children Must Be Restrained 38
All Children Should Sit in a Back Seat..... 39
The Passenger's Front Airbag Can Pose Serious Risks 39
If You Must Drive with Several Children 41
If a Child Requires Close Attention 41
Additional Safety Precautions.... 41
Protecting Infants and Small Children 43
Protecting Infants..... 43
Protecting Small Children 44
Selecting a Child Seat..... 45
Installing a Child Seat 46
With LATCH..... 47
With a Lap/Shoulder Belt 49
With a Tether..... 51
Protecting Larger Children..... 52
Checking Seat Belt Fit..... 52
Using a Booster Seat..... 53
When Can a Larger Child Sit in Front..... 54
Additional Safety Precautions.... 55
Carbon Monoxide Hazard 56
Safety Labels..... 57

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Important Safety Precautions

You'll find many safety recommendations throughout this section, and throughout this manual. The recommendations on this page are the ones we consider to be the most important.

Always Wear Your Seat Belt
A seat belt is your best protection in all types of collisions. Airbags are designed to supplement seat belts, not replace them. So even though your vehicle is equipped with airbags, make sure you and your passengers always wear your seat belts, and wear them properly (see page 17).

Restrain All Children
Children age 12 and under should ride properly restrained in a back seat, not the front seat. Infants and small children should be restrained in a child seat. Larger children should use a booster seat and a lap/shoulder belt until they can use the belt properly without a booster seat (see pages 38 – 55).

Be Aware of Airbag Hazards
While airbags can save lives, they can cause serious or fatal injuries to occupants who sit too close to them, or are not properly restrained. Infants, young children, and short adults are at the greatest risk. Be sure to follow all instructions and warnings in this manual.

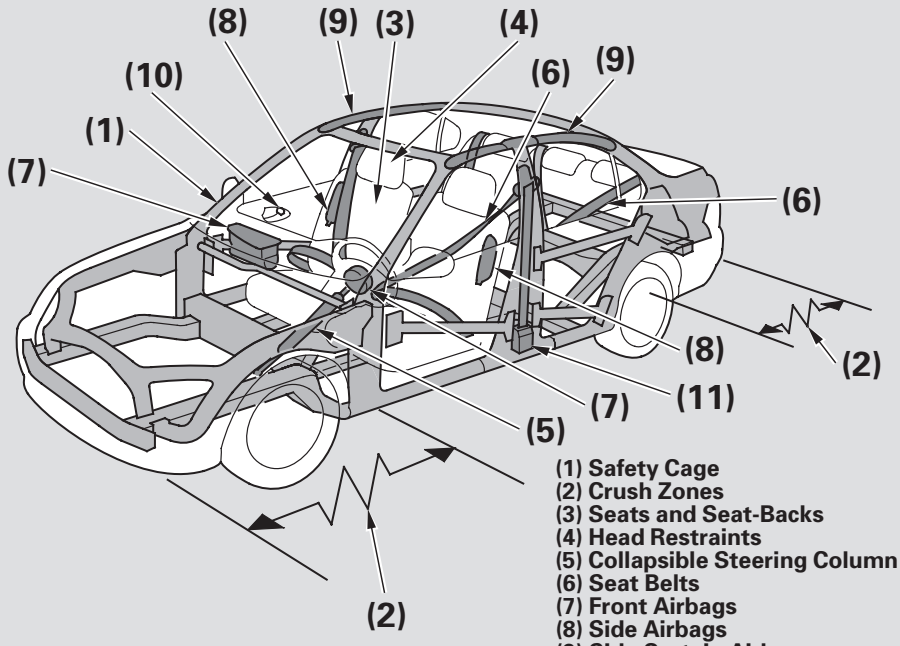
Don't Drink and Drive
Alcohol and driving don't mix. Even one drink can reduce your ability to respond to changing conditions, and your reaction time gets worse with every additional drink. So don't drink and drive, and don't let your friends drink and drive, either.

Control Your Speed
Excessive speed is a major factor in crash injuries and deaths. Generally, the higher the speed, the greater the risk, but serious injuries can also occur at lower speeds. Never drive faster than is safe for current conditions, regardless of the maximum speed posted.

Keep Your Vehicle in Safe Condition
Having a tire blowout or a mechanical failure can be extremely hazardous. To reduce the possibility of such problems, check your tire pressures and condition frequently, and perform all regularly scheduled maintenance (see page 439).

Pay Appropriate Attention to the Task of Driving Safely
Engaging in mobile phone conversation or other activities that keep you from paying close attention to the road, other vehicles and pedestrians could lead to a crash. Remember, situations can change quickly, and only you can decide when it is safe to divert attention away from driving.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



(1) Safety Cage
(2) Crush Zones
(3) Seats and Seat-Backs
(4) Head Restraints
(5) Collapsible Steering Column
(6) Seat Belts
(7) Front Airbags
(8) Side Airbags
(9) Side Curtain Airbags
(10) Door Locks
(11) Front Seat Belt Tensioners/ Seat Belt e-pretensioners*

* : On model with Collision Mitigation Brake System (CMBS)

Your vehicle is equipped with many features that work together to protect you and your passengers during a crash.

Some features do not require any action on your part. These include a strong steel framework that forms a safety cage around the passenger compartment; front and rear crush zones; a collapsible steering column; and tensioners that tighten the front seat belts in a crash.

However, you and your passengers can't take full advantage of these features unless you remain sitting in the correct position and ***always wear your seat belts***. In fact, some safety features can contribute to injuries if they are not used properly.

The following pages explain how you can take an active role in protecting yourself and your passengers.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Your Vehicle's Safety Features

Seat Belts

Your vehicle is equipped with seat belts in all seating positions.

Your seat belt system also includes an indicator on the instrument panel and a beeper to remind you and your passengers to fasten your seat belts.

Why Wear Seat Belts

Seat belts are the single most effective safety device for adults and larger children. (Infants and smaller children must be properly restrained in child seats.)

Not wearing a seat belt properly increases the chance of serious injury or death in a crash, even though your vehicle has airbags.

In addition, most states and all Canadian provinces and territories require you to wear seat belts.

⚠WARNING

Not wearing a seat belt properly increases the chance of serious injury or death in a crash, even though your vehicle has airbags.

Be sure you and your passengers always wear seat belts and wear them properly.

When properly worn, seat belts:

- Keep you connected to the vehicle so you can take advantage of the vehicle's built-in safety features.
- Help protect you in almost every type of crash, including:
  - frontal impacts
  - side impacts
  - rear impacts
  - rollovers
- Help keep you from being thrown against the inside of the vehicle and against other occupants.
- Keep you from being thrown out of the vehicle.
- Help keep you in a good position should the airbags ever deploy. A good position reduces the risk of injury from an inflating airbag and allows you to get the best advantage from the airbag.

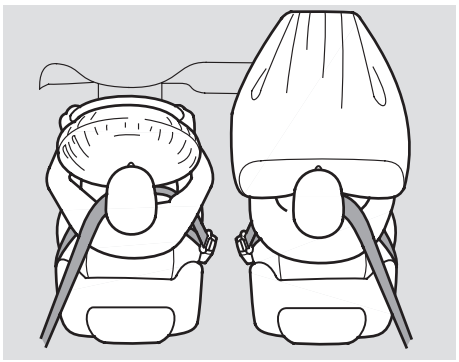
Of course, seat belts cannot completely protect you in every crash. But in most cases, seat belts can reduce your risk of serious injury.

What You Should Do:

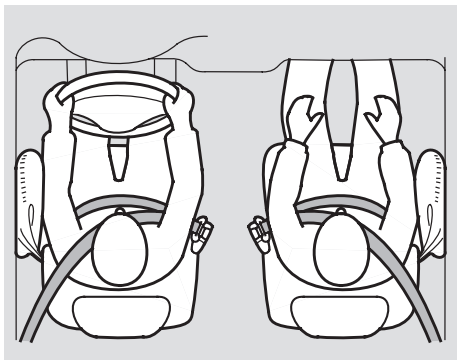
Always wear your seat belt, and make sure you wear it properly.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

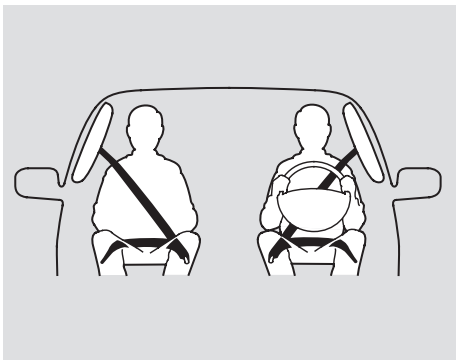
Airbags



Your vehicle has a supplemental restraint system (SRS) with front airbags to help protect the heads and chests of the driver and a front seat passenger during a moderate to severe frontal collision (see page 29 for more information on how your front airbags work).



Your vehicle also has side airbags to help protect the upper torso of the driver or a front seat passenger during a moderate to severe side impact (see page 32 for more information on how your side airbags work).



In addition, your vehicle has side curtain airbags to help protect the heads of the driver, front passenger, and passengers in the outer rear seating positions during a moderate to severe side impact (see page 34 for more information on how your side curtain airbags work).

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Your Vehicle's Safety Features

The most important things you need to know about your airbags are:

- ***Airbags do not replace seat belts.*** They are designed to supplement the seat belts.
- ***Airbags offer no protection in rear impacts, or minor frontal or side collisions.***
- ***Airbags can pose serious hazards.*** To do their job, airbags must inflate with tremendous force. So while airbags help save lives, they can cause minor injuries or more serious or even fatal injuries if occupants are not properly restrained or sitting properly.

What you should do: Always wear your seat belt properly, and sit upright and as far back from the steering wheel as possible while allowing full control of the vehicle. A front passenger should move their seat as far back from the dashboard as possible.

The rest of this section gives more detailed information about how you can maximize your safety.

Remember, however, that no safety system can prevent all injuries or deaths that can occur in a severe crash, even when seat belts are properly worn and the airbags deploy.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Introduction
The following pages provide instructions on how to properly protect the driver, adult passengers, and teenage children who are large enough and mature enough to drive or ride in the front.

See pages 38 – 55 for important guidelines on how to properly protect infants, small children, and larger children who ride in your vehicle.

1. Close and Lock the Doors
After everyone has entered the vehicle, be sure the doors are closed and locked.

Your vehicle has a programmable auto door locking/unlocking feature. For more information, see page 123 .

Your vehicle has a door and trunk open indicators on the multi-information display to indicate when a specific door or the trunk is not tightly closed. You will see the appropriate indicator(s) and the message for each condition.

You will also hear a beep when you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position, and each time you open any door or the trunk with the key in the ON (II) position.

When one or more doors are not tightly closed, the “DOOR OPEN” indicator will come on.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Protecting Adults and Teens

When the trunk is not tightly closed, the “TRUNK OPEN” indicator will come on.

When one or more doors and the trunk lid are not tightly closed, the corresponding indicator for each condition and the “DOOR & TRUNK OPEN” indicator will come on.

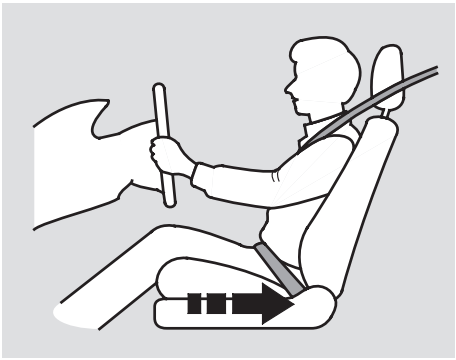
Locking the doors reduces the chance of someone being thrown out of the vehicle during a crash, and it helps prevent passengers from accidentally opening a door and falling out.

Locking the doors also helps prevent an outsider from unexpectedly opening a door when you come to a stop.

See page 153 for how to lock the doors.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

2.Adjust the Front Seats



Adjust the driver's seat as far to the rear as possible while allowing you to maintain full control of the vehicle. Have a front passenger adjust their seat as far to the rear as possible.

If you sit too close to the steering wheel or dashboard, you can be seriously injured by an inflating front airbag, or by striking the steering wheel or dashboard.

The National Highway Traffic Safety Administration and Transport Canada recommend that drivers allow at least 10 inches (25 cm) between the center of the steering wheel and the chest. In addition to adjusting the seat, you can adjust the steering wheel up and down, and in and out (see page 148).

If you cannot get far enough away from the steering wheel and still reach the controls, we recommend that you investigate whether some type of adaptive equipment may help.

⚠WARNING

Sitting too close to a front airbag can result in serious injury or death if the front airbags inflate.

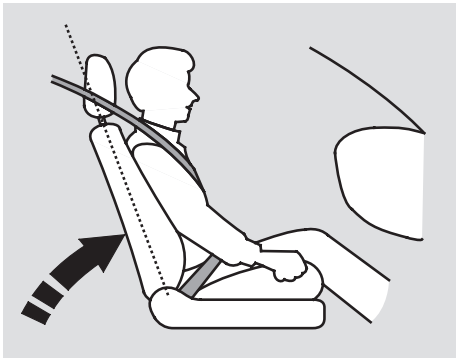
Always sit as far back from the front airbags as possible.

See page 156 for how to adjust the front seats.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Protecting Adults and Teens

3.Adjust the Seat-Backs



Adjust the driver's seat-back to a comfortable, upright position, leaving ample space between your chest and the airbag cover in the center of the steering wheel.

Passengers with adjustable seat-backs should also adjust their seat-back to a comfortable, upright position.

⚠WARNING

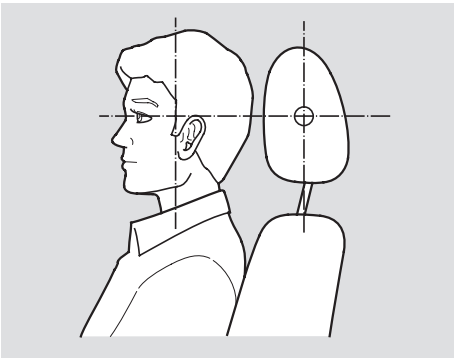
Reclining the seat-back too far can result in serious injury or death in a crash.

Adjust the seat-back to an upright position, and sit well back in the seat.

Reclining a seat-back so that the shoulder part of the belt no longer rests against the occupant's chest reduces the protective capability of the belt. It also increases the chance of sliding under the belt in a crash and being seriously injured. The farther a seat-back is reclined, the greater the risk of injury.

See page 156 for how to adjust the seat-backs.

4.Adjust the Head Restraints



Adjust the driver's head restraint so the center of the back of your head rests against the center of the restraint.

Have passengers with adjustable head restraints adjust their restraints properly as well. Taller persons should adjust their restraint as high as possible.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

⚠WARNING

Improperly positioning head restraints reduces their effectiveness and you can be seriously injured in a crash.

Make sure head restraints are in place and positioned properly before driving.

Properly adjusted head restraints will help protect occupants from whiplash and other crash injuries.

See page 157 for how to adjust the head restraints and how the driver's and front passenger's active head restraints work.

5. Fasten and Position the Seat Belts

Insert the latch plate into the buckle, then tug on the belt to make sure the belt is securely latched. Check that the belt is not twisted, because a twisted belt can cause serious injuries in a crash.

Position the lap part of the belt as low as possible across your hips, then pull up on the shoulder part of the belt so the lap part fits snugly. This lets your strong pelvic bones take the force of a crash and reduces the chance of internal injuries.

If necessary, pull up on the belt again to remove any slack, then check that the belt rests across the center of your chest and over your shoulder.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Protecting Adults and Teens

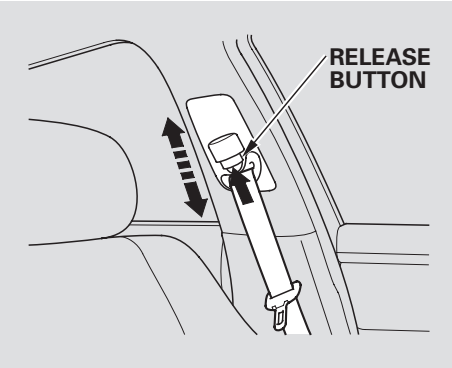
This spreads the forces of a crash over the strongest bones in your upper body.

⚠WARNING

Improperly positioning the seat belts can cause serious injury or death in a crash.

Make sure all seat belts are properly positioned before driving.

If the seat belt touches or crosses your neck, or if it crosses your arm instead of your shoulder, you need to adjust the seat belt anchor height.



The front seats have adjustable seat belt anchors. To adjust the height of an anchor, press and hold the release buttons, and slide the anchor up or down as needed (it has four positions).

Never place the shoulder portion of a lap/shoulder belt under your arm or behind your back. This could cause very serious injuries in a crash.

If a seat belt does not seem to work properly, it may not protect the occupant in a crash.

No one should sit in a seat with an inoperative seat belt. Using a seat belt that is not working properly can result in serious injury or death. Have your dealer check the belt as soon as possible.

See page 21 for additional information about your seat belts and how to take care of them.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

6. Maintain a Proper Sitting Position

After all occupants have adjusted their seats and head restraints, and put on their seat belts, it is very important that they continue to sit upright, well back in their seats, with their feet on the floor, until the vehicle is safely parked and the engine is off.

Sitting improperly can increase the chance of injury during a crash. For example, if an occupant slouches, lies down, turns sideways, sits forward, leans forward or sideways, or puts one or both feet up, the chance of injury during a crash is greatly increased.

In addition, an occupant who is out of position in the front seat can be seriously or fatally injured in a crash by striking interior parts of the vehicle or being struck by an inflating front airbag.

⚠ WARNING

Sitting improperly or out of position can result in serious injury or death in a crash.

Always sit upright, well back in the seat, with your feet on the floor.

Advice for Pregnant Women

If you are pregnant, the best way to protect yourself and your unborn child when driving or riding in a vehicle is to always wear a seat belt, and keep the lap part of the belt as low as possible across the hips.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Protecting Adults and Teens

When driving, remember to sit upright and adjust the seat as far back as possible while allowing full control of the vehicle. When riding as a front passenger, adjust the seat as far back as possible.

This will reduce the risk of injuries to both you and your unborn child that can be caused by a crash or an inflating front airbag.

Each time you have a checkup, ask your doctor if it's okay for you to drive.

Additional Safety Precautions

- ***Two people should never use the same seat belt.*** If they do, they could be very seriously injured in a crash.
- ***Do not put any accessories on seat belts.*** Devices intended to improve occupant comfort or reposition the shoulder part of a seat belt can reduce the protective capability of the belt and increase the chance of serious injury in a crash.
- ***Do not place hard or sharp objects between yourself and a front airbag.*** Carrying hard or sharp objects on your lap, or driving with a pipe or other sharp object in your mouth, can result in injuries if your front airbag inflates.
- ***Keep your hands and arms away from the airbag covers.*** If your hands or arms are close to an airbag cover, they could be injured if the airbag inflates.
- ***Do not attach or place objects on the front airbag covers.*** Objects on the covers marked "SRS AIRBAG" could interfere with the proper operation of the airbags or be propelled inside the vehicle and hurt someone if the airbags inflate.
- ***Do not attach hard objects on or near a door.*** If a side airbag or a side curtain airbag inflates, a cup holder or other hard object attached on or near the door could be propelled inside the vehicle and hurt someone.
- ***Do not cover or replace front seat-back covers without consulting your dealer.*** Improperly replacing or covering front seat-back covers can prevent your side airbags from inflating during a side impact.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Additional Information About Your Seat Belts

Seat Belt System Components
Your seat belt system includes lap/shoulder belts in all seating positions. The front seat belts are also equipped with automatic seat belt tensioners and, on models with collision mitigation brake system (CMBS), seat belt e-pretensioners.

This system uses the same sensors as the front airbags to monitor whether the front seat belts are latched or unlatched, and how much weight is on the front passenger's seat (see pages 31 and 32).

The seat belt system includes an indicator on the instrument panel and a beeper to remind you and your passengers to fasten your seat belts.

This system monitors the front seat belts. If you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position before your seat belt is fastened, the beeper will sound and the indicator will flash. If your seat belt is not fastened before the beeper stops, the indicator will stop flashing but remain on.

If a front passenger does not fasten their seat belt, the indicator will come on about 6 seconds after the ignition switch is turned to the ON (II) position.

If either the driver or a front passenger does not fasten their seat belt while driving, the beeper will sound and the indicator will flash again at regular intervals.

You will also see a "FASTEN SEAT BELT" or "FASTEN PASSENGER SEAT BELT" message on the multi-information display (see page 79).

When no one is sitting in the front passenger's seat, or a child or small adult is riding there, the indicator should not come on and the beeper should not sound.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Additional Information About Your Seat Belts

If the indicator comes on or the beeper sounds when the driver's seat belt is latched and there is no front seat passenger and no items on the front seat, something may be interfering with the monitoring system. Look for and remove:

- Any items under the front passenger's seat.
- Any object(s) hanging on the seat or in the seat-back pocket.
- Any object(s) touching the rear of the seat-back.

If no obstructions are found, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

Lap/Shoulder Belt
The lap/shoulder belt goes over your shoulder, across your chest, and across your hips.

To fasten the belt, insert the latch plate into the buckle, then tug on the belt to make sure the buckle is latched (see page 17 for how to properly position the belt).

To unlock the belt, press the red PRESS button on the buckle. Guide the belt across your body so that it retracts completely. After exiting the vehicle, be sure the belt is out of the way and will not get closed in the door.

All seat belts have an emergency locking retractor. In normal driving, the retractor lets you move freely in your seat while it keeps some tension on the belt. During a collision or sudden stop, the retractor automatically locks the belt to help restrain your body.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

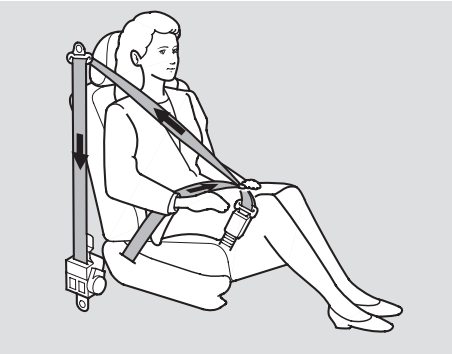
Additional Information About Your Seat Belts

The seat belts in all positions except the driver's have a lockable retractor that must be activated to secure a child seat (see page 49).

If the shoulder part of the belt is pulled all the way out, the lockable retractor will activate. The belt will retract, but it will not allow the passenger to move freely.

To deactivate the lockable retractor, unlatch the buckle and let the seat belt fully retract. To refasten the seat belt, pull it out only as far as needed.

Automatic Seat Belt Tensioners



For added protection, the front seat belts are equipped with automatic seat belt tensioners. When activated, the tensioners immediately tighten the belts to help hold the driver and a front passenger in position.

The tensioners are designed to activate in any collision severe enough to cause the front airbags to deploy.

If a side curtain airbag deploys during a side impact, the tensioner on that side of the vehicle will also deploy.

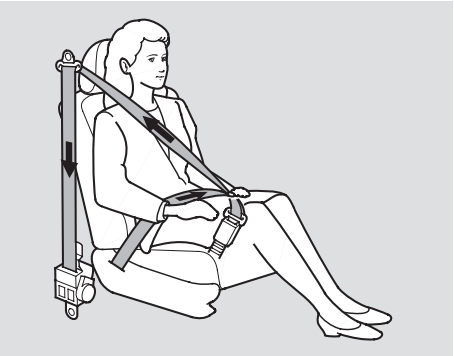
The tensioners can also be activated during a collision in which the front airbags *do not deploy*. In this case, the airbags would not be needed, but the extra tension in the seat belt could be helpful.

When the tensioners are activated, the seat belts will remain tight until they are unbuckled.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Additional Information About Your Seat Belts

Seat Belt e-pretensioners



On models with Collision Mitigation Brake System

For added safety, the front seat belts are equipped with e-pretensioners that work in combination with the collision mitigation brake system (CMBS) (see page 413) and the brake pedal assist function (see page 410).

If your vehicle gets too close to the vehicle ahead of it in your lane, the driver's e-pretensioner slightly retracts the seat belt to alert the driver of the approaching vehicle. If a collision with the vehicle in front of you is likely, the e-pretensioners on both front seats retract the seat belts with enough force to properly restrain you and your front passenger. After they activate, the e-pretensioners release the retracted seat belts.

To get the full benefit of the e-pretensioners, you and your front passenger must sit normally in your seats and wear your seat belts properly (see page 17).

The e-pretensioners do not activate when the seat belts are not worn or when the vehicle stability assist (VSA) off indicator on the instrument panel is on.

If the automatic seat belt tensioners are activated by a collision, both front seat belts and all related components must be replaced (see page 25). If only the e-pretensioners were activated, no components need to be replaced.

In addition, the front passenger's e-pretensioner does not activate when the passenger's airbag is automatically turned off because the weight sensor detects a child in the front passenger's seat.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Additional Information About Your Seat Belts

Seat Belt Maintenance
For safety, you should check the condition of your seat belts regularly.

Pull each belt out fully, and look for frays, cuts, burns, and wear. Check that the latches work smoothly and the belts retract easily. If a belt does not retract easily, cleaning the belt may correct the problem (see page 470). Any belt that is not in good condition or working properly will not provide good protection and should be replaced as soon as possible.

Acura provides a limited warranty on seat belts. See your *Acura Warranty Information* booklet for details.

If a seat belt is worn during a crash, it must be replaced by the dealer. A belt that has been worn during a crash may not provide the same level of protection in a subsequent crash.

The dealer should also inspect the anchors for damage and replace them if needed. If the automatic seat belt tensioners activate during a crash, they must be replaced.

⚠ WARNING

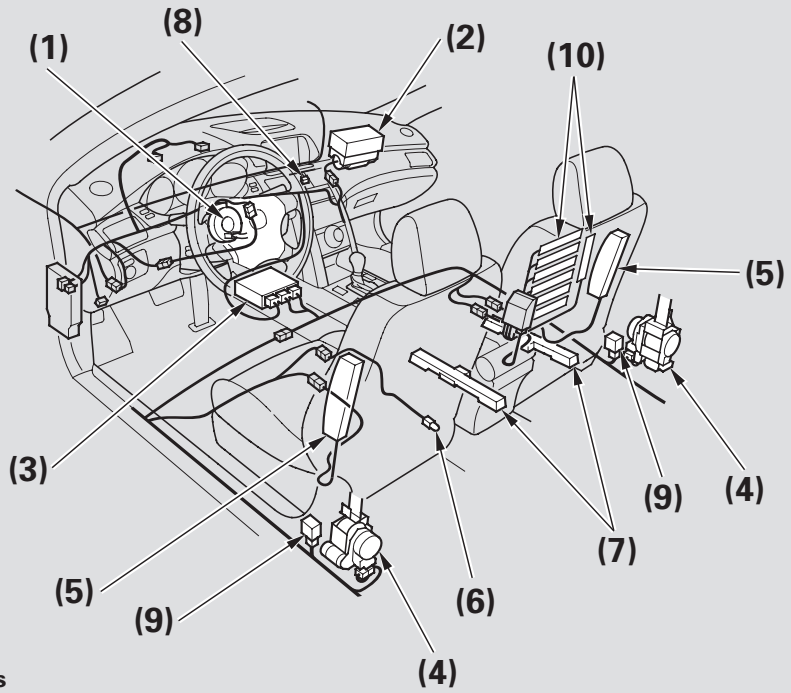
Not checking or maintaining seat belts can result in serious injury or death if the seat belts do not work properly when needed.

Check your seat belts regularly and have any problem corrected as soon as possible.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Additional Information About Your Airbags

Airbag System Components

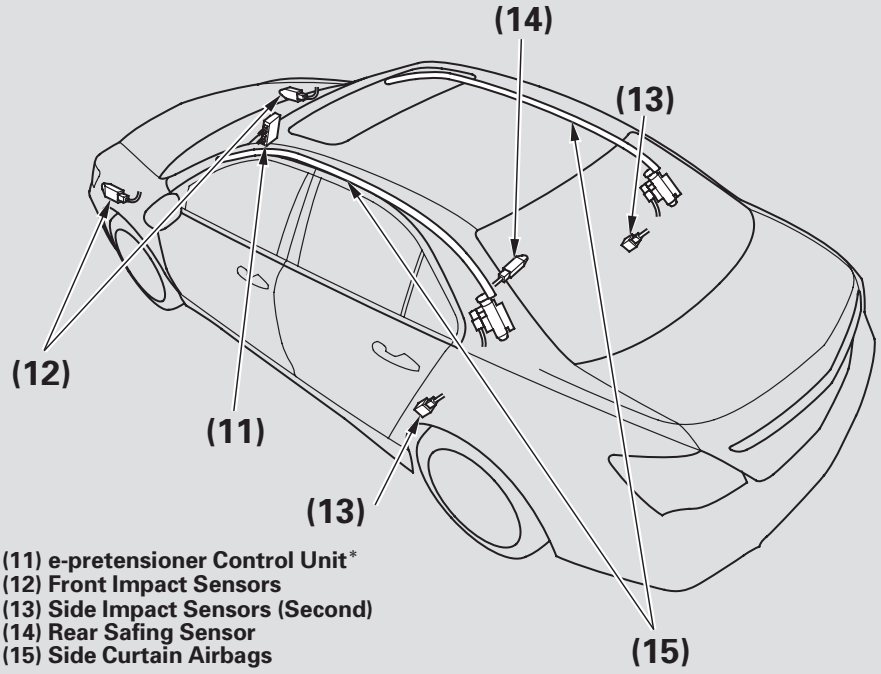


(1) Driver's Airbag
(2) Front Passenger's Airbag
(3) Control Unit
(4) Front Seat Belt Tensioners/
Seat Belt e-pretensioners*
(5) Side Airbags
(6) Driver's Seat Position Sensor
(7) Front Passenger's Seat Weight Sensors
(8) Passenger Airbag Off Indicator
(9) Side Impact Sensors (First)
(10) Occupant Detection System (ODS) Sensors

*: On models with CMBS

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Additional Information About Your Airbags



(11) e-pretensioner Control Unit*
(12) Front Impact Sensors
(13) Side Impact Sensors (Second)
(14) Rear Safing Sensor
(15) Side Curtain Airbags

* : On models with CMBS

Your airbag system includes:

- Two SRS (supplemental restraint system) front airbags. The driver's airbag is stored in the center of the steering wheel; the front passenger's airbag is stored in the dashboard. Both are marked "SRS AIRBAG" (see page 29).
- Two side airbags, one for the driver and one for a front passenger. The airbags are stored in the outer edges of the seat-backs. Both are marked "SIDE AIRBAG" (see page 32).
- Two side curtain airbags, one for each side of the vehicle. The airbags are stored in the ceiling, above the side windows. The front and rear pillars are marked "SIDE CURTAIN AIRBAG" (see page 34).

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

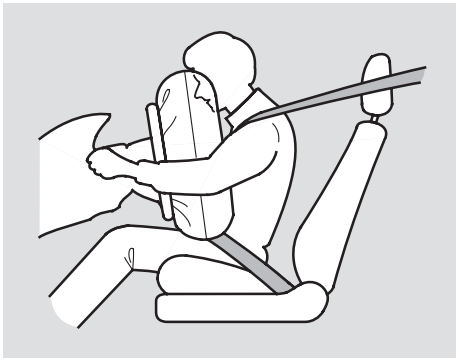
Additional Information About Your Airbags

- On models with CMBS, front seat belt e-pretensioners (see page 24).
- Automatic front seat belt tensioners (see page 23).
- Sensors that can detect a moderate to severe front impact or side impact.
- Sensors that can detect whether a child is in the passenger's side airbag path and signal the control unit to turn the airbag off (see page 33).
- Sensors that can detect whether the driver's seat belt and the front passenger's seat belt are latched or unlatched (see page 21).
- A driver's seat position sensor that monitors the distance of the seat from the front airbag. If the seat is too far forward, the airbag will inflate with less force (see page 31).
- Weight sensors that monitor the weight on the front passenger's seat. If the weight is about 65 lbs (29 kg) or less (the weight of an infant or small child), the passenger's front airbag will be turned off (see page 31).
- A sophisticated electronic system that continually monitors and records information about the sensors, the control unit, the airbag activators, the seat belt tensioners, and driver and front passenger seat belt use when the ignition switch is in the ON (II) position.
- An indicator on the instrument panel that alerts you to a possible problem with your airbags, sensors, seat belt tensioners (see page 34), or, on models with CMBS, seat belt e-pretensioners (see page 24).
- An indicator on the instrument panel that alerts you that the passenger's side airbag has been turned off (see page 35).
- An indicator on the dashboard that alerts you that the passenger's front airbag has been turned off (see page 35).
- Emergency backup power in case your vehicle's electrical system is disconnected in a crash.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Additional Information About Your Airbags

How Your Front Airbags Work



If you ever have a moderate to severe frontal collision, sensors will detect the vehicle's rapid deceleration.

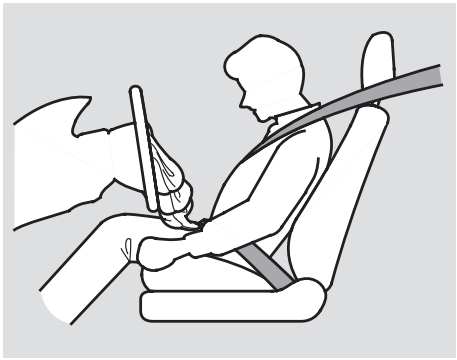
If the rate of deceleration is high enough, the control unit will inflate the driver's and front passenger's airbags, at the time and with the force needed.

During a frontal crash, your seat belt restrains your lower body and torso, and the front airbag helps protect your head and chest.

Although both airbags normally inflate within a split second of each other, it is possible for only one airbag to deploy.

This can happen if the severity of a collision is at the margin, or threshold, that determines whether or not the airbags will deploy. In such cases, the seat belt will provide sufficient protection, and the supplemental protection offered by the airbag would be minimal.

Only the driver's airbag will deploy if there is no passenger in the front seat, or if the advanced airbag system has turned the passenger's airbag off (see page 31).



After inflating, the front airbags will immediately deflate, so they won't interfere with the driver's visibility, or the ability to steer or operate other controls.

The total time for inflation and deflation is one-tenth of a second, so fast that most occupants are not aware that the airbags deployed until they see them lying in their laps.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Additional Information About Your Airbags

After a crash, you may see what looks like smoke. This is actually powder from the airbag's surface. Although the powder is not harmful, people with respiratory problems may experience some temporary discomfort. If this occurs, get out of the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.

Dual-Stage Airbags

Your front airbags are dual-stage airbags. This means they have two inflation stages that can be ignited sequentially or simultaneously, depending on crash severity.

In a ***more severe*** crash, both stages will ignite simultaneously to provide the quickest and greatest protection.

In a ***less severe*** crash, one stage will ignite first, then the second stage will ignite a split second later. This provides longer airbag inflation time with a little less force.

Dual-Threshold Airbags

Your front airbags are also dual-threshold airbags. Airbags with this feature have two deployment thresholds that depend on whether sensors detect the occupant is wearing a seat belt or not.

If the occupant's belt is ***not latched***, the airbag will deploy at a slightly lower threshold, because the occupant would need extra protection.

If the occupant's belt is ***latched***, the airbag will inflate at a slightly higher threshold, when the airbag would be needed to supplement the protection provided by the seat belt.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Additional Information About Your Airbags

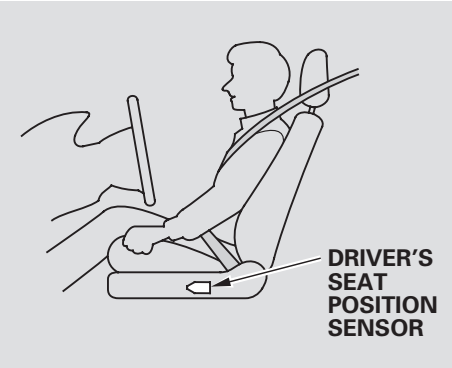
Advanced Airbags

Your front airbags are also advanced airbags. The main purpose of this feature is to help prevent airbag-caused injuries to short drivers and children or small-statured adults who ride in front.

For both advanced airbags to work properly:

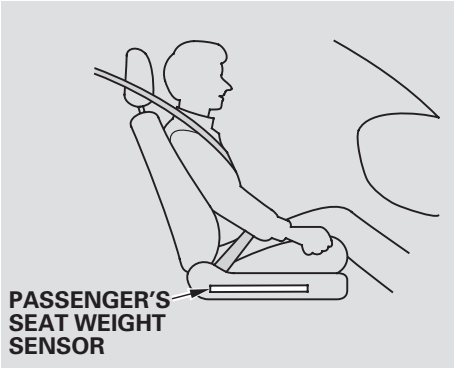
- Occupants must sit upright and wear their seat belts properly.
- Do not spill any liquids on or under the seats, cover the sensors, or put any objects or metal items under the front seats.

Failure to follow these instructions could damage the sensors or prevent them from working properly.



The driver's advanced front airbag system includes a seat position sensor under the seat. If the seat is too far forward, the airbag will inflate with less force, regardless of the severity of the impact.

If there is a problem with the sensor, the SRS indicator will come on, and the airbag will inflate in the normal manner regardless of the driver's seating position.



The passenger's advanced front airbag system has weight sensors under the seat. Although Acura does not encourage carrying an infant or small child in front, if the sensors detect the weight of an infant or small child (up to about 65 lbs or 29 kg), the system will automatically turn the passenger's front airbag off.

Be aware that objects placed on the passenger's seat can also cause the airbag to be turned off. *CONTINUED*

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Additional Information About Your Airbags

When the passenger airbag gets turned off by the weight sensors, a "passenger airbag off" indicator in the center of the dashboard comes on (see page 35).

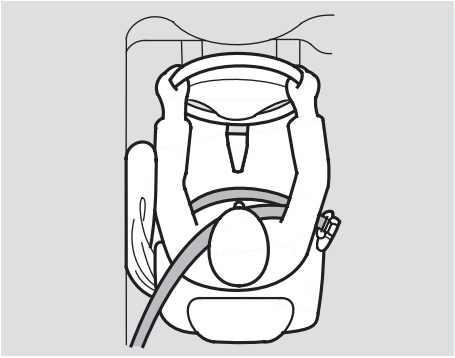
If the weight sensors detect there is no passenger in the front seat, the airbag is automatically turned off. However, the passenger airbag off indicator in this situation will not come on.

To ensure that the passenger's advanced front airbag system will work properly, ***do not do anything that would increase or decrease the weight on the front passenger's seat.*** This includes:

- A rear passenger pushing or pulling on the back of the front passenger's seat.
- Moving the front seat forcibly back against cargo on the seat or floor behind it.
- Hanging heavy items on the front passenger seat, or placing heavy items in the seat-back pocket.
- Back seat passengers should not wedge objects or intentionally force their feet under the front passenger seat.

Also, make sure the floor mat behind the front passenger's seat is hooked to the floor mat anchor (see page 471). If it is not, the mat may interfere with the proper operation of the sensors and operation of the seat.

How Your Side Airbags Work



If you ever have a moderate to severe side impact, sensors will detect rapid acceleration and signal the control unit to instantly inflate either the driver's or the passenger's side airbag.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Additional Information About Your Airbags

Only one airbag will deploy during a side impact. If the impact is on the passenger's side, the passenger's side airbag will deploy even if there is no passenger.

To get the best protection from the side airbags, front seat occupants should wear their seat belts and sit upright and well back in their seats.

Side Airbag Cutoff System

Your vehicle has a side airbag cutoff system designed primarily to protect a child riding in the front passenger's seat.

Although Acura does not encourage children to ride in front, if the position sensors detect a child has leaned into the side airbag's deployment path, the airbag will shut off.

The side airbag may also shut off if a short adult leans sideways, or a larger adult slouches and leans sideways into the airbag's deployment path.

Objects placed on the front passenger seat can also cause the side airbag to be shut off.

If the side airbag off indicator comes on (see page 35), have the passenger sit upright. Once the passenger is out of the airbag's deployment path, the system will turn the airbag back on, and the indicator will go out.

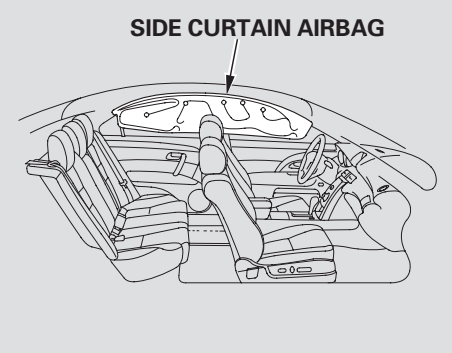
There will be some delay between the moment the passenger moves into or out of the airbag deployment path and when the indicator comes on or goes off.

A front seat passenger should not use a cushion or another object as a backrest. It may prevent the cutoff system from working properly.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Additional Information About Your Airbags

How Your Side Curtain Airbags Work



In a moderate to severe side impact, sensors will detect rapid acceleration and signal the control unit to instantly inflate the side curtain airbag and activate the seat belt tensioner on the driver's or the passenger's side of the vehicle.

If the impact is on the passenger's side, the passenger's side curtain airbag will inflate even if there are no occupants on that side of the vehicle.

To get the best protection from the side curtain airbags, occupants should wear their seat belts and sit upright and well back in their seats.

How the SRS Indicator Works

The SRS indicator alerts you to a potential problem with your airbags, seat belt tensioners, and, on models with CMBS, seat belt e-pretensioners.

When you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position, this indicator comes on briefly then goes off. This tells you the system is working properly.

If the indicator comes on at any other time, or does not come on at all, you should have the system checked by your dealer. For example:

- If the SRS indicator does not come on after you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position.
- If the indicator stays on after the engine starts.
- If the indicator comes on or flashes on and off while you drive.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

You will also see a "CHECK AIRBAG SYSTEM" message on the multi-information display (see page 79).

If you see any of these indications, the airbags and seat belt tensioners may not work properly when you need them.

⚠WARNING

Ignoring the SRS indicator can result in serious injury or death if the airbag systems or tensioners do not work properly.

Have your vehicle checked by a dealer as soon as possible if the SRS indicator alerts you to a possible problem.

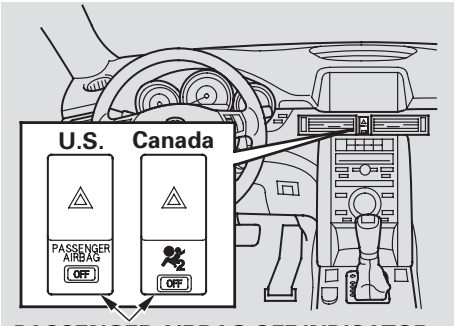
How the Side Airbag Off Indicator Works

U.S. SIDE AIRBAG OFF Canada

This indicator alerts you that the passenger's side airbag has been automatically shut off. It does ***not*** mean there is a problem with your side airbags.

When you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position, the indicator should come on briefly and then go out (see page 63). If it does not come on, stays on, or comes on while driving without a passenger in the front seat, you will also see a "PASSENGER SIDE AIRBAG OFF" message on the multi-information display. Have the system checked (see page 79).

How the Passenger Airbag Off Indicator Works



PASSENGER AIRBAG OFF INDICATOR

This indicator alerts you that the passenger's front airbag has been shut off because weight sensors detect about 65 lbs (29 kg) or less (the weight of an infant or small child) on the front passenger's seat. It does ***not mean*** there is a problem with the airbag.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Additional Information About Your Airbags

Be aware that objects placed on the front seat can cause the indicator to come on.

If no weight is detected on the front seat, the airbag will be automatically shut off. However, the indicator will not come on.

The passenger airbag off indicator may come on and off repeatedly if the total weight on the seat is near the airbag cutoff threshold.

If an adult or teenage passenger is riding in front, move the seat as far to the rear as possible, and have the passenger sit upright and wear the seat belt properly.

If the indicator comes on with no front seat passenger and no objects on the seat, or with an adult riding there, something may be interfering with the weight sensors. Look for and remove:

- Any items under the front passenger's seat.
- Any object hanging on the seat or in the seat-back pocket.
- Any object(s) touching the rear of the seat-back.

If no obstructions are found, have your vehicle checked by a dealer as soon as possible.

Airbag Service

Your airbag systems are virtually maintenance free, and there are no parts you can safely service. However, you must have your vehicle serviced if:

- ***An airbag ever inflates.*** Any airbag that has deployed must be replaced along with the control unit and other related parts. Any seat belt tensioner that activates must also be replaced.

  Do not try to remove or replace any airbag by yourself. This must be done by an authorized dealer or a knowledgeable body shop.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

- ***The SRS indicator alerts you to a problem.*** Take your vehicle to an authorized dealer as soon as possible. If you ignore this indication, your airbags may not operate properly.

- ***If your vehicle has a moderate to severe impact.*** Even if your airbags do not inflate, your dealer should inspect the driver's seat position sensor, the front passenger's weight sensors, the front seat belt tensioners, and all seat belts and their anchors worn during a crash to make sure they are operating properly.

Additional Safety Precautions

- ***Do not attempt to deactivate your airbags.*** Together, airbags and seat belts provide the best protection.

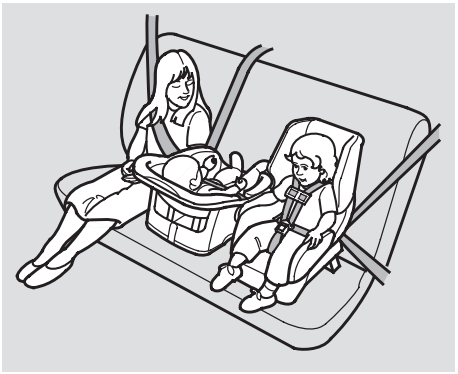
- ***Do not tamper with airbag components or wiring for any reason.*** Tampering could cause the airbags to deploy, possibly causing very serious injury.

- ***Do not remove or modify a front seat without consulting your dealer.*** This could make the driver's seat position sensor or the front passenger's weight sensors ineffective. If it is necessary to remove or modify a front seat to accommodate a person with disabilities, first contact Acura Client Services at 800-382-2238.

- ***Do not expose the front passenger's seat-back to liquid.*** If water or another liquid soaks into the seat-back, it can prevent the side airbag cutoff system from working properly.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Protecting Children — General Guidelines



Children depend on adults to protect them. However, despite their best intentions, many adults do not know how to *properly* protect child passengers.

If you have children, or ever need to drive with a child in your vehicle, be sure to read this section. It begins with important general guidelines, then presents special information for infants, small children, and larger children.

All Children Must Be Restrained

Each year, many children are injured or killed in vehicle crashes because they are either unrestrained or not properly restrained. In fact, vehicle accidents are the number one cause of death of children age 12 and under.

To reduce the number of child deaths and injuries, every state, Canadian province and territory requires that infants and children be properly restrained when they ride in a vehicle.

Infants and small children must be restrained in an approved child seat that is properly secured to the vehicle (see pages 43 — 51).

⚠ WARNING

Children who are unrestrained or improperly restrained can be seriously injured or killed in a crash.

Any child too small for a seat belt should be properly restrained in a child seat. A larger child should be properly restrained with a seat belt and use a booster seat if necessary.

Larger children must be restrained with a lap/shoulder belt and ride on a booster seat until the seat belt fits them properly (see pages 52 — 55).

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Protecting Children – General Guidelines

All Children Should Sit in a Back Seat

According to accident statistics, children of all ages and sizes are safer when they are restrained in a back seat.

The National Highway Traffic Safety Administration and Transport Canada recommend that all children aged 12 and under be properly restrained in a back seat. Some states have laws restricting where children may ride.

Children who ride in back are less likely to be injured by striking interior vehicle parts during a collision or hard braking. Also, children cannot be injured by an inflating front airbag when they ride in the back.

The Passenger's Front Airbag Can Pose Serious Risks

Front airbags have been designed to help protect adults in a moderate to severe frontal collision. To do this, the passenger's front airbag is quite large, and it can inflate with enough force to cause very serious injuries.

Even though your vehicle has an advanced front airbag system that automatically turns the passenger's front airbag off under certain circumstances (see page 35), please follow these guidelines:

Infants

Never put a rear-facing child seat in the front seat of a vehicle equipped with a passenger's front airbag. If the airbag inflates, it can hit the back of the child seat with enough force to kill or very seriously injure an infant.

Small Children

Placing a forward-facing child seat in the front seat of a vehicle equipped with a passenger's front airbag can be hazardous. If the vehicle seat is too far forward, or the child's head is thrown forward during a collision, an inflating front airbag can strike the child with enough force to kill or very seriously injure a small child.

Larger Children

Children who have outgrown child seats are also at risk of being injured or killed by an inflating passenger's front airbag. Whenever possible, larger children should sit in the back seat, on a booster seat if needed, and be properly restrained with a seat belt (see page 52 for important information about protecting larger children).

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Protecting Children — General Guidelines

To remind you of the passenger's front airbag hazards, and that children must be properly restrained in a back seat, your vehicle has warning labels on the dashboard (U.S. models) and on the front visors. Please read and follow the instructions on these labels.

U.S. Models

SUN VISORS

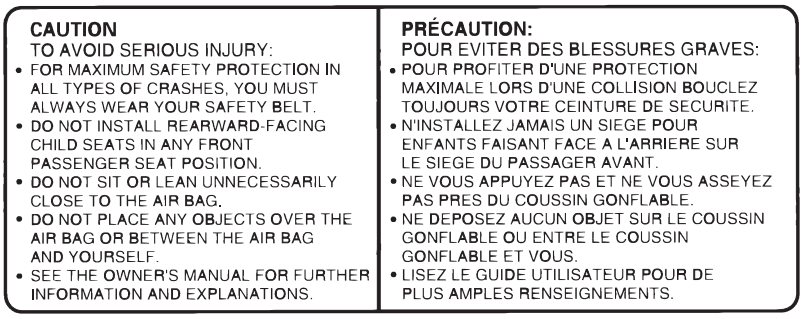
WARNING
EVEN WITH ADVANCED AIR BAGS
Children can be killed or seriously injured by the air bag
The back seat is the safest place for children
Never put a rear facing child seat in the front
Always use seat belts and child restraints
See owner's manual for more information about air bags

DASHBOARD

This Vehicle is Equipped with Advanced Air Bags
Even with Advanced Air Bags
Children can be killed or seriously injured by the air bag.
The back seat is the safest place for children.
Never put a rear-facing child seat in the front.
Always use seat belts and child restraints.
See owner's manual for more information about air bags.
To be removed by owner only.

Canadian Models

SUN VISORS


CAUTION
TO AVOID SERIOUS INJURY:
• FOR MAXIMUM SAFETY PROTECTION IN ALL TYPES OF CRASHES, YOU MUST ALWAYS WEAR YOUR SAFETY BELT.
• DO NOT INSTALL REARWARD-FACING CHILD SEATS IN ANY FRONT PASSENGER SEAT POSITION.
• DO NOT SIT OR LEAN UNNECESSARILY CLOSE TO THE AIR BAG.
• DO NOT PLACE ANY OBJECTS OVER THE AIR BAG OR BETWEEN THE AIR BAG AND YOURSELF.
• SEE THE OWNER'S MANUAL FOR FURTHER INFORMATION AND EXPLANATIONS.
PRÉCAUTION:
POUR EVITER DES BLESSURES GRAVES:
• POUR PROFITER D'UNE PROTECTION MAXIMALE LORS D'UNE COLLISION BOUCLEZ TOUJOURS VOTRE CEINTURE DE SECURITE.
• N'INSTALLEZ JAMAIS UN SIEGE POUR ENFANTS FAISANT FACE A L'ARRIERE SUR LE SIEGE DU PASSAGER AVANT.
• NE VOUS APPUYEZ PAS ET NE VOUS ASSEYEZ PAS PRES DU COUSSIN GONFLABLE.
• NE DEPOSEZ AUCUN OBJET SUR LE COUSSIN GONFLABLE OU ENTRE LE COUSSIN GONFLABLE ET VOUS.
• LISEZ LE GUIDE UTILISATEUR POUR DE PLUS AMPLES RENSEIGNEMENTS.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

If You Must Drive with Several Children

Your vehicle has a back seat where children can be properly restrained. If you ever have to carry a group of children, and a child must ride in front:

- Place the largest child in the front seat, provided the child is large enough to wear the lap/shoulder belt properly (see page 52).
- Move the vehicle seat as far to the rear as possible (see page 156).
- Have the child sit upright and well back in the seat (see page 19).
- Make sure the seat belt is properly positioned and secured (see page 17).

If a Child Requires Close Attention

Many parents say they prefer to put an infant or a small child in the front passenger seat so they can watch the child, or because the child requires attention.

Placing a child in the front seat exposes the child to hazards in a frontal collision, and paying close attention to a child distracts the driver from the important tasks of driving, placing both of you at risk.

If a child requires close physical attention or frequent visual contact, we strongly recommend that another adult ride with the child in a back seat. The back seat is far safer for a child than the front.

Additional Safety Precautions

- ***Never hold an infant or child on your lap.*** If you are not wearing a seat belt in a crash, you could be thrown forward and crush the child against the dashboard or a seat-back. If you are wearing a seat belt, the child can be torn from your arms and be seriously hurt or killed.
- ***Never put a seat belt over yourself and a child.*** During a crash, the belt could press deep into the child and cause serious or fatal injuries.
- ***Never let two children use the same seat belt.*** If they do, they could be very seriously injured in a crash.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Protecting Children — General Guidelines

- ***Use the childproof door locks to prevent children from opening the rear doors.*** This can prevent children from accidentally falling out (see page 155).

- ***Do not leave children alone in a vehicle.*** Leaving children without adult supervision is illegal in most states, Canadian provinces and territories, and can be very hazardous.
  For example, infants and small children left in a vehicle on a hot day can die from heatstroke. A child left alone with the key in the ignition switch can accidentally set the vehicle in motion, possibly injuring themselves or others.

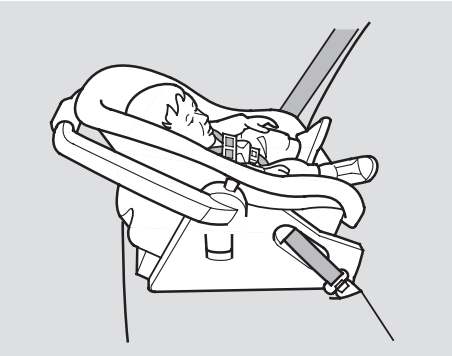
- ***Make sure any unused seat belt that a child can reach is buckled, the lockable retractor is activated, and the belt is fully retracted and locked.*** If a child wraps a loose seat belt around their neck, they can be seriously or fatally injured. (See pages 49 and 50 for how to activate and deactivate the lockable retractor.)

- ***Lock all doors and the trunk when your vehicle is not in use.*** Children who play in vehicles can accidentally get trapped inside. Teach your children not to play in or around vehicles. Know how to operate the emergency trunk opener and decide if your children should be shown how to use this feature (see page 155).

- ***Keep vehicle keys/remote transmitters out of the reach of children.*** Even very young children learn how to unlock vehicle doors, turn on the ignition switch, and open the trunk, which can lead to accidental injury or death.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Protecting Infants



Child Seat Type
An infant must be properly restrained in a rear-facing, reclining child seat until the child reaches the seat maker's weight or height limit for the seat, and the child is at least one year old.

Only a rear-facing child seat provides proper support for a baby's head, neck, and back.

Two types of seats may be used: a seat designed exclusively for infants, or a convertible seat used in the rear-facing, reclining mode.

Do not put a rear-facing child seat in a forward-facing position. If placed facing forward, an infant could be very seriously injured during a frontal collision.

Rear-facing Child Seat Placement
A rear-facing child seat can be placed in any seating position in the back seat, but not in the front. ***Never put a rear-facing child seat in the front seat.***

If the passenger's front airbag inflates, it can hit the back of the child seat with enough force to kill or seriously injure an infant.

When properly installed, a rear-facing child seat may prevent the driver or a front passenger from moving their seat as far back as recommended, or from locking their seat-back in the desired position.

It could also interfere with proper operation of the passenger's advanced front airbag system.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Protecting Infants and Small Children

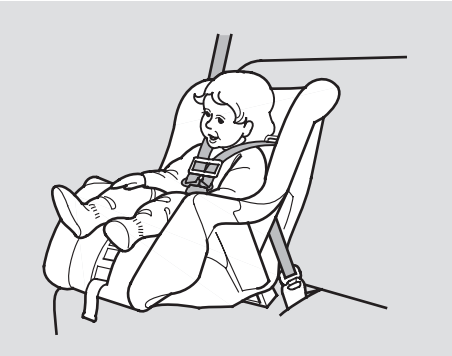
In any of these situations, we strongly recommend that you install the child seat directly behind the front passenger's seat, move the seat as far forward as needed, and leave it unoccupied. Or, you may wish to get a smaller rear-facing child seat.

⚠WARNING

Placing a rear-facing child seat in the front seat can result in serious injury or death during a collision.

Always place a rear-facing child seat in the back seat, not the front.

Protecting Small Children



Child Seat Type

Many states, Canadian provinces and territories allow a child one year of age or older who also meets the minimum size and weight requirements to transition from a rear-facing child seat to a forward facing seat. Know the requirements where you are driving and follow the child seat instructions. Many experts recommend use of a rear-facing seat up to age two, if the child's height and weight are appropriate for a rear-facing seat.

Of the different seats available, we recommend those that have a five-point harness system as shown.

We also recommend that a small child use the child seat until the child reaches the weight or height limit for the seat.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Protecting Infants and Small Children, Selecting a Child Seat

Child Seat Placement
We strongly recommend placing a forward-facing child seat in a back seat, not the front.

Placing a forward-facing child seat in the front seat of a vehicle equipped with a passenger's airbag can be hazardous. If the vehicle seat is too far forward, or the child's head is thrown forward during a collision, an inflating airbag can strike the child with enough force to cause very serious or fatal injuries.

Even with advanced front airbags that automatically turn the passenger's front airbag off (see page 31), a back seat is the safest place for a small child.

If it is necessary to put a forward-facing child seat in the front, move the vehicle seat as far to the rear as possible, and be sure the child seat is firmly secured to the vehicle and the child is properly strapped in the seat.

⚠WARNING

Placing a forward-facing child seat in the front seat can result in serious injury or death if the front airbag inflates.

If you must place a forward-facing child seat in front, move the vehicle seat as far back as possible, and properly restrain the child.

Selecting a Child Seat
When buying a child seat, you need to choose either a conventional child seat, or one designed for use with the Lower Anchors and Tethers for CHildren (LATCH) system.

Conventional child seats must be secured to a vehicle with a seat belt, whereas LATCH-compatible seats are secured by attaching the seat to hardware built into the two outer seating positions in the back seat.

Since LATCH-compatible child seats are easier to install and reduce the possibility of improper installation, we recommend selecting this style.

In seating positions and vehicles not equipped with LATCH, a LATCH-compatible child seat can be installed using a seat belt.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Selecting a Child Seat, Installing a Child Seat

Whatever type of seat you choose, to provide proper protection, a child seat should meet three requirements:

1. ***The child seat should meet Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard 213 or Canadian Motor Vehicle Safety Standard 213.*** Look for FMVSS 213 or CMVSS 213 on the box.

2. ***The child seat should be of the proper type and size to fit the child.*** Rear-facing for infants, forward-facing for small children.

3. ***The child seat should fit the vehicle seating position (or positions) where it will be used.***

Before purchasing a conventional child seat, or using a previously purchased one, we recommend that you test the seat in the specific vehicle seating position or positions where the seat will be used.

Installing a Child Seat

After selecting a proper child seat and a good place to install the seat, there are three main steps in installing the seat:

1. ***Properly secure the child seat to the vehicle.*** All child seats must be secured to the vehicle with the lap part of a lap/shoulder belt or with the LATCH (Lower Anchors and Tethers for CHildren) system. A child whose seat is not properly secured to the vehicle can be endangered in a crash.

2. ***Make sure the child seat is firmly secured.*** After installing a child seat, push and pull the seat forward and from side-to-side to verify that it is secure.

A child seat secured with a seat belt should be installed as firmly as possible. However, it does not need to be “rock solid.” Some side-to-side movement can be expected and should not reduce the child seat’s effectiveness.

If the child seat is not secure, try installing it in a different seating position, or use a different style of child seat that can be firmly secured.

3. ***Secure the child in the child seat.*** Make sure the child is properly strapped in the child seat according to the child seat maker’s instructions. A child who is not properly secured in a child seat can be seriously injured in a crash.

The following pages provide guidelines on how to properly install a child seat. A forward-facing child seat is used in all examples, but the instructions are the same for rear-facing child seats.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

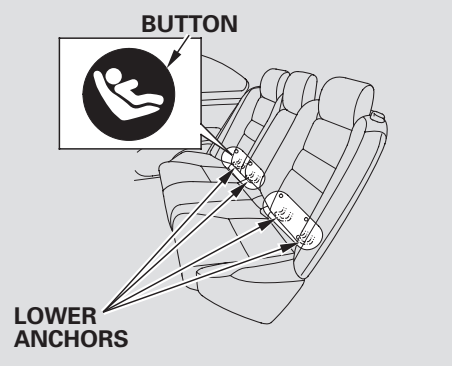
Installing a Child Seat with LATCH

Your vehicle is equipped with LATCH (Lower Anchors and Tethers for CHildren) at the outer rear seats.

The lower anchors are located between the seat-back and seat bottom, and are to be used only with a child seat designed for use with LATCH.

The location of each lower anchor is indicated by a small button above the anchor point.

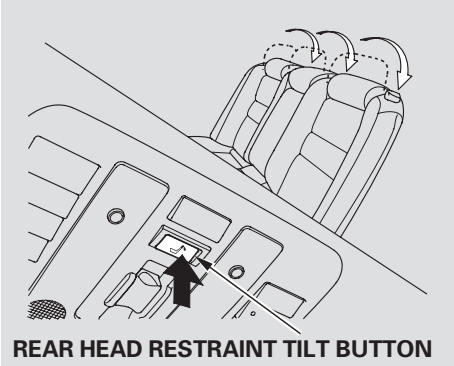
You can find lower anchors in the slits in the seat-backs.



To install a LATCH-compatible child seat:

1. Move the seat belt buckle or tongue away from the lower anchors.

2. Make sure there are no objects near the anchors that could prevent a secure connection between the child seat and the anchors.

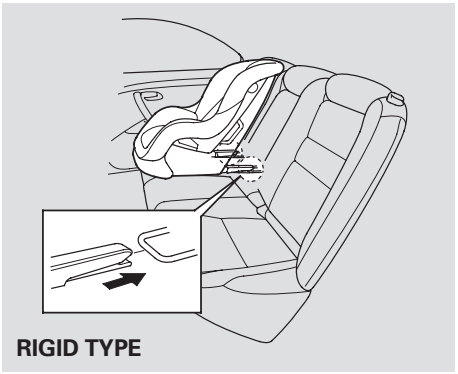


3. Push the rear head restraint tilt button on the ceiling console to pivot the head restraints down.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

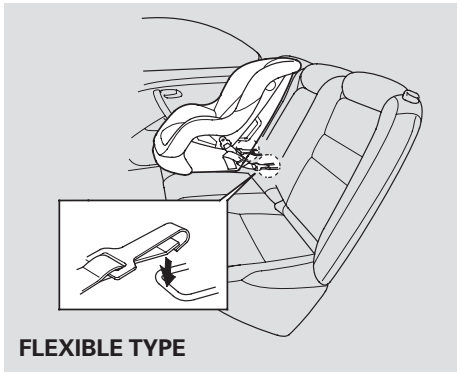
Installing a Child Seat



RIGID TYPE

4. Place the child seat on the vehicle seat, then attach the seat to the lower anchors according to the child seat maker's instructions.

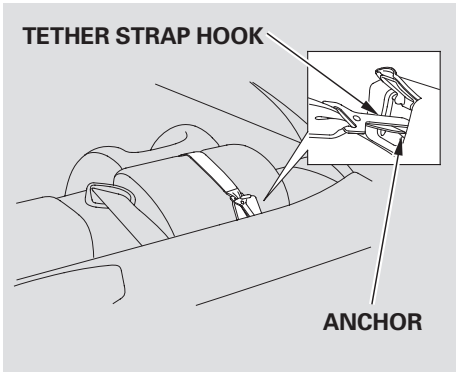
   Some LATCH-compatible seats have a rigid-type connector as shown above.



FLEXIBLE TYPE

   Other LATCH-compatible seats have a flexible-type connector as shown above.

5. Whatever type you have, follow the child seat maker's instructions for adjusting or tightening the fit.



6. Route the tether strap over the head restraint, then attach the tether strap hook to the anchor, making sure the strap is not twisted.

7. Tighten the strap according to the seat maker's instructions.

8. Push and pull the child seat forward and from side-to-side to verify that it is secure.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Installing a Child Seat with a Lap/Shoulder Belt

When not using the LATCH system, all child seats must be secured to the vehicle with the lap part of a lap/shoulder belt.

In addition, the lap/shoulder belts in all seating positions except the driver's have a lockable retractor that must be activated to secure a child seat.

1. With the child seat in the desired seating position, route the belt through the child seat according to the seat maker's instructions, then insert the latch plate into the buckle and remove any slack from the lap portion of the belt.

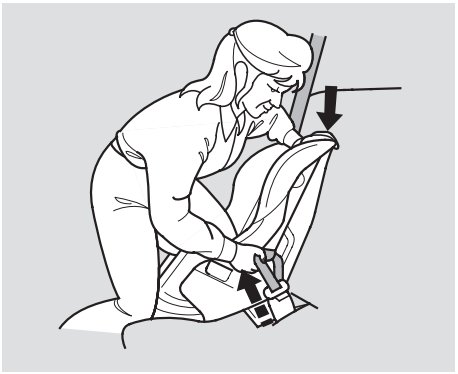
2. To activate the lockable retractor, slowly pull the shoulder part of the belt all the way out until it stops, then let the belt feed back into the retractor.

3. After the belt has retracted, tug on it. If the belt is locked, you will not be able to pull it out. If you can pull the belt out, it is not locked, and you will need to repeat these steps.

CONTINUED

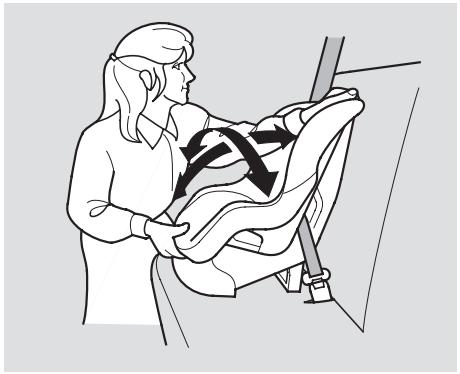
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Installing a Child Seat



4. After confirming that the belt is locked, grab the shoulder part of the belt near the buckle, and pull up to remove any slack from the lap part of the belt. Remember, if the lap part of the belt is not tight, the child seat will not be secure.

   To remove slack, it may help to put weight on the child seat, or push on the back of the seat while pulling up on the belt.

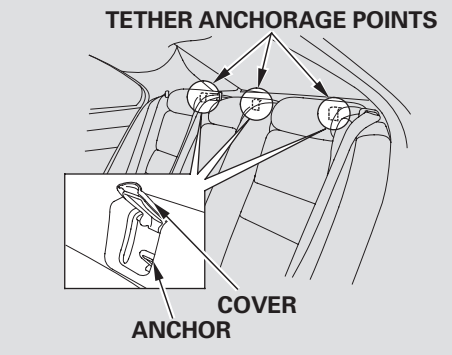


5. Push and pull the child seat forward and from side-to-side to verify that it is secure enough to stay upright during normal driving maneuvers. If the child seat is not secure, unlatch the belt, allow it to retract fully, then repeat these steps.

To deactivate the lockable retractor and remove a child seat, unlatch the buckle, unroute the seat belt, and let the belt fully retract.

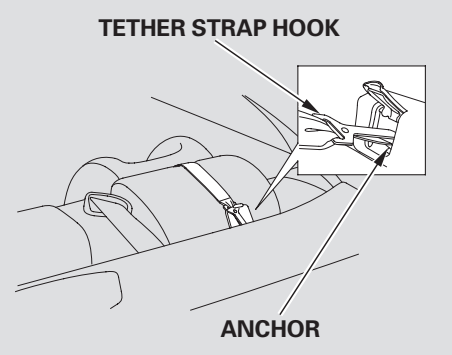
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Installing a Child Seat with a Tether



A child seat with a tether can be installed in any seating position in the back seat, using one of the anchorage points shown above.

Since a tether can provide additional security to the lap/shoulder belt installation, we recommend using a tether whenever one is required or available.



1. After properly securing the child seat with the lap/shoulder belt (see page 22), pivot the head restraint down (see page 157) and route the tether strap over the head restraint.
2. Lift the anchor cover, then attach the tether strap hook to the anchor, making sure the strap is not twisted.
3. Tighten the strap according to the seat maker's instructions.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Protecting Larger Children

When a child reaches the recommended weight or height limit for a forward-facing child seat, the child should sit in a back seat on a booster seat and wear the lap/shoulder belt.

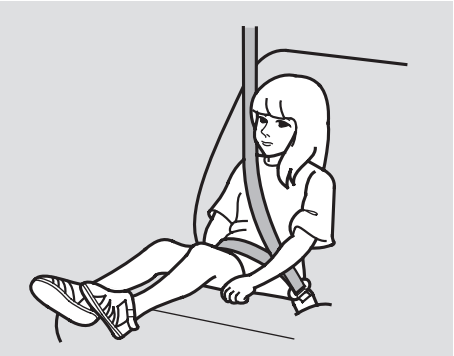
The following pages give instructions on how to check proper seat belt fit, what kind of booster seat to use if one is needed, and important precautions for a child who must sit in front.

⚠WARNING

Allowing a child age 12 or under to sit in front can result in injury or death if the passenger's front airbag inflates.

If a child must ride in front, move the vehicle seat as far back as possible, use a booster seat if needed, have the child sit up properly and wear the seat belt properly.

Checking Seat Belt Fit



To determine if a lap/shoulder belt properly fits a child, have the child put on the seat belt, then ask yourself:

1. Does the child sit all the way back against the seat?
2. Do the child's knees bend comfortably over the edge of the seat?

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

3. Does the shoulder belt cross between the child's neck and arm?

4. Is the lap part of the belt as low as possible, touching the child's thighs?

5. Will the child be able to stay seated like this for the whole trip?

If you answer yes to all these questions, the child is ready to wear the lap/shoulder belt correctly. If you answer no to any question, the child needs to ride on a booster seat.

Using a Booster Seat

A child who has outgrown a forward-facing child seat should ride in a back seat and use a booster seat until the lap/shoulder belt fits them properly without the booster.

Some states and Canadian provinces also require children to use a booster seat until they reach a given age or weight (e.g., 6 years or 60 lbs). Be sure to check current laws in the states or provinces where you intend to drive.

Booster seats can be high-back or low-back. Whichever style you select, make sure the booster seat meets federal safety standards (see page 45) and that you follow the booster seat maker's instructions.

If a child who uses a booster seat must ride in front, move the vehicle seat as far back as possible and be sure the child is wearing the seat belt properly.

A child may continue using a booster seat until the tops of their ears are even with the top of the vehicle's or booster's seat-back. A child of this height should be tall enough to use the lap/shoulder belt without a booster seat.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Protecting Larger Children

When Can a Larger Child Sit in Front

The National Highway Traffic Safety Administration and Transport Canada recommend that all children age 12 and under be properly restrained in a back seat.

If the passenger's front airbag inflates in a moderate to severe frontal collision, the airbag can cause serious injuries to a child who is unrestrained, improperly restrained, sitting too close to the airbag, or out of position.

A side airbag also poses risks. If any part of a larger child's body is in the path of a deploying side airbag, the child could receive possibly serious injuries.

Of course, children vary widely. And while age may be one indicator of when a child can safely ride in front, there are other important factors you should consider.

Physical Size

Physically, a child must be large enough for the lap/shoulder belt to properly fit (see pages 17 and 52). If the seat belt does not fit properly, with or without the child sitting on a booster seat, the child should not sit in front.

Maturity

To safely ride in front, a child must be able to follow the rules, including sitting properly, and wearing the seat belt properly throughout a ride.

If you decide that a child can safely ride up front, be sure to:

- Carefully read the owner's manual, and make sure you understand all seat belt instructions and all safety information.
- Move the vehicle seat to the rear-most position.
- Have the child sit up straight, back against the seat, and feet on or near the floor.
- Check that the child's seat belt is properly and securely positioned.
- Supervise the child. Even mature children sometimes need to be reminded to fasten the seat belts or sit properly.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Additional Safety Precautions

- ***Do not let a child wear a seat belt across the neck.*** This could result in serious neck injuries during a crash.

- ***Do not let a child put the shoulder part of a seat belt behind the back or under the arm.*** This could cause very serious injuries during a crash. It also increases the chance that the child will slide under the belt in a crash and be injured.

- ***Two children should never use the same seat belt.*** If they do, they could be very seriously injured in a crash.

- ***Do not put any accessories on a seat belt.*** Devices intended to improve a child's comfort or reposition the shoulder part of a seat belt can make the belt less effective and increase the chance of serious injury in a crash.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Carbon Monoxide Hazard

Your vehicle's exhaust contains carbon monoxide gas. Carbon monoxide should not enter the vehicle in normal driving if you maintain your vehicle properly and follow the information on this page.

Have the exhaust system inspected for leaks whenever:

- The vehicle is raised for an oil change.
- You notice a change in the sound of the exhaust.
- The vehicle was in a collision that may have damaged the underside.

⚠WARNING

Carbon monoxide gas is toxic. Breathing it can cause unconsciousness and even kill you.

Avoid any enclosed areas or activities that expose you to carbon monoxide.

High levels of carbon monoxide can collect rapidly in enclosed areas, such as a garage. Do not run the engine with the garage door closed. Even with the door open, run the engine only long enough to move the vehicle out of the garage.

With the trunk open, airflow can pull exhaust gas into your vehicle's interior and create a hazardous condition. If you must drive with the trunk open, open all the windows and set the climate control system as shown below.

If you must sit in your parked vehicle with the engine running, even in an unconfined area, adjust the climate control system as follows:

1. Select the fresh air mode.
2. Select the mode.
3. Turn the fan on high speed.
4. Set the temperature control to a comfortable setting.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Safety Labels

These labels are in the locations shown. They warn you of potential hazards that could cause serious injury or death. Read these labels carefully.

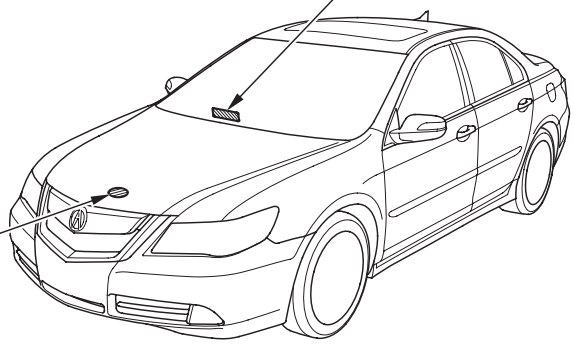
If a label comes off or becomes hard to read (except for the U.S. dashboard label which may be removed by the owner), contact your dealer for a replacement.

DASHBOARD

U.S. models only

This Vehicle is Equipped with Advanced Air Bags
Even with Advanced Air Bags
Children can be killed or seriously injured by the air bag.
The back seat is the safest place for children.
Never put a rear-facing child seat in the front.
Always use seat belts and child restraints.
See owner's manual for more information about air bags.
To be removed by owner only.

RADIATOR CAP



CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

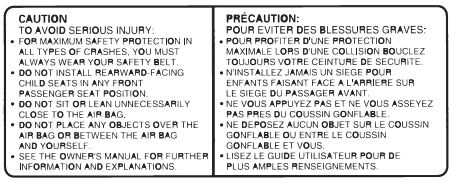
Safety Labels

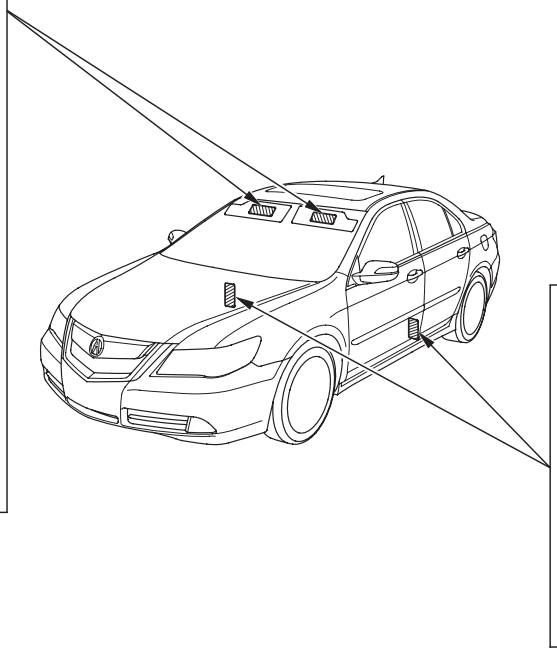
SUN VISORS

U.S. models

WARNING
EVEN WITH ADVANCED AIR BAGS
Children can be killed or seriously injured by the air bag
The back seat is the safest place for children
Never put a rear-facing child seat in the front
Always use seat belts and child restraints
See owner's manual for more information about air bags

Canadian models


CAUTION
TO AVOID SERIOUS INJURY:
• FOR MAXIMUM SAFETY PROTECTION IN ALL TYPES OF CRASHES, YOU MUST ALWAYS WEAR YOUR SAFETY BELT.
• DO NOT INSTALL REARWARD-FACING CHILD SEATS IN ANY FRONT PASSENGER SEAT POSITION.
• DO NOT SIT OR LEAN UNNECESSARILY CLOSE TO THE AIR BAG.
• DO NOT PLACE ANY OBJECTS OVER THE AIR BAG OR BETWEEN THE AIR BAG AND YOURSELF.
• SEE THE OWNER'S MANUAL FOR FURTHER INFORMATION AND EXPLANATIONS.
PRÉCAUTION:
POUR EVITER DES BLESSURES GRAVES:
• POUR PROFITER D'UNE PROTECTION MAXIMALE LORS D'UNE COLLISION BOUCLEZ TOUJOURS VOTRE CEINTURE DE SECURITE.
• N'INSTALLEZ JAMAIS UN SIEGE POUR ENFANTS FAISANT FACE A L'ARRIERE SUR LE SIEGE DU PASSAGER AVANT.
• NE VOUS APPUYEZ PAS ET NE VOUS ASSEYEZ PAS PRES DU COUSSIN GONFLABLE.
• NE DEPOSEZ AUCUN OBJET SUR LE COUSSIN GONFLABLE OU ENTRE LE COUSSIN GONFLABLE ET VOUS.
• LISEZ LE GUIDE UTILISATEUR POUR DE PLUS AMPLES RENSEIGNEMENTS.



DOORJAMBS

U.S. models

SIDE AIRBAG
This car is equipped with side airbags in the front seats and side curtain airbags.
Do not lean against the door.
See owner's manual for more information.

Canadian models

SIDE AIRBAG
This car is equipped with side airbags in the front seats and side curtain airbags.
Do not lean against the door.
See owner's manual for more information.
COUSSIN GONFLABLE LATERAL
Cette automobile est équipée de coussins gonflables latéraux dans les sièges avant ainsi que de coussins gonflables latéraux de type rideau.
Ne vous appuyez pas sur la porte.
Consultez le Manuel du propriétaire pour en savoir plus.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

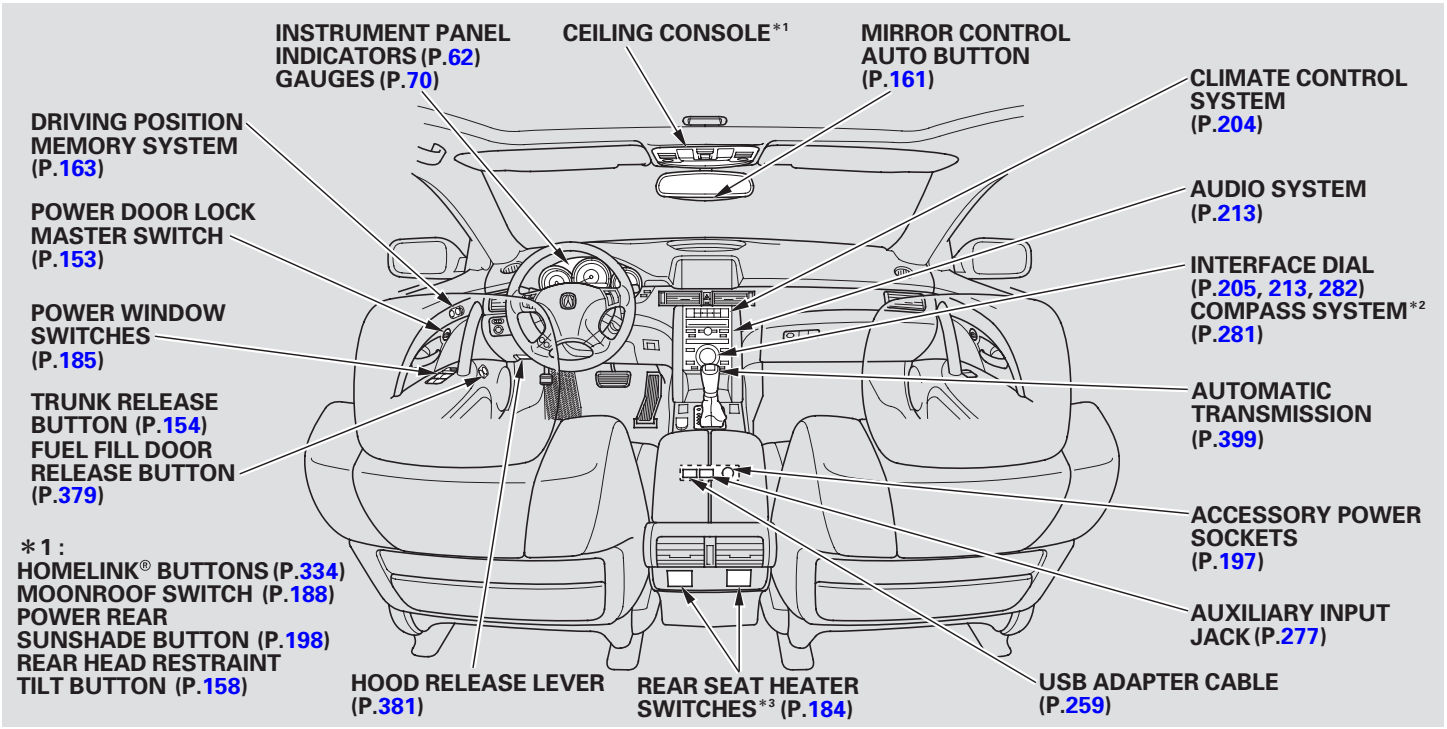
Instruments and Controls

This section gives information about the controls and displays that contribute to the daily operation of your vehicle. All the essential controls are within easy reach.

Control Locations 60
Instrument Panel 61
Instrument Panel Indicators..... 62
Gauges 70
  Temperature Gauge 70
  Fuel Gauge 70
Multi-Information Display 71
Controls Near the Steering Wheel 136
Windshield Wipers and Washers 137
Turn Signals and Headlights..... 140
  Fog Lights 142
  Daytime Running Lights 142
  Automatic Lighting Off Feature..... 143
Adaptive Front Lighting System (AFS) 144
Hazard Warning Button..... 146
Instrument Panel Brightness 146
Rear Window Defogger 147
Steering Wheel Adjustments 148
Keys and Locks..... 150
Immobilizer System..... 151
Ignition Switch 152
Door Locks 153
Trunk..... 154
  Emergency Trunk Opener 155
Childproof Door Locks 155
Seats 156
Mirrors..... 161
Driving Position Memory System..... 163
Keyless Access System..... 166
Front Seat Heaters 181
Front Seat Heaters and Seat Ventilation 182
Rear Seat Heaters (Canadian models) 184
Power Windows 185
Moonroof 188
Parking Brake 191
Interior Convenience Items..... 192
  Glove Box 193
  Beverage Holders..... 194
  Console Compartment 195
  Sun Visors..... 196
  Vanity Mirror 196
  Accessory Power Sockets..... 197
  Front Door Pockets..... 197
  Power Rear Sunshade 198
  Integrated Sunshades 199
Interior Lights..... 200

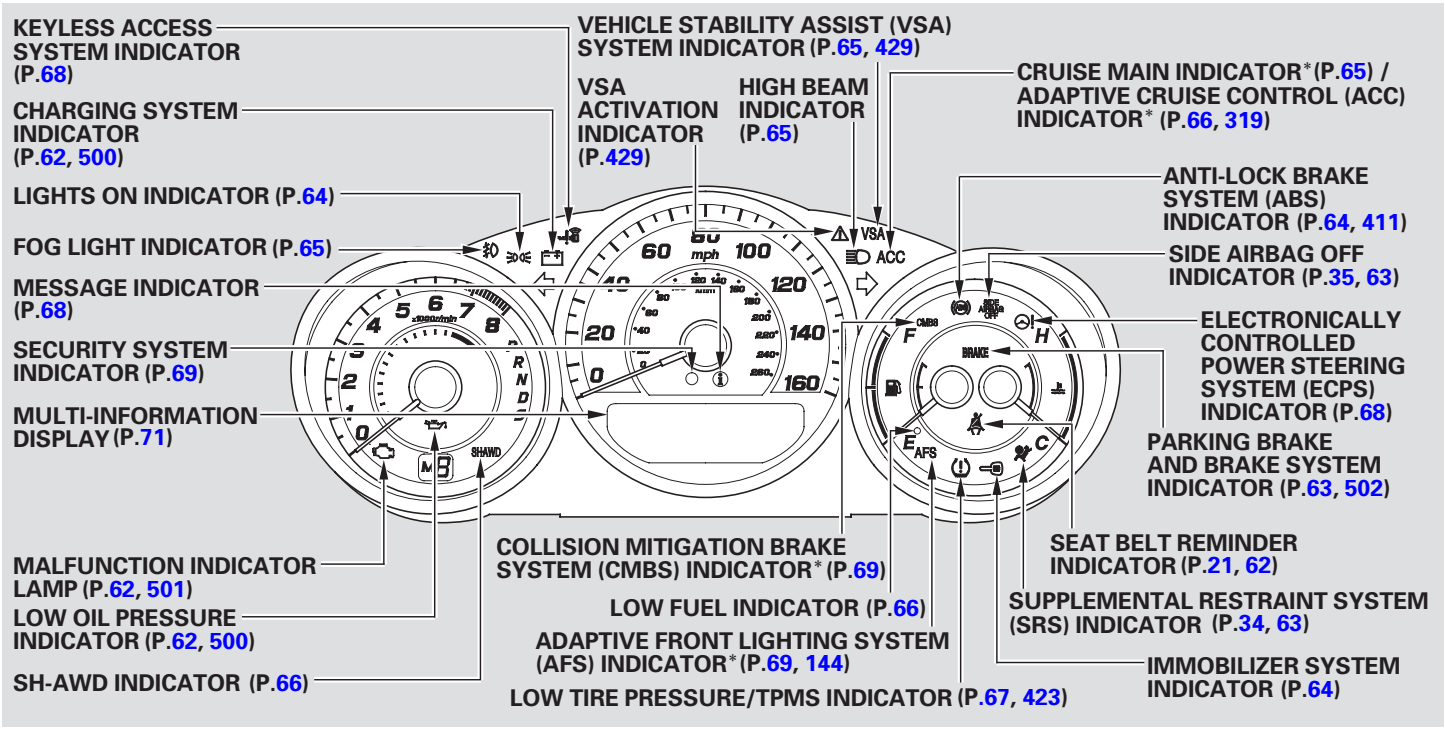
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Control Locations


INSTRUMENT PANEL INDICATORS (P.62) GAUGES (P.70)
CEILING CONSOLE*1
MIRROR CONTROL AUTO BUTTON (P.161)
CLIMATE CONTROL SYSTEM (P.204)
DRIVING POSITION MEMORY SYSTEM (P.163)
POWER DOOR LOCK MASTER SWITCH (P.153)
AUDIO SYSTEM (P.213)
INTERFACE DIAL (P.205, 213, 282)
COMPASS SYSTEM*2 (P.281)
POWER WINDOW SWITCHES (P.185)
TRUNK RELEASE BUTTON (P.154)
FUEL FILL DOOR RELEASE BUTTON (P.379)
AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION (P.399)
ACCESSORY POWER SOCKETS (P.197)
AUXILIARY INPUT JACK (P.277)
*1:
HOMELINK® BUTTONS (P.334)
MOONROOF SWITCH (P.188)
POWER REAR SUNSHADE BUTTON (P.198)
REAR HEAD RESTRAINT TILT BUTTON (P.158)
HOOD RELEASE LEVER (P.381)
REAR SEAT HEATER SWITCHES*3 (P.184)
USB ADAPTER CABLE (P.259)

*2 : RL models
*3 : Canadian models only

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine


KEYLESS ACCESS SYSTEM INDICATOR (P.68)
CHARGING SYSTEM INDICATOR (P.62, 500)
LIGHTS ON INDICATOR (P.64)
FOG LIGHT INDICATOR (P.65)
MESSAGE INDICATOR (P.68)
SECURITY SYSTEM INDICATOR (P.69)
MULTI-INFORMATION DISPLAY (P.71)
MALFUNCTION INDICATOR LAMP (P.62, 501)
LOW OIL PRESSURE INDICATOR (P.62, 500)
SH-AWD INDICATOR (P.66)
VEHICLE STABILITY ASSIST (VSA) SYSTEM INDICATOR (P.65, 429)
VSA ACTIVATION INDICATOR (P.429)
HIGH BEAM INDICATOR (P.65)
CRUISE MAIN INDICATOR* (P.65) / ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL (ACC) INDICATOR* (P.66, 319)
ANTI-LOCK BRAKE SYSTEM (ABS) INDICATOR (P.64, 411)
SIDE AIRBAG OFF INDICATOR (P.35, 63)
ELECTRONICALLY CONTROLLED POWER STEERING SYSTEM (ECPS) INDICATOR (P.68)
PARKING BRAKE AND BRAKE SYSTEM INDICATOR (P.63, 502)
SEAT BELT REMINDER INDICATOR (P.21, 62)
SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT SYSTEM (SRS) INDICATOR (P.34, 63)
IMMOBILIZER SYSTEM INDICATOR (P.64)
COLLISION MITIGATION BRAKE SYSTEM (CMBS) INDICATOR* (P.69)
LOW FUEL INDICATOR (P.66)
ADAPTIVE FRONT LIGHTING SYSTEM (AFS) INDICATOR* (P.69, 144)
LOW TIRE PRESSURE/TPMS INDICATOR (P.67, 423)

The U.S. instrument panel is shown. Differences for the Canadian models are noted in the text.
*: If equipped.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Instrument Panel Indicators

The instrument panel has many indicators to give you important information about your vehicle.

Seat Belt Reminder Indicator

This indicator comes on when you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position. It reminds you and your passenger to fasten your seat belts. A beeper also sounds if you have not fastened your seat belt.

If you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position before fastening your belt, the beeper sounds and the indicator flashes. If you do not fasten your seat belt before the beeper stops, the indicator stops flashing but remains on.

If your front passenger does not fasten their seat belt, the indicator comes on about 6 seconds after the ignition switch is turned to the ON (II) position.

If either of you do not fasten your seat belt while driving, the beeper will sound and the indicator will flash again at regular intervals. For more information, see page 21 .

You will also see a “FASTEN SEAT BELT” or “FASTEN PASSENGER SEAT BELT” message on the multi-information display (see page 79).

Low Oil Pressure Indicator

The engine can be severely damaged if this indicator flashes or stays on when the engine is running, or if a “CHECK ENGINE OIL LEVEL” message is on the multi-information display. For more information, see page 500 .

Charging System Indicator

If this indicator comes on when the engine is running, the battery is not being charged, and you will also see a “CHECK CHARGING SYSTEM” message on the multi-information display. For more information, see page 500 .

Malfunction Indicator Lamp

You will also see a “CHECK EMISSION SYSTEM” message on the multi-information display. For more information, see page 501 .

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

U.S. Canada

BRAKE

Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator

This indicator has two functions:

1. It comes on when you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position. It is a reminder to check the parking brake. Driving with the parking brake not fully released can damage the rear brakes, axles, and tires.
   If you drive without releasing the parking brake, a beeper will sound, and you will also see a "RELEASE PARKING BRAKE" message on the multi-information display (see page 78).

2. If it stays on after you have fully released the parking brake while the engine is running, or if it comes on while driving, it can indicate a problem in the brake system. You will also see a "BRAKE FLUID LOW" or "CHECK BRAKE SYSTEM" message on the multi-information display. For more information, see page 508.

U.S. Canada

SIDE AIRBAG OFF

Side Airbag Off Indicator

This indicator comes on when you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position. If it comes on at any other time, it indicates that the passenger's side airbag has automatically shut off. You will also see a "PASSENGER SIDE AIRBAG OFF" message on the multi-information display (see page 79). For more information, see page 35.

Supplemental Restraint System Indicator

This indicator comes on briefly when you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position. If it comes on at any other time, it indicates a potential problem with your front airbags. This indicator will also alert you to a potential problem with your side airbags, passenger's side airbag automatic cutoff system, side curtain airbags, automatic seat belt tensioners driver's seat position sensor, the front passenger's weight sensors, or, on models with ACC, seat belt e-pretensioners. You will also see a "CHECK AIRBAG SYSTEM" message on the multi-information display (see page 79). For more information, see page 34.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Instrument Panel Indicators

Lights On Indicator

This indicator reminds you that the exterior lights are on. It comes on when the light switch is in either the or position. This indicator will also come on when the light switch is in AUTO and the lights turn on automatically. If you turn the ignition switch to the ACCESSORY (I) or the LOCK (0) position without turning off the light switch, this indicator will remain on. A reminder chime will also sound when you open the driver's door.

Immobilizer System Indicator

This indicator comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position. It will then go off if you have a properly-coded remote. If it is not a properly-coded remote, the indicator will blink and the engine will not start (see page 151).

If you use the remote, this indicator blinks several times when you turn the ignition switch from ACCESSORY (I) to the LOCK (0) position.

If you use the built-in key, this indicator blinks several times when you turn the ignition switch from ON (II) to the ACCESSORY (I) position.

Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) Indicator

This indicator normally comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position, and when the ignition switch is turned to the START (III) position. If this indicator comes on at any other time, there is a problem in the ABS. If this happens, take the vehicle to your dealer to have it checked. With this indicator on, your vehicle still has normal braking ability but no anti-lock function. You will also see a "CHECK ABS SYSTEM" message on the multi-information display (see page 78). For more information, see page 411 .

Turn Signal and Hazard Warning Indicators

The left or right turn signal indicator blinks when you signal a lane change or turn. If the indicator does not blink or blinks rapidly, it usually means one of the turn signal bulbs is burned out (see page 464). Replace the bulb as soon as possible, since other drivers cannot see that you are signaling.

When you press the hazard warning button, both turn signals blink. All turn signals on the outside of the vehicle should flash.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System Indicator

This indicator normally comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position.

If it comes on and stays on at any other time, or it does not come on when you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position, there is a problem with the VSA system. You will also see a "CHECK VSA SYSTEM" message on the multi-information display (see page 78). Take your vehicle to a dealer to have it checked. Without VSA, your vehicle still has normal driving ability, but will not have VSA traction and stability enhancement. For more information, see page 429 .

VSA Activation Indicator

This indicator has three functions:

1. It comes on as a reminder that you have turned off the vehicle stability assist (VSA) system.
2. It flashes when VSA is active (see page 429).
3. It comes on along with the VSA system indicator if there is a problem with the VSA system. You will also see a "CHECK VSA SYSTEM" message on the multi-information display (see page 78).

This indicator normally comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position. For more information, see page 429 .

Fog Light Indicator

This indicator comes on when you turn on the fog lights. For more information, see page 142 .

High Beam Indicator

This indicator comes on with the high beam headlights. For more information, see page 140 .

This indicator also comes on with reduced brightness when the daytime running lights (DRL) are on (see page 142).

Cruise Main Indicator

On models without adaptive cruise control (ACC)

This indicator comes on when you turn on the cruise control system by pressing the CRUISE button on the steering wheel (see page 316).

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Instrument Panel Indicators

ACC Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) Indicator

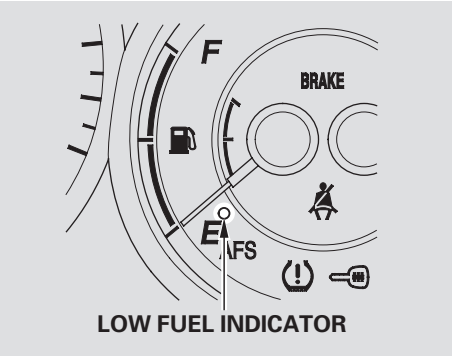
On models with adaptive cruise control (ACC)

This indicator normally comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position.

When you push the ACC button on the steering wheel, this indicator comes on green. You will also see "ACC" on the multi-information display.

If the indicator comes on orange, there is a problem with the ACC system. You will also see a "CHECK ACC SYSTEM" message on the multi-information display (see page 79). Take your vehicle to your dealer to have it checked. For more information, see page 319 .

Low Fuel Indicator



LOW FUEL INDICATOR

This indicator is in the fuel gauge. It comes on as a reminder that you must refuel soon. You will also see a "FUEL LOW" message on the multi-information display (see page 79). When the indicator comes on, there are about 2.69 U.S. gal (10.2 ℓ) of fuel remaining in the tank before the needle reaches E. There is a small reserve of fuel remaining in the tank when the needle does reach E.

SH-AWD Super Handling-All Wheel Drive (SH-AWD) Indicator

This indicator normally comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position. If this indicator comes on at any other time, there is a problem in the SH-AWD system. You will also see a "CHECK SH-AWD SYSTEM" message on the multi-information display (see page 78) .Take your vehicle to a dealer to have it checked. For more information, see page 407 .

If the indicator blinks while driving, pull to the side of the road when it is safe, shift to Park, and let the engine idle until the indicator goes out.

If it comes on while driving, it indicates the differential temperature is too high.

You will also see a "SH-AWD DIFF TEMP. HIGH" message on the multi-information display (see page 78).

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Pull to the side of the road when it is safe, shift to Park, and let the engine idle until the indicator goes out.

NOTICE

Continuing to drive with the SH-AWD indicator blinking may cause serious damage to the system.

Low Tire Pressure/ TPMS Indicator

This indicator normally comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position.

This indicator has two functions:

1. If it comes on while driving, it indicates that one or more of your vehicle's tires are significantly low on pressure.

You will also see a "CHECK TIRE PRESSURE" message on the multi-information display (see page 79).

Check the tire pressure monitor on the multi-information display and determine the cause (see page 425).

If this happens, pull to the side of the road when it is safe, check which tire has lost pressure on the multi-information display, and determine the cause. If it is because of a flat tire, have the flat tire repaired as soon as possible. If two or more tires are underinflated, call a professional towing service. For more information, see page 513 .

2. If this indicator begins to flash, there is a problem with the tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS). You will also see a "CHECK TPMS SYSTEM" message on the multi-information display. The indicator continues to flash for a while (approximately 1 minute), then stays on. If this happens, have your dealer check the system as soon as possible. For more information, see page 423 .

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Instrument Panel Indicators

Electronically Controlled Power Steering System (ECPS) Indicator

This indicator normally comes on when you turn the ignition to the ON (II) position and goes off after the engine starts. If it comes on at any other time, there is a problem with the power steering system. You will also see a “CHECK POWER STEERING SYSTEM” message on the multi-information display (see page 78). If this happens, stop the vehicle in a safe place, and turn off the engine. Reset the system by restarting the engine, and watch this indicator. If it does not go off or comes back on again while driving, take the vehicle to your dealer to have it checked. With the indicator on, the ECPS is turned off, which could make the vehicle harder to steer.

The indicator comes on when you run the engine while the vehicle is not moving. To turn the indicator off, restart the engine.

Keyless Access System Indicator

This indicator normally comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position. If it comes on at any other time, it indicates that there is a problem with the system. You will also see a “CHECK KEYLESS ACCESS SYSTEM” message on the multi-information display (see page 79). For more information, see page 179 .

Message Indicator

This indicator comes on when there is a system message on the multi-information display. Press the INFO button on the steering wheel (see page 71) to see the message (see page 78).

Most of the time, this indicator comes on along with other indicators in the instrument panel such as the seat belt reminder indicator, SRS indicator, VSA system indicator, etc.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

AFS Adaptive Front Lighting System (AFS) Indicator

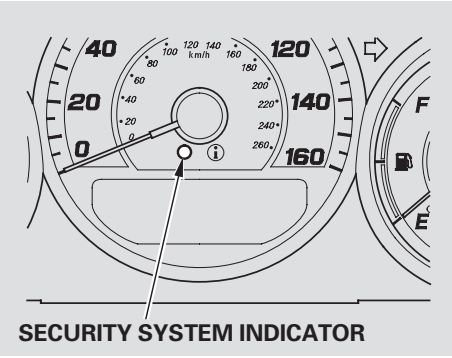
If equipped

This indicator normally comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position.

It comes on as a reminder that you have turned off the adaptive front lighting system (AFS).

This indicator blinks when there is a problem with the AFS system; you will also see a "CHECK ADAPTIVE FRONT LIGHTING SYSTEM" message on the multi-information display (see page 78). If this happens, stop the vehicle in a safe place, turn the ignition switch to the ACCESSORY (I) or the LOCK (0) position, and restart the engine. If the indicator does not go off or blinks again, take your vehicle to a dealer to have it checked. For more information, see page 144 .

Security System Indicator



SECURITY SYSTEM INDICATOR

This indicator comes on when the security system is set. For more information, see page 315 .

CMBS Collision Mitigation Brake System (CMBS) Indicator

If equipped

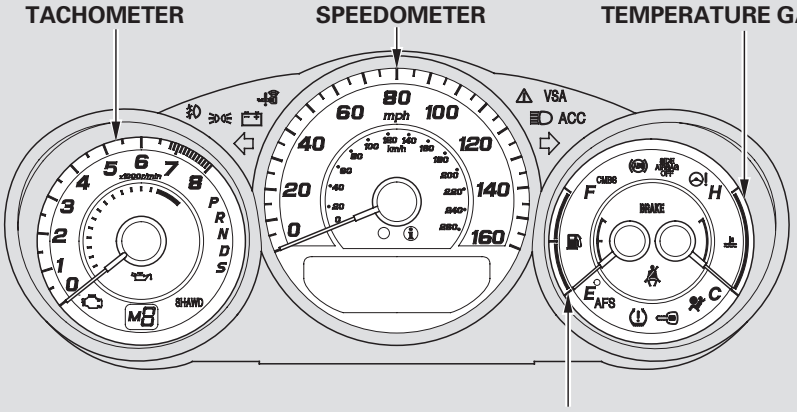
This indicator normally comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position. It also comes on as a reminder that you have turned off the collision mitigation brake system (CMBS).

The CMBS indicator also comes on if dirt or other debris blocks the radar sensor in the front grille. You will also see a "CHECK CMBS RADAR SENSOR" message on the multi-information display. When you clean the radar sensor, the indicator should go off the next time you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position.

If the indicator comes on at any other time, there is a problem with the CMBS. You will also see a "CHECK CMBS SYSTEM" message on the multi-information display. If this happens, take your vehicle to a dealer, and have it checked. For more information, see page 418 . When this indicator is on, the CMBS is not working.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Gauges



U.S. model is shown.

Temperature Gauge

This shows the temperature of the engine's coolant. During normal operation, the pointer should rise from the bottom white mark to about the middle of the gauge. In severe driving conditions, such as very hot weather or a long period of uphill driving, the pointer may rise to the upper end of the white section of the gauge. If it reaches the red (hot) mark, pull safely to the side of the road. For more information, see page 497 .

Fuel Gauge

This shows how much fuel you have. It may show slightly more or less than the actual amount. The needle returns to the bottom after you turn off the ignition.

NOTICE

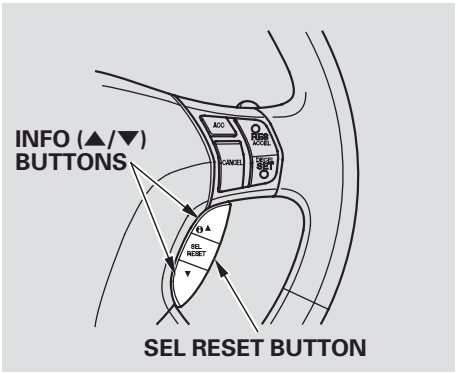
Avoid driving with an extremely low fuel level. Running out of fuel could cause the engine to misfire, damaging the catalytic converter.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

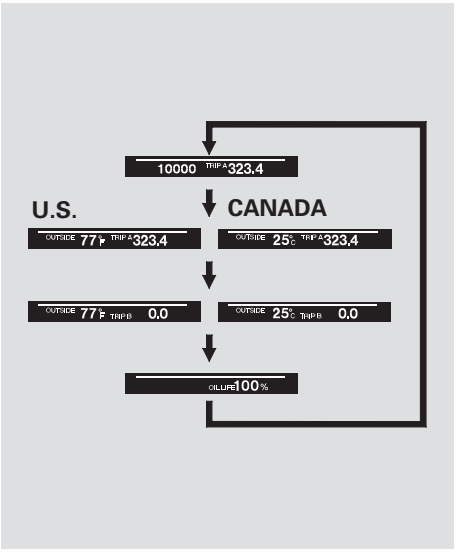
Multi-Information Display

The multi-information display in the instrument panel displays various information and messages when the ignition switch is in the ON (II) position. Some of the messages help you operate your vehicle more comfortably. Others help to keep you aware of the periodic maintenance your vehicle needs for continued trouble-free driving.

When you open the driver's door, a "Welcome" message is shown on the multi-information display. When you turn the ignition switch from the ON (II) position to the ACCESSORY (I) position, a "Goodbye" message is shown on the display.



You can change the display and customize your vehicle control settings by pressing the SEL/RESET or INFO buttons on the right side of the steering wheel.

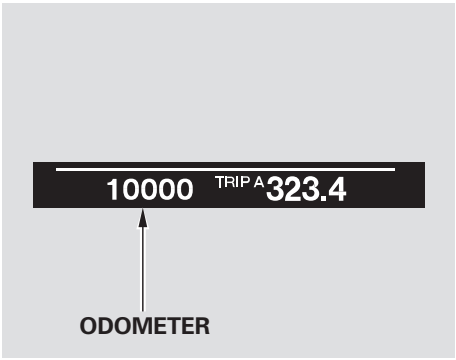


With the ignition switch in the ON (II) position, the lower part of the multi-information display changes as shown in the illustration, each time you press the SEL/RESET button.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

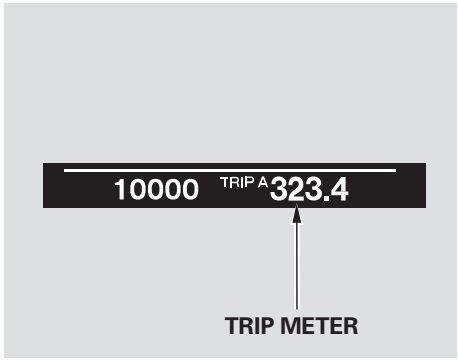
Multi-Information Display

Odometer



The odometer shows the total distance your vehicle has been driven. It measures miles in U.S. models and kilometers in Canadian models. It is illegal under U.S. federal law and Canadian provincial/ territorial regulations to disconnect, reset, or alter the odometer with the intent to change the number of miles or kilometers indicated.

Trip Meter



This meter shows the number of miles (U.S.) or kilometers (Canada) driven since you last reset it. There are two trip meters: Trip A and Trip B. Each trip meter works independently, so you can keep track of two different distances.

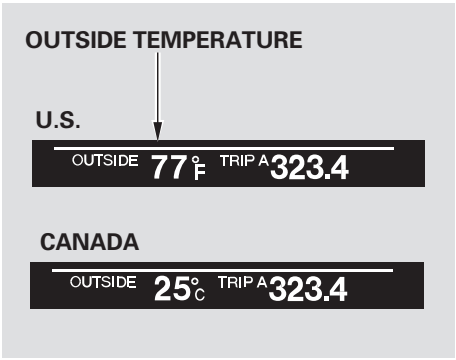
To reset a trip meter, display it, then press and hold the SEL/RESET button until the number resets to "0.0".

When you reset Trip A, average fuel economy A is reset at the same time. When you reset Trip B, average fuel economy B is reset.

In the customizing mode, you can set Trip A, average fuel economy A, and average speed to reset at the same time when you refuel your vehicle (see page 99).

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Outside Temperature



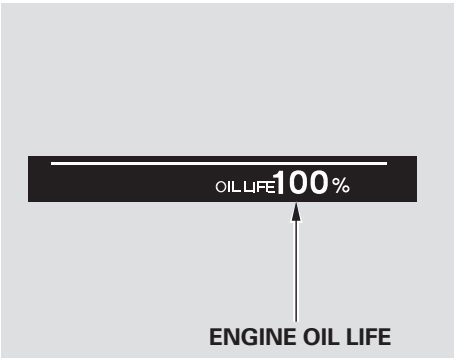
This shows the outside Fahrenheit temperature in U.S. models, and Celsius temperature in Canadian models.

The temperature sensor is in the front bumper. The temperature reading can be affected by heat reflection from the road surface, engine heat, and the exhaust from surrounding traffic. This can cause an incorrect temperature reading when your vehicle speed is under 19 mph (30 km/h). When you start your trip, the sensor is not fully acclimatized, therefore it may take several minutes until the proper temperature is displayed.

You can adjust the outside temperature display (see page 97).

In certain weather conditions, temperature readings near freezing (32°F, 0°C) could mean that ice is forming on the road surface.

Engine Oil Life

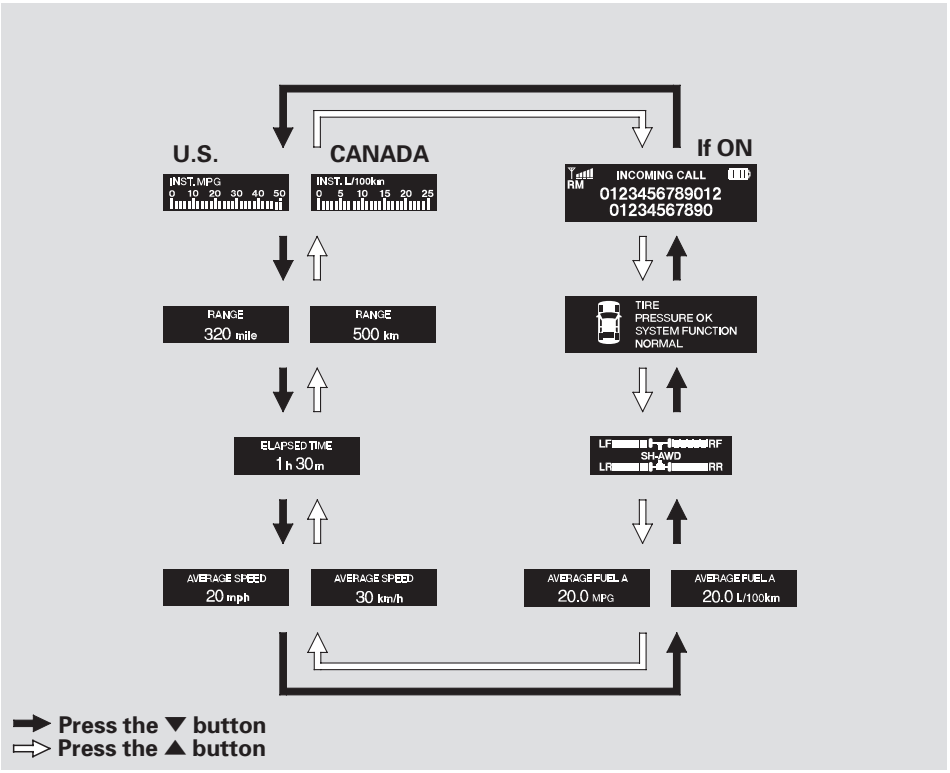


This shows the remaining life of the engine oil. It shows 100% after the engine oil is replaced and the display is reset. The engine oil life is calculated based on engine operating conditions and accumulated engine revolutions. For more information, see page 439.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Multi-Information Display

Normal Display Messages
With the ignition switch in the ON (II) position, the upper part of the display changes, as shown in the illustration, each time you press the ▼ button. If you press the ▲ button, the display returns to the previous message.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Trip Computer
Along with the trip meter, the trip computer calculates these values:

- Instantaneous fuel mileage
- Range
- Elapsed Time
- Average Vehicle Speed
- Average Fuel Economy

INST. MPG (U.S. models)/INST. L/100km (Canadian models)
This shows your instant fuel economy.

When you turn off the engine, INST. MPG or INST. L/100 km is also reset.

RANGE
This shows the estimated distance you can travel on the fuel remaining in the fuel tank. This distance is estimated from the fuel economy you received over the last several miles(U.S.) or kilometers (Canada), so it will vary with changes in speed, traffic, etc.

When the battery is disconnected, or you refuel, RANGE is also reset.

ELAPSED TIME
This shows the accumulated traveling time since you last reset it. When you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position, ELAPSED TIME is reset.
You can customize the ELAPSED TIME reset conditions on the multi-information display (see page 101).

AVERAGE SPEED
This shows the average speed you are traveling in miles per hour (mph) for U.S. models or kilometers per hour (km/h) for Canadian models.

When you reset Trip A, average speed is also reset.

You can customize the average speed reset condition on the multi-information display (see page 99).

AVERAGE FUEL A/B
This shows your vehicle's average fuel economy in mpg (U.S. models) or liter/100 km (Canadian models) since you last reset Trip A or Trip B.

The average fuel economy will be reset when you reset the trip meter, or if the vehicle's battery goes dead or is disconnected.

You can customize the average fuel A reset condition on the multi-information display (see page 99).

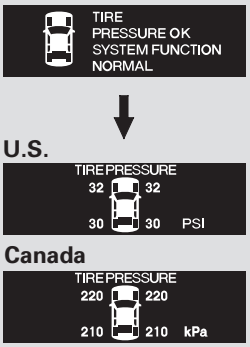
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Multi-Information Display

SH-AWD Torque Distribution Monitor

This monitor shows how much torque is being delivered to each wheel. For more information, see page 407 .

Tire Pressure Monitor



When the tire pressure monitor is shown on the multi-information display, press the SEL/RESET button. The display changes as shown.
You can see the pressure of each tire in this monitor. If one or more tires are low, inflate them to the correct pressure. For more information, see page 423 .

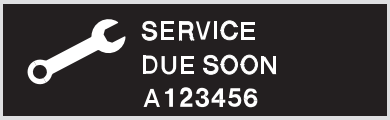
Bluetooth® HandsFreeLink®

You can receive or make phone calls from your cell phone through your vehicle's *Bluetooth*® HandsFreeLink® (HFL) system without touching your cell phone.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

To use the system, your cell phone and the HFL system must be linked. Not all cell phones are compatible with this system. Refer to page 354 for instructions on how to link your cell phone to HFL and how to receive or make phone calls, or visit the acura.com/handsfreelink website.

Maintenance Messages



When the engine oil life reaches 15%, the display shows “SERVICE DUE SOON” and the code for the maintenance items to be performed.

When the engine oil life reaches 5%, the display shows “SERVICE DUE NOW” along with the same maintenance items.

Have your dealer do the indicated maintenance as soon as you see this message, and have them reset the display after completing the service.

If you do not perform the indicated maintenance or do not reset the display, the message changes to “SERVICE PAST DUE” when the engine oil life becomes 0%.

These messages appear on the multi-information display each time you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position.

For details on engine oil life and maintenance messages, refer to page 439.

Also refer to page 438 for important maintenance safety precautions.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Multi-Information Display

Message Display
When a problem is detected with your vehicle, a message will be shown on the multi-information display.
If this happens, refer to the applicable pages of this owner's manual, and follow the instructions.

When there are several messages to be shown, the system switches the messages every 5 seconds.
The message is shown until you push the INFO (▲ or ▼) button.
To see the message again, press the INFO (▲ or ▼) button, 5 seconds after the display disappears.

Here is a list of messages shown on the multi-information display:

	See page 63, 502
	See page 502
	See page 62, 500
	See page 62, 501
	See page 62, 500
	See page 398

	See page 499
	See page 64, 411
	See page 65, 429
	See page 69, 144
	See page 68
	See page 66, 407

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

CHECK TRANSMISSION	See page 399
CHECK AIRBAG SYSTEM	See page 34, 63
DRL CHECK DRL SYSTEM	See page 142
DRL DRL OFF	
U.S. SIDE AIRBAG OFF PASSENGER SIDE AIRBAG OFF Canada PASSENGER SIDE AIRBAG OFF	See page 35, 63
WASHER FLUID LOW	See page 458

ACC CHECK ACC SYSTEM	See page 319
CMBS CHECK CMBS SYSTEM	See page 417
CMBS CHECK CMBS RADAR SENSOR	See page 69, 414
DOOR & TRUNK OPEN	See page 13
FASTEN SEAT BELT	See page 62
FASTEN PASSENGER SEAT BELT	See page 62
FUEL LOW	See page 66

TIGHTEN FUEL CAP	See page 381
TPMS CHECK TPMS SYSTEM	See page 427
SYSTEM FUNCTION ERROR	See page 425
CHECK TIRE PRESSURE	See page 67, 425
CHECK KEYLESS ACCESS SYSTEM	See page 179
KEYLESS REMOTE NOT DETECTED	See page 177
KEYLESS REMOTE LOW BATTERY	See page 178

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Multi-Information Display

SERVICE DUE NOW A123456	See page 441
ACCESSORY (I) POSITION	See page 152
RETURN IGNITION SWITCH TO LOCK (0) POSITION	
ACCESSORY (I) POSITION	See page 152
RETURN IGNITION SWITCH TO LOCK (0) POSITION	
REMOVE KEY	

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Customized Settings
With the multi-information display and the INFO (▲/▼) and SEL/RESET buttons on the right side of the steering wheel, you can customize some vehicle control settings for "DRIVER 1" or "DRIVER 2". If "DRIVER 1" or "DRIVER 2" is not displayed, customizing is not possible.

To have the driver's ID detected, make sure your remote is linked to the system (see **Memory Position Link** on page 104). Then use your remote to unlock the doors (see **Keyless Access Setup** on page 108).

To change the settings, the ignition switch must be in the ON (II) position, and the vehicle must be stopped with the transmission in Park.

To enter the customizing mode, press and hold the INFO (▲/▼) button for more than 3 seconds while the multi-information display is in its normal mode.

If you turn the ignition switch to the ACCESSORY (I) or the LOCK (0) position, or move the shift lever out of Park, the display will change to the normal screen.

You cannot customize the settings under these conditions:
- When the keyless memory settings are off (see page 173).
- If you disconnect the battery, and then do not unlock the door.
- When the multi-information display does not show the driver's ID.

The first customizing menu is:
- CHG SETTING (see page 87)
- DEFAULT ALL (see page 85)

Refer to the following table for a brief summary of each customizable setting and its default. For more information, refer to the page number references in the table.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Multi-Information Display

CUSTOMIZE ENTRY	CUSTOMIZE GROUP	CUSTOMIZE MENU	Description	CUSTOMIZE SET UP	Page
CHG SETTING (see page 87)	ACC SETUP (see page 89)	PRE-RUNNING CAR DETECT BEEP	Causes the system to beep when a vehicle ahead of you gets too close.	ON*1	90
				OFF	
		ACC DISPLAY SPEED UNIT	Changes the ACC display speed unit.	mph*2 / km/h*3	92
	METER SETUP (see page 94)	LANGUAGE SELECTION	Changes the language used in the display.	ENGLISH*1	95
				FRENCH	
				SPANISH	
		ADJUST OUTSIDE TEMP. DISPLAY	Changes the outside temperature reading above or below its current reading.	−5°F～±0°F*2～5°F / −3°C～±0°C*3～3°C	97
		TRIP A RESET with REFUEL	Causes trip meter A, the average fuel economy, and the average speed to reset when you refuel.	ON / OFF*1	99
		ELAPSED TIME RESET	Resets the elapsed time of your current trip.	IGN OFF*1	101
				TRIP A	
				TRIP B	
	POSITION SETUP (see page 103)	MEMORY POSITION LINK	Changes the driver's seat, the steering wheel, and the outside mirror positions to your stored setting.	ON*1 / OFF	104
		AUTO TILT & TELESCOPIC	Moves the steering wheel fully in and out when the key is removed.	ON*1 / OFF	106

*1: Default setting
*2: Default setting for U.S. models
*3: Default setting for Canadian model

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

CUSTOMIZE ENTRY	CUSTOMIZE GROUP	CUSTOMIZE MENU	Description	CUSTOMIZE SET UP		Page
CHG SETTING (see page 87)	KEYLESS ACCESS SETUP (see page 108)	DOOR UNLOCK MODE	Changes which doors unlock when you use the remote or grab the driver's door handle.	DRIVER DOOR ONLY*		109
				ALL DOORS		
		KEYLESS ACCESS LIGHT FLASH	Causes some exterior lights to blink twice when you unlock the doors by grabbing the driver's door handle.	ON*		111
				OFF		
		KEYLESS ACCESS BEEP	Cause the beeper to sound twice when you unlock the doors by grabbing the driver's door handle.	ON*		113
				OFF		
	LIGHTING SETUP (see page 115)	INTERIOR LIGHT DIMMING TIME	Changes how long (in seconds) the interior lights stay on after you close the doors.	60 SEC		116
				30 SEC*		
				15 SEC		
		HEADLIGHT AUTO OFF TIMER	Changes how long (in seconds) the exterior lights stay on after you close the driver's door.	60 SEC		118
				30 SEC	0 SEC	
				15 SEC*		
		AUTO LIGHT SENSITIVITY	Changes the light level that causes the headlights to come on. The headlight switch needs to be in the AUTO position.	MAX		120
				HIGH	MIN	
				MID*		
				LOW		
	DOOR/WINDOW SETUP (see page 122)	AUTO DOOR LOCK	Changes when the doors automatically lock.	SHIFT FROM P		123
				WITH VEH SPD*		
				OFF		

*: Default setting

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Multi-Information Display

CUSTOMIZE ENTRY	CUSTOMIZE GROUP	CUSTOMIZE MENU	Description	CUSTOMIZE SET UP	Page
CHG SETTING (see page 87)	DOOR/WINDOW SETUP (see page 122)	AUTO DOOR UNLOCK	Changes when the doors automatically unlock.	SHIFT TO P* IGN OFF OFF	125
		DOOR LOCK MODE	Changes which doors unlock with the first push of the remote's unlock button.	DRIVER DOOR* ALL DOORS	127
		KEYLESS LOCK ACKNOWLEDGMENT	The exterior lights flash each time you press the LOCK or UNLOCK button.	ON* OFF	129
		SECURITY RELOCK TIMER	Changes how long it takes (in seconds) for the doors to relock and the security system to set after you unlock the driver's door without opening it.	90 SEC 60 SEC 30 SEC*	131
	WIPER SETUP (see page 133)	WIPER ACTION	Changes the wiper operation among two settings when the wiper switch is in the INT position.	INTERMITTENT WITH VEH SPD*	134
DEFAULT ALL (see page 85)			Changes all settings to the default.	SET CANCEL	85

*: Default setting

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

If you want the settings as they were when the vehicle left the factory, select DEFAULT ALL, as described on this page.

If you want to change any vehicle control settings, select CHG SETTING, then press the SEL/RESET button.

Use the INFO (▲/▼) button on the steering wheel to select the settings and the SEL/RESET button to enter your selections.

DEFAULT ALL

If you want to set the default settings, press the INFO (▲/▼) button to select DEFAULT ALL, then press the SEL/RESET button.

If you want to cancel DEFAULT ALL, select CANCEL, then press the SEL/RESET button. The screen goes back to CUSTOMIZE ENTRY.

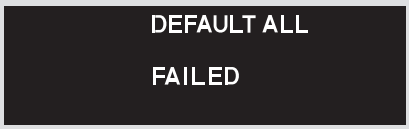
CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Multi-Information Display

To set the default settings again, select DEFAULT ALL, and press the SEL/RESET button. Then select SET, and press the SEL/RESET button.

When DEFAULT ALL is set, you will see the above display for several seconds, then the screen returns to CUSTOMIZE ENTRY.



If DEFAULT ALL is not set, you will see the above display for several seconds, then the screen goes back to the normal message mode. Repeat the procedure to select DEFAULT ALL.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

CHG SETTING
You can customize some of the vehicle control settings to your preference. Here are the settings you can customize:

- ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL SETUP
- METER SETUP
- POSITION SETUP
- KEYLESS ACCESS SETUP
- LIGHTING SETUP
- DOOR/WINDOW SETUP
- WIPER SETUP

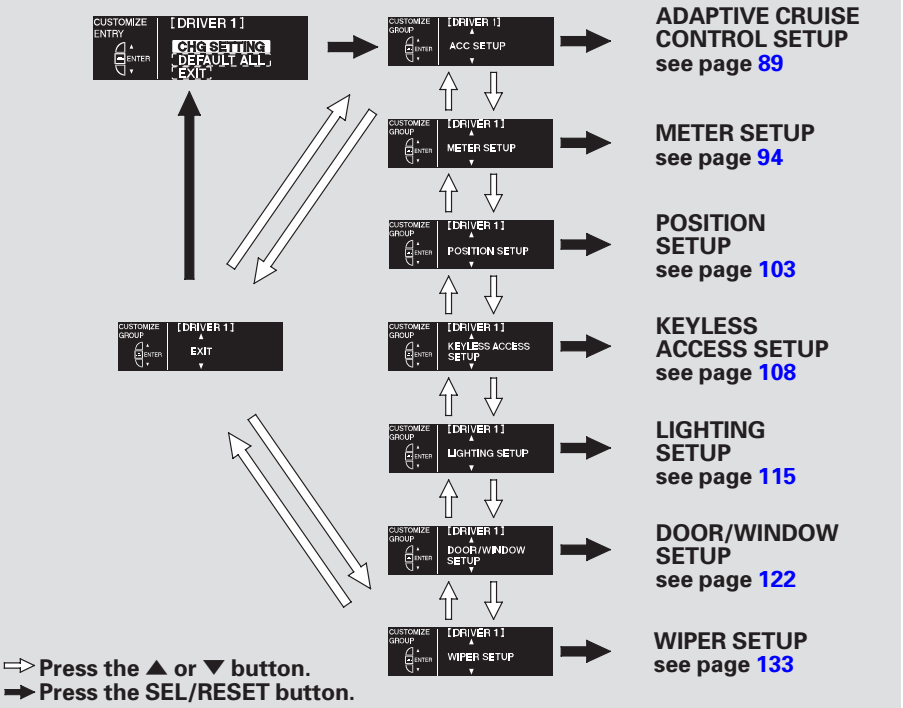
While CHG SETTING in the CUSTOMIZE ENTRY is shown on the multi-information display, press the SEL/RESET button. The screen changes to ACC SETUP in the CUSTOMIZE GROUP.

Each time you press the INFO (▲/▼) button, the screen changes as shown on the next page. Press the INFO (▲/▼) button until you see the setup you want to customize, then press the SEL/RESET button to enter your selection.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Multi-Information Display



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Adaptive Cruise Control Setup

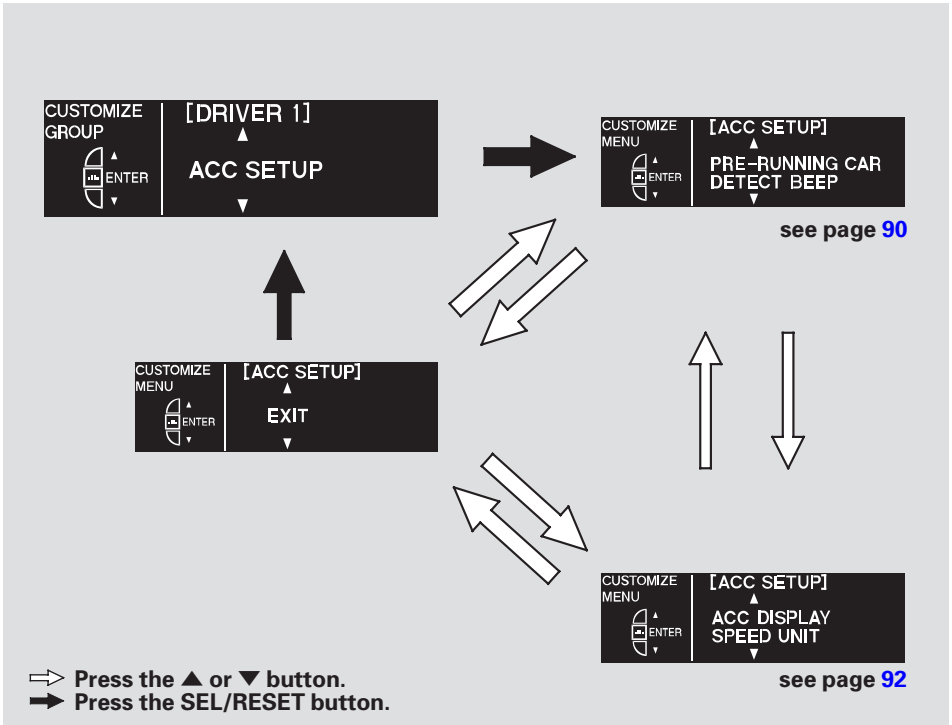
If equipped

Here are the two custom settings for adaptive cruise control (ACC):

- PRE-RUNNING CAR DETECT BEEP
- ACC DISPLAY SPEED UNIT

While the multi-information display is in the CUSTOMIZE GROUP screen, select ACC SETUP by pressing the INFO (▲/▼) button, then press the SEL/RESET button.

Each time you press the INFO (▲/▼) button, the display changes as shown in the illustration. Press the INFO (▲/▼) button until you see the setting you want to customize, then press the SEL/RESET button to enter your selection.



CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Multi-Information Display

Pre-Running Car Detect Beep
When PRE-RUNNING CAR DETECT BEEP is set to ON, one beep sounds when the ACC detects a vehicle in front of you. You also hear a beep when that vehicle goes out of the range of your vehicle's radar sensor.

While the multi-information display is in the ACC SETUP of the CUSTOMIZE GROUP, press the SEL/RESET button. The screen changes to the above display.

Press the SEL/RESET button. The screen changes as shown above. Select ON or OFF by pressing the INFO (▲/▼) button, then press the SEL/RESET button to enter your selection.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

When your choice is set, the display changes to the screen shown above for several seconds, and then goes back to CUSTOMIZE ENTRY.

If you choice is not set, you will see the above display for several seconds, then the screen goes back to CUSTOMIZE SETUP. If this happens, you need to repeat the pre-running car detect beep setup.

To exit PRE-RUNNING CAR DETECT BEEP without changing the current setting, select EXIT by pressing the INFO (▲/▼) button, then press the SEL/RESET button. The screen goes back to CUSTOMIZE MENU.

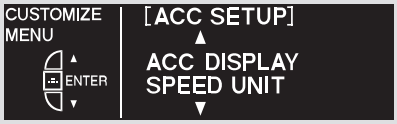
CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Multi-Information Display

Adaptive Cruise Control Display Speed Unit

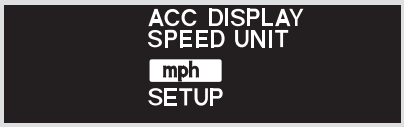
To change the unit of measurement from mph to km/h, do this:



While the multi-information display is in the ACC SETUP of the CUSTOMIZE GROUP, press the SEL/RESET button. The screen changes to CUSTOMIZE MENU. Press the INFO (▲/▼) button until you see the above display.

Press the SEL/RESET button. The screen changes as shown above. The highlighted unit, mph or km/h, is the current setting. To change the setting, press the INFO (▲/▼) button until the unit you want is highlighted, then press the SEL/RESET button.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



When your choice is set, you will see the above display for several seconds, then the screen goes back to CUSTOMIZE ENTRY.

If your choice is not set, you will see the above display for several seconds, then the screen goes back to CUSTOMIZE SETUP. If this happens, you need to repeat the ACC display speed unit setup.

To exit ACC DISPLAY SPEED UNIT without changing the current setting, select EXIT by pressing the INFO (▲/▼) button, then press the SEL/RESET button. The screen goes back to CUSTOMIZE MENU.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Multi-Information Display

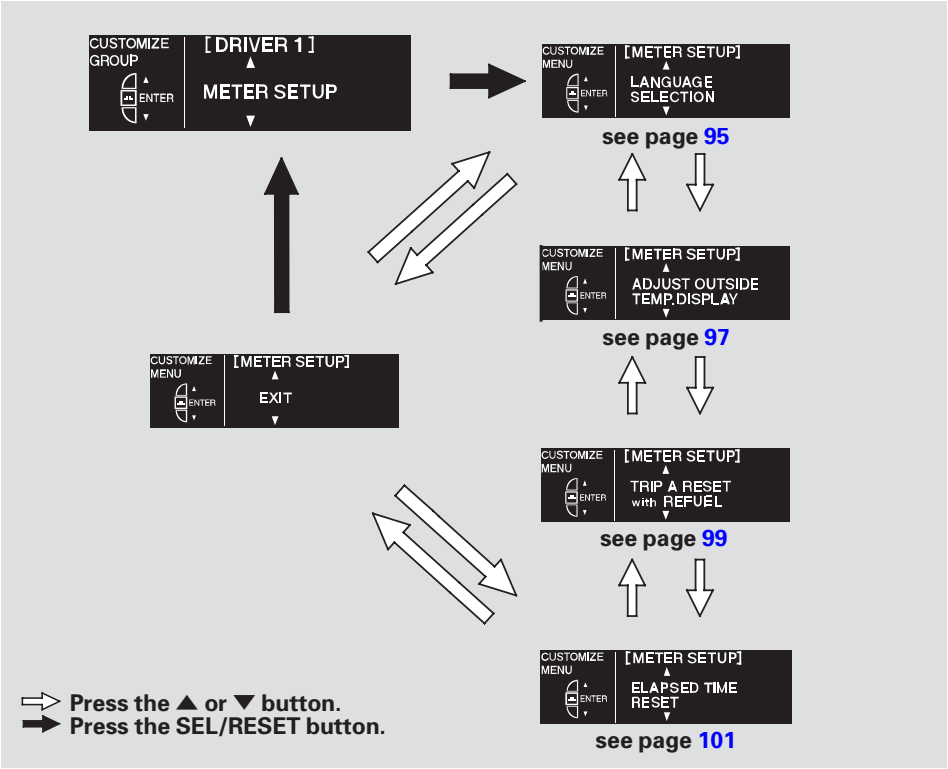
Meter Setup

Here are the four custom settings for the meter setup:

- LANGUAGE SELECTION
- ADJUST OUTSIDE TEMP. DISPLAY
- TRIP A RESET with REFUEL
- ELAPSED TIME RESET

While METER SETUP is shown in the CUSTOMIZE GROUP of the multi-information display, press the SEL/RESET button.

Each time you press the INFO (▲/▼) button, the screen changes as shown in the illustration. Press the INFO (▲/▼) button until you see the setting you want to customize, then press the SEL/RESET button to enter your selection.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Language Selection

There are three language selections you can make: English, French, and Spanish. To choose the language you want, follow these instructions:

While METER SETUP is shown in the CUSTOMIZE GROUP of the multi-information display, press the SEL/RESET button. You will see the above display.

Select the desired language by pressing the INFO (▲/▼) button, then enter your selection by pressing the SEL/RESET button.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Multi-Information Display

When your choice is set, you will see the above display for several seconds, then the screen goes back to CUSTOMIZE ENTRY.

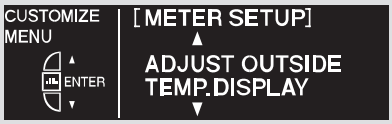
All messages on the multi-information display will be shown in the language you selected.

If your choice is not set, you will see the above display for several seconds, then screen goes back to CUSTOMIZE SETUP. If this happens, you need to repeat the language selection setup.

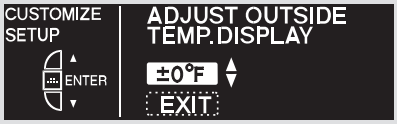
To exit LANGUAGE SELECTION without changing the current setting, select EXIT by pressing the INFO (▲/▼) button, then press the SEL/RESET button. The screen goes back to CUSTOMIZE MENU.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Adjust Outside Temp. Display
If you sometimes find that the temperature reading is a few degrees above or below the actual temperature, you can adjust it by following these instructions:



While the multi-information display is in the METER SETUP of the CUSTOMIZE GROUP, press the SEL/RESET button. The screen changes to CUSTOMIZE MENU. Press the INFO (▲/▼) button until you see the above display.

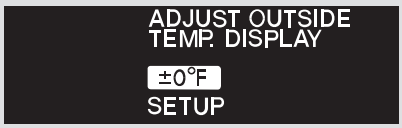


Press the SEL/RESET button. The screen changes as shown above. The highlighted number is the current setting above or below the outside temperature. Press the INFO (▲/▼) button repeatedly until the number you want appears, then press the SEL/RESET button to enter your selection.

CONTINUED

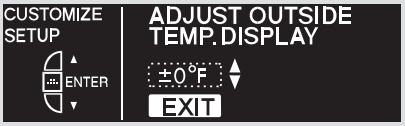
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Multi-Information Display



When your choice is set, you will see the above display for several seconds, then the screen goes back to CUSTOMIZE ENTRY.

If your choice is not set, you will see the above display for several seconds, then the screen goes back to CUSTOMIZE SETUP. If this happens, you need to repeat the adjust outside air temperature display setup.



To exit ADJUST OUTSIDE TEMP. DISPLAY without changing the current setting, select EXIT by pressing the INFO (▲/▼) button, then press the SEL/RESET button. The screen goes back to CUSTOMIZE MENU.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Trip A Reset with Refuel

To cause trip A, average fuel economy A, and average speed to reset every time you refuel your vehicle, follow these instructions:

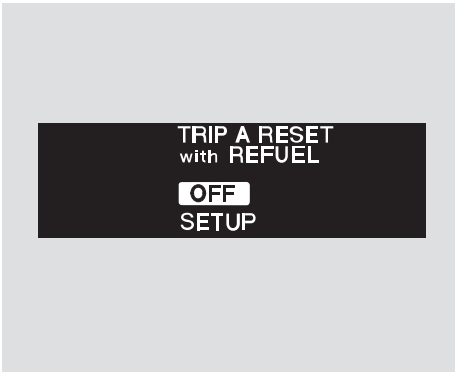
While METER SETUP is shown in the CUSTOMIZE GROUP of the multi-information display, press the SEL/RESET button. The screen changes to CUSTOMIZE MENU. Press the INFO (▲/▼) button until you see the above display.

Press the SEL/RESET button. The screen changes as shown above. Select ON or OFF by pressing the INFO (▲/▼) button, then press the SEL/RESET button to enter your selection.

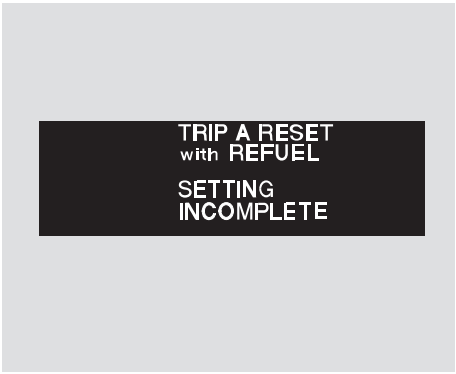
CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

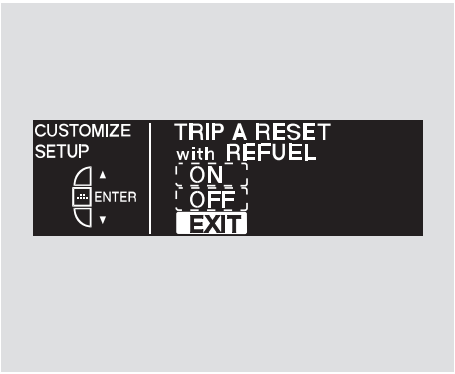
Multi-Information Display



When your choice is set, you will see the above display for several seconds, then the screen goes back to CUSTOMIZE ENTRY.



If your choice is not set, you will see the above display for several seconds, then the screen goes back to CUSTOMIZE SETUP. If this happens, you need to repeat the trip A reset with refuel setup.



To exit TRIP A RESET with REFUEL without changing the current setting, select EXIT by pressing the INFO (▲/▼) button, then press the SEL/RESET button. The screen goes back to CUSTOMIZE MENU.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Elapsed Time Reset
There are three elapsed time reset choices you can make:

IGN OFF — The elapsed time is reset when you turn the ignition switch to the LOCK (0) position.

TRIP A — The elapsed time is reset when Trip A is reset.

TRIP B — The elapsed time is reset when Trip B is reset.

While METER SETUP is shown in the CUSTOMIZE GROUP of the multi-information display, press the SEL/RESET button. The screen changes to CUSTOMIZE MENU. Press the INFO (▲/▼) button until you see the above display.

Press the SEL/RESET button. The screen changes as shown above. Select the desired setting by pressing the INFO (▲/▼) button, then press the SEL/RESET button to enter your selection.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Multi-Information Display

When your choice is set, you will see the above display for several seconds, then the screen goes back to CUSTOMIZE ENTRY.

If your choice is not set, you will see the above display for several seconds, then the screen goes back to CUSTOMIZE SETUP. If this happens, you need to repeat the elapsed time reset setup.

To exit ELAPSED TIME RESET without changing the current setting, select EXIT by pressing the INFO (▲/▼) button, then press the SEL/RESET button. The screen goes back to CUSTOMIZE MENU.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

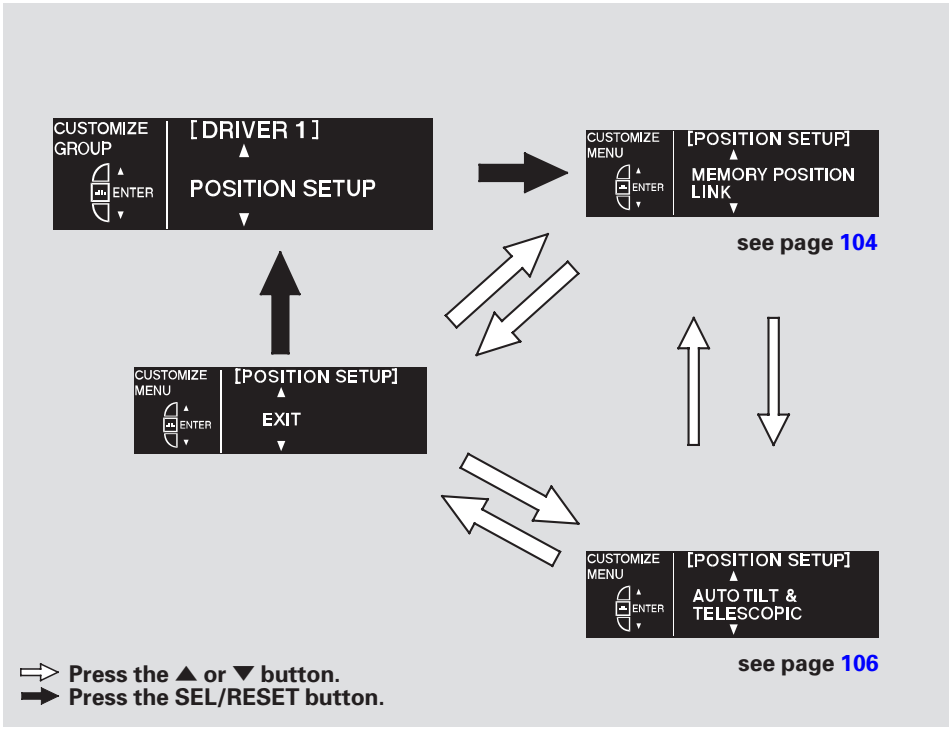
Position Setup

There are two position setups you can make:

- MEMORY POSITION LINK
- AUTO TILT & TELESCOPIC

While the multi-information display is in the CUSTOMIZE GROUP screen, select POSITION SETUP by pressing the INFO (▲/▼) button, and then press the SEL/RESET button.

Each time you press the INFO (▲/▼) button, the screen changes as shown in the illustration. Press the INFO (▲/▼) button until you see the setting you want to customize, then press the SEL/RESET button to enter your selection.



CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Multi-Information Display

Memory Position Link
When Memory Position Link is set to ON, the driver's seat, the steering wheel, and the outside mirror positions move to the positions stored in memory. To cause the memory to activate, open the driver's door with the remote, or grab the door handle while carrying the remote.

To set the seat memory position, see page 163 . For information on using the remote, see page 173 .

While the multi-information display is in the POSITION SETUP screen of the CUSTOMIZE GROUP, press the SEL/RESET button. The screen changes to the above display.

Press the SEL/RESET button. The screen changes as shown above. Select ON or OFF by pressing the INFO (▲/▼) button, then press the SEL/RESET button to enter your selection.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

When your choice is set, you will see the above display for several seconds, then the screen goes back to CUSTOMIZE ENTRY.

If your choice is not set, you will see the above display for several seconds, then the screen goes back to CUSTOMIZE SETUP. If this happens, you need to repeat the memory position link setup.

To exit MEMORY POSITION LINK without changing the current setting, select EXIT by pressing the INFO (▲/▼) button, then press the SEL/RESET button. The screen goes back to CUSTOMIZE MENU.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Multi-Information Display

Auto Tilt & Telescopic

When AUTO TILT & TELESCOPIC is set to ON, the steering wheel automatically moves fully in and up when you turn the ignition switch to the LOCK (0) position and release it, or when you remove the built-in key from the ignition switch.

While the multi-information display is in the POSITION SETUP screen of the CUSTOMIZE GROUP, press the SEL/RESET button. The screen changes to CUSTOMIZE MENU. Press the INFO (▲/▼) button until you see the above display.

Press the SEL/RESET button. The screen changes as shown above. Select ON or OFF by pressing the INFO (▲/▼) button, then press the SEL/RESET button to enter your selection.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

When your choice is set, you will see the above display for several seconds, then the screen goes back to CUSTOMIZE ENTRY.

If your choice is not set, you will see the above display for several seconds, then the screen goes back to CUSTOMIZE SETUP. If this happens, you need to repeat the auto tilt and telescopic setup.

To exit AUTO TILT & TELESCOPIC without changing the current setting, select EXIT by pressing the INFO (▲/▼) button, then press the SEL/RESET button. The screen goes back to CUSTOMIZE MENU.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

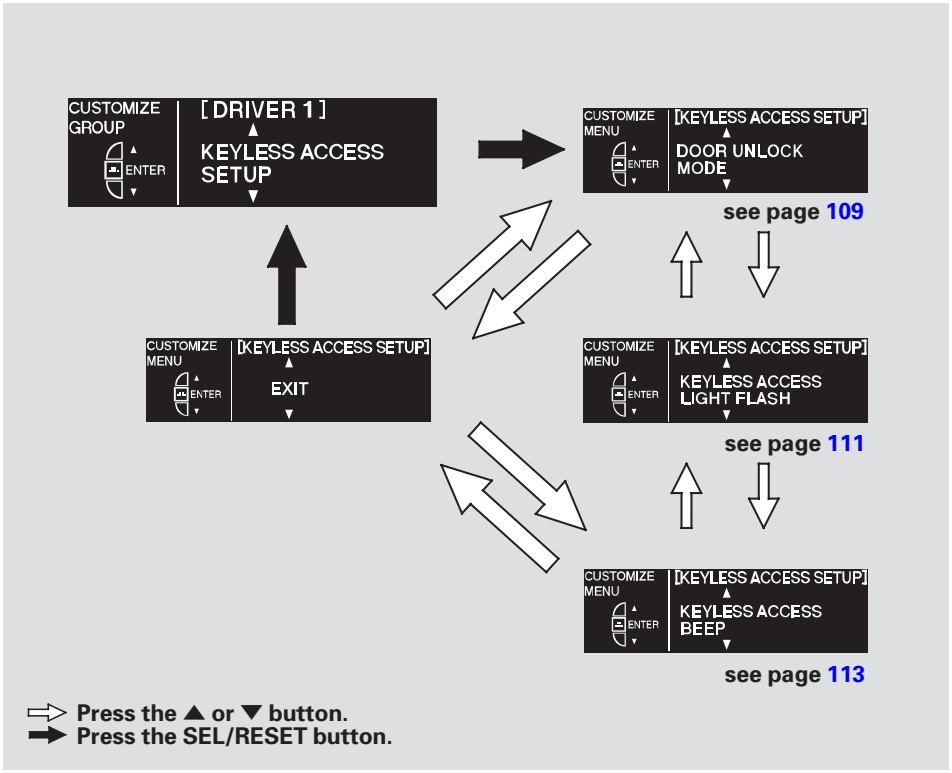
Multi-Information Display

Keyless Access Setup
There are three settings in the keyless access setup:

- DOOR UNLOCK MODE
- KEYLESS ACCESS LIGHT FLASH
- KEYLESS ACCESS BEEP

While the multi-information display is in the CUSTOMIZE GROUP screen, select KEYLESS ACCESS SETUP by pressing the INFO (▲/▼) button, then press the SEL/RESET button.

Each time you press the INFO (▲/▼) button, the screen changes as shown in the illustration. Press the INFO (▲/▼) button until you see the custom setting then press the SEL/RESET button to enter your selection.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Door Unlock Mode

To select whether the driver's door or all doors unlock when you open the driver's door with the remote or by grabbing the door handle (while carrying the remote), follow these instructions:

While the multi-information display is in the KEYLESS ACCESS SETUP screen of the CUSTOMIZE GROUP, press the SEL/RESET button. The screen changes to the above display.

Press the SEL/RESET button. The screen changes as shown above. Select DRIVER DOOR ONLY or ALL DOORS by pressing the INFO (▲/▼) button, then press the SEL/RESET button to enter your selection.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Multi-Information Display

When your choice is set, you will see the above display for several seconds, then the screen goes back to CUSTOMIZE ENTRY.

If your choice is not set, you will see the above display for several seconds, then the screen goes back to CUSTOMIZE SETUP. If this happens, you need to repeat the door unlock mode setup.

To exit DOOR UNLOCK MODE without changing the current setting, select EXIT by pressing the INFO (▲/▼) button, then press the SEL/RESET button. The screen goes back to CUSTOMIZE MENU.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Keyless Access Light Flash
When KEYLESS ACCESS LIGHT FLASH is set to ON, some exterior lights blink twice when you unlock the doors by grabbing the driver's door handle while carrying the remote.

The same exterior lights blink once when you lock the doors by touching the door lock sensor while carrying the remote.

While the multi-information display is in the KEYLESS ACCESS SETUP screen of the CUSTOMIZE GROUP, press the SEL/RESET button. The screen changes to CUSTOMIZE MENU. Press the INFO (▲/▼) button until you see the above display.

Press the SEL/RESET button. The screen changes as shown above. Select ON or OFF by pressing the INFO (▲/▼) button, then press the SEL/RESET button to enter your selection.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Multi-Information Display

When your choice is set, you will see the above display for several seconds, then the screen goes back to CUSTOMIZE ENTRY.

If your choice is not set, you will see the above display for several seconds, then the screen goes back to CUSTOMIZE SETUP. If this happens, you need to repeat the keyless access light flash setup.

To exit KEYLESS ACCESS LIGHT FLASH without changing the current setting, select EXIT by pressing the INFO (▲/▼) button, then press the SEL/RESET button. The screen goes back to CUSTOMIZE MENU.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Keyless Access Beep
When KEYLESS ACCESS BEEP is set to ON, the beeper sounds twice when you unlock the doors by grabbing the drivers door handle while carrying the remote.

When you lock the doors by touching the door lock sensor while carrying the remote, the beeper sounds once.

While the multi-information display is in the KEYLESS ACCESS SETUP screen of the CUSTOMIZE GROUP, press the SEL/RESET button. The screen changes to CUSTOMIZE MENU. Press the INFO (▲/▼) button until you see the above display.

Press the SEL/RESET button. The screen changes as shown above. Select ON or OFF by pressing the INFO (▲/▼) button, then press the SEL/RESET button to enter your selection.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Multi-Information Display

When your choice is set, you will see the above display for several seconds, then the screen goes back to CUSTOMIZE ENTRY.

If your choice is not set, you will see the above display for several seconds, then the screen goes back to CUSTOMIZE SETUP. If this happens, you need to repeat the keyless access beep setup.

To exit KEYLESS ACCESS BEEP without changing the current setting, select EXIT by pressing the INFO (▲/▼) button, then press the SEL/RESET button. The screen goes back to CUSTOMIZE MENU.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

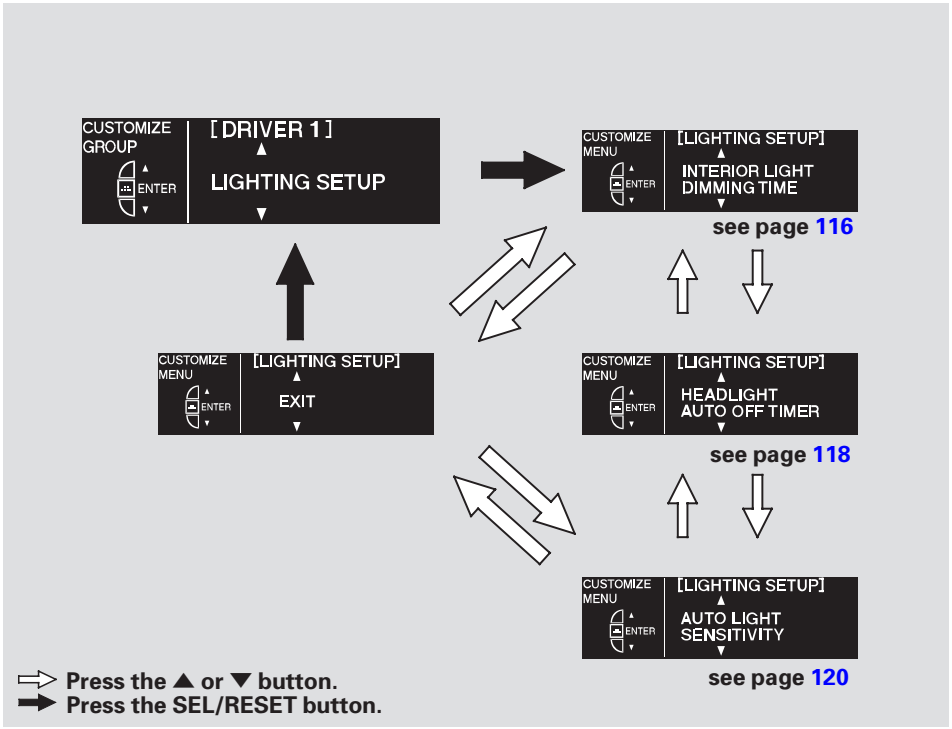
Lighting Setup

There are three settings in the lighting setup:

- INTERIOR LIGHT DIMMING TIME
- HEADLIGHT AUTO OFF TIMER
- AUTO LIGHT SENSITIVITY

While CUSTOMIZE GROUP is shown on the multi-information display, select LIGHTING SETUP by pressing the INFO (▲/▼) button, then press the SEL/RESET button.

Each time you press the INFO (▲/▼) button, the screen changes as shown in the illustration. Press the INFO (▲/▼) button, until you see the setting you want to customize, then press the SEL/RESET button to enter your selection.



CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Multi-Information Display

Interior Light Dimming Time

The interior lights fade out when you close all doors and the trunk. To change how long the lights stay on before they fade out, follow these instructions:

While LIGHTING SETUP is shown in the CUSTOMIZE GROUP of the multi-information display, press the SEL/RESET button. You will see the above display.

Press the SEL/RESET button. The screen changes as shown above. Select how long you want the lights to stay on before they fade out (60, 30, or 15 seconds) by pressing the INFO (▲/▼) button, then press the SEL/RESET button to enter your selection.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

When your choice is set, you will see the above display for several seconds, then the screen goes back to CUSTOMIZE ENTRY.

If your choice is not set, you will see the above display for several seconds, then the screen goes back to CUSTOMIZE SETUP. If this happens, you need to repeat the interior light dimming time setup.

To exit INTERIOR LIGHT DIMMING TIME without changing the current setting, select EXIT by pressing the INFO (▲/▼) button, then press the SEL/RESET button. The screen goes back to CUSTOMIZE MENU.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Multi-Information Display

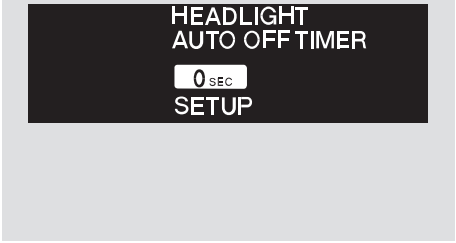
Headlight Auto Off Timer

The headlights, parking lights, side marker lights, taillights, and license plate lights go off after the selected time when you close the driver's door and take the remote with you. To change how long the lights stay on before they go off, follow these instructions:

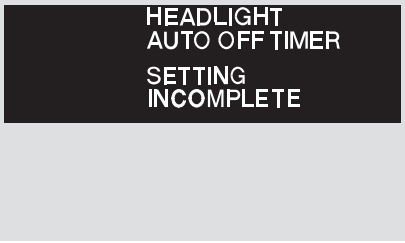
While the multi-information display is in the LIGHTING SETUP screen of the CUSTOMIZE GROUP, press the SEL/RESET button. The screen changes to CUSTOMIZE MENU. Press the INFO (▲/▼) button until you see the above display.

Press the SEL/RESET button. The screen changes as shown above. Select how long you want the lights to stay on before they go off (0, 15, 30, or 60 seconds) by pressing the INFO (▲/▼) button, then press the SEL/RESET button to enter your selection.

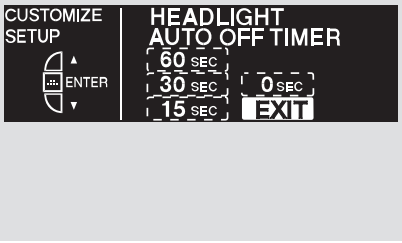
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



When your choice is set, you will see the above display for several seconds, then the screen goes back to CUSTOMIZE ENTRY.



If your choice is not set, you will see the above display for several seconds, then the screen goes back to CUSTOMIZE SETUP. If this happens, you need to repeat the headlight auto off timer setup.



To exit HEADLIGHT AUTO OFF TIMER without changing the current setting, select EXIT by pressing the INFO (▲/▼) button, then press the SEL/RESET button. The screen goes back to CUSTOMIZE MENU.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Multi-Information Display

Auto Light Sensitivity
The headlights automatically come on when the headlight switch is in the AUTO position and the ambient light reaches a changeable level. You can select the auto light sensitivity from the following five levels:

MAX —
The headlights come on when it is bright.

HIGH —
The headlights come on when it is somewhat bright.

MID —
The headlights come on when it is as bright as sunset or sunrise.

LOW —
The headlights come on when it is somewhat dark.

MIN —
The headlights come on when it is dark.

While LIGHTING SETUP is shown in the CUSTOMIZE GROUP of the multi-information display, press the SEL/RESET button. The screen changes to CUSTOMIZE MENU. Press the INFO (▲/▼) button until you see the above display.

Press the SEL/RESET button. The screen changes as shown above. Select from five levels of sensitivity by pressing the INFO (▲/▼) button, then press the SEL/RESET button to enter your selection.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

When your choice is set, you will see the above display for several seconds, then the screen goes back to CUSTOMIZE ENTRY.

If your choice is not set, you will see the above display for several seconds, then the screen goes back to CUSTOMIZE SETUP. If this happens, you need to repeat the headlight auto light sensitivity setup.

To exit AUTO LIGHT SENSITIVITY without changing the current setting, select EXIT by pressing the INFO (▲/▼) button, then press the SEL/RESET button. The screen goes back to CUSTOMIZE MENU.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Multi-Information Display

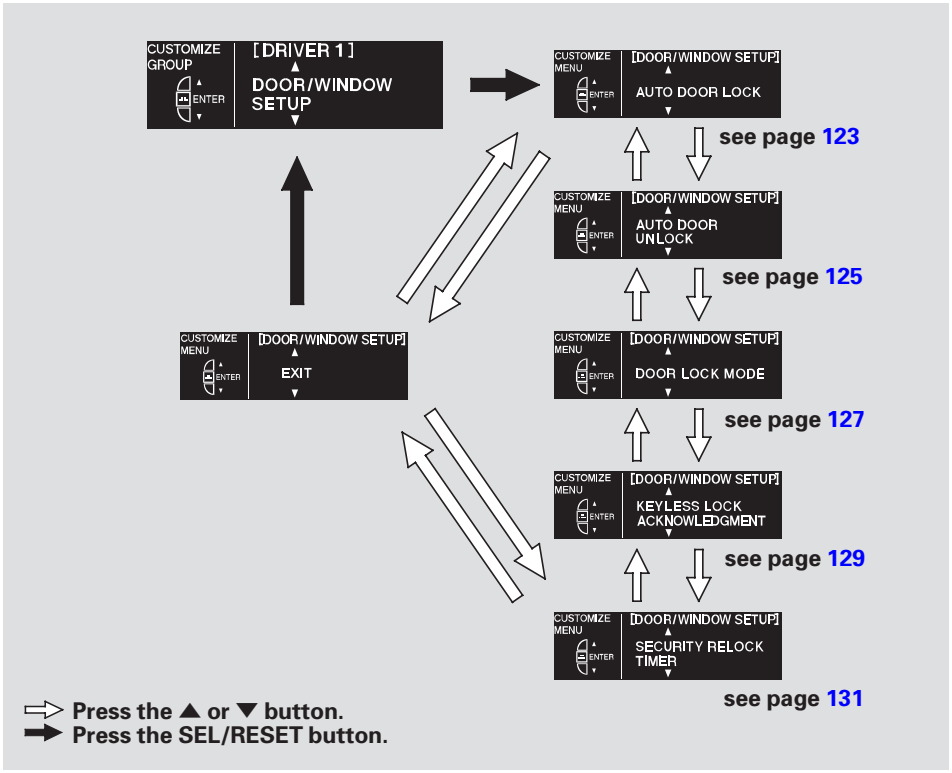
Door/Window Setup

There are five settings to choose from in the door/window setup:

- AUTO DOOR LOCK
- AUTO DOOR UNLOCK
- DOOR LOCK MODE
- KEYLESS LOCK ACKNOWLEDGMENT
- SECURITY RELOCK TIMER

While CUSTOMIZE GROUP is shown on the multi-information display, select DOOR/WINDOW SETUP by pressing the INFO (▲/▼) button, and then press the SEL/RESET button.

Each time you press the INFO (▲/▼) button, the screen changes as shown in the illustration. Press the INFO (▲/▼) button, until you see the setting you want to customize, then press the SEL/RESET button to enter your selection.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Auto Door Lock
There are three settings you can choose from:

SHIFT FROM P —
The doors lock whenever you move the shift lever out of Park.

WITH VEH SPD —
The doors lock when the vehicle speed reaches about 10 mph (about 15 km/h).

OFF —
The auto door lock mode is deactivated all the time.

While DOOR/WINDOW SETUP is shown in the CUSTOMIZE GROUP of the multi-information display, press the SEL/RESET button. You will see the above display.

Press the SEL/RESET button. The screen changes as shown above. Select the desired setting by pressing the INFO (▲/▼) button, then press the SEL/RESET button to enter your selection.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Multi-Information Display

When your choice is set, you will see the above display for several seconds, then the screen goes back to CUSTOMIZE ENTRY.

If your choice is not set, you will see the above display for several seconds, then the screen goes back to CUSTOMIZE SETUP. If this happens, you need to repeat the auto door lock setup.

To exit AUTO DOOR LOCK without changing the current setting, select EXIT by pressing the INFO (▲/▼) button, then press the SEL/RESET button. The screen goes back to CUSTOMIZE MENU.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Auto Door Unlock
There are three settings you can choose from:

SHIFT TO P — The driver's door or all the doors, depending on the door lock mode setting (see page 127), unlock when you move the shift lever to Park.

IGN OFF — The driver's door or all the doors, depending on the door lock mode setting (see page 127), unlock when you turn the ignition switch to the LOCK (0) position.

OFF — The auto door unlock mode is deactivated all the time.

While DOOR/WINDOW SETUP is shown in the CUSTOMIZE GROUP of the multi-information display, press the SEL/RESET button. The screen changes to CUSTOMIZE MENU. Press the INFO (▲/▼) button until you see the above display.

Press the SEL/RESET button. The screen changes as shown above. Select the desired setting by pressing the INFO (▲/▼) button, then press the SEL/RESET button to enter your selection.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Multi-Information Display

When your choice is set, you will see the above display for several seconds, then the screen goes back to CUSTOMIZE ENTRY.

If your choice is not set, you will see the above display for several seconds, then the screen goes back to CUSTOMIZE SETUP. If this happens, you need to repeat the auto door unlock setup.

To exit AUTO DOOR UNLOCK without changing the current setting, select EXIT by pressing the INFO (▲/▼) button, then press the SEL/RESET button. The screen goes back to CUSTOMIZE MENU.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Door Lock Mode

To select whether the driver's door unlocks or all the doors unlock when you unlock the doors with the remote, follow these instructions.

While the multi-information display is in the DOOR/WINDOW SETUP screen of the CUSTOMIZE GROUP, press the SEL/RESET button. The screen changes to CUSTOMIZE MENU. Press the INFO (▲/▼) button until you see above display.

Press the SEL/RESET button. The screen changes as shown above. Select DRIVER DOOR or ALL DOORS by pressing the INFO (▲/▼) button, then press the SEL/RESET button to enter your selection.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Multi-Information Display

When your choice is set, you will see the above display for several seconds, then the screen goes back to CUSTOMIZE ENTRY.

If your choice is not set, you will see the above display for several seconds, then the screen goes back to CUSTOMIZE SETUP. If this happens, you need to repeat the door lock mode setup.

To exit DOOR LOCK MODE without changing the current setting, select EXIT by pressing the INFO (▲/▼) button, and then press the SEL/RESET button. The screen goes back to CUSTOMIZE MENU.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Keyless Lock Acknowledgement
When you press the LOCK button on the remote to lock the doors and the trunk, and then press the button again within 5 seconds, a beeper sounds once and the exterior lights blink once to verify that the doors are locked and the security system is set.

When you press the UNLOCK button on the remote to unlock the doors, the exterior lights blink twice to verify that the doors are unlocked and the security system is turned off.

To turn this feature on or off, follow these instructions.

While the multi-information display is in the DOOR/WINDOW SETUP screen of the CUSTOMIZE GROUP, press the SEL/RESET button. The screen changes to CUSTOMIZE MENU. Press the INFO (▲/▼) button until you see the above display.

Press the SEL/RESET button. The screen changes as shown above. Select ON or OFF by pressing the INFO (▲/▼) button, then press the SEL/RESET button to enter your selection.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Multi-Information Display

When your choice is set, you will see the above display for several seconds, then the screen goes back to CUSTOMIZE ENTRY.

If your choice is not set, you will see the above display for several seconds, then the screen goes back to CUSTOMIZE SETUP. If this happens, you need to repeat the keyless lock acknowledgment setup.

To exit KEYLESS LOCK ACKNOWLEDGMENT without changing the current setting, select EXIT by pressing the INFO (▲/▼) button, then press the SEL/RESET button. The screen goes back to CUSTOMIZE MENU.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Security Relock Timer

When you unlock the doors by pressing the UNLOCK button on the remote, but do not open any door, the doors relock and the security system sets within 30 seconds. To change the relock time, follow these instructions.

While the multi-information display is in the DOOR/WINDOW SETUP screen of the CUSTOMIZE GROUP, press the SEL/RESET button. The screen changes to CUSTOMIZE MENU. Press the INFO (▲/▼) button until you see the above display.

Press the SEL/RESET button. The screen changes as shown above. Select the relock time you want (90, 60, or 30 seconds) by pressing the INFO (▲/▼) button, then press the SEL/RESET button to enter your selection.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Multi-Information Display

When your choice is set, you will see the above display for several seconds, then the screen goes back to CUSTOMIZE ENTRY.

If your choice is not set, you will see the above display for several seconds, then the screen goes back to CUSTOMIZE SETUP. If this happens, you need to repeat the security relock timer setup.

To exit SECURITY RELOCK TIMER without changing the current setting, select EXIT by pressing the INFO (▲/▼) button, then press the SEL/RESET button. The screen goes back to CUSTOMIZE MENU.

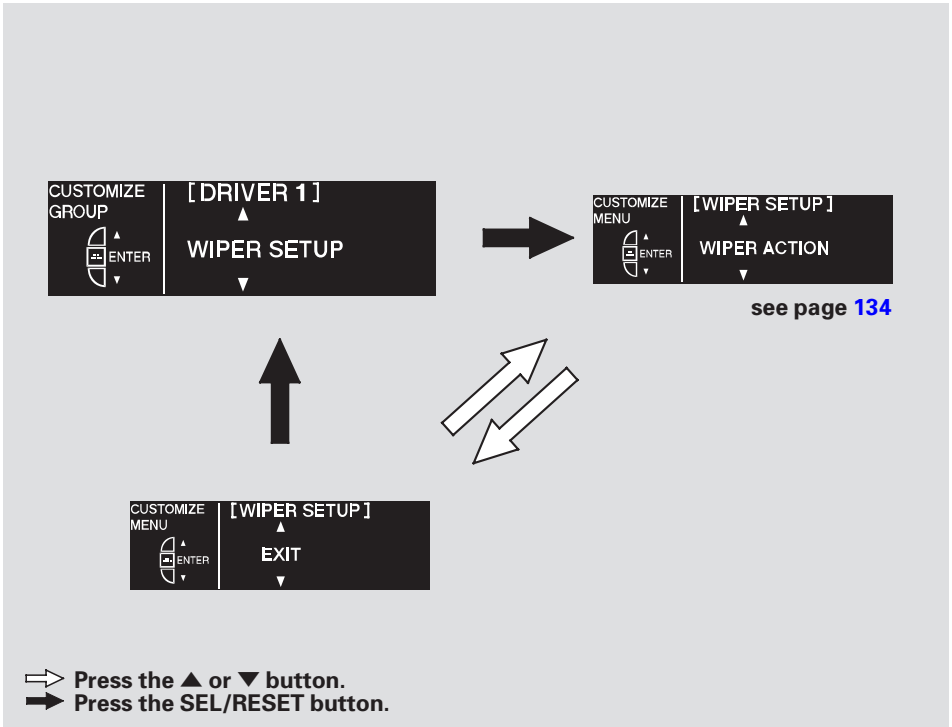
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Wiper Setup

The changeable setting under WIPER SETUP is called WIPER ACTION. To get into WIPER ACTION, do this:

While the multi-information display is in the CUSTOMIZE GROUP screen, select WIPER SETUP by pressing the INFO (▲/▼) button, then press the SEL/RESET button.

Each time you press the INFO (▲/▼) button, the screen changes as shown in the illustration. Press the INFO (▲/▼) button until you see WIPER ACTION, then press the SEL/RESET button to enter your selection.



see page 134

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Multi-Information Display

Wiper Action
You can select from these two settings when the wiper switch is in the INT (intermittent) position:

INTERMITTENT — The intermittent operation varies according to the selection you make on the wiper lever's intermittent control ring.

WITH VEH SPD — The intermittent operation varies according to vehicle speed.

While the multi-information display is in the WIPER SETUP screen of the CUSTOMIZE GROUP, press the SEL/RESET button. The screen changes to the above display.

Press the SEL/RESET button. The screen changes as shown above. Select INTERMITTENT or WITH VEH SPD by pressing the INFO (▲/▼) button, then press the SEL/RESET button to enter your selection.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

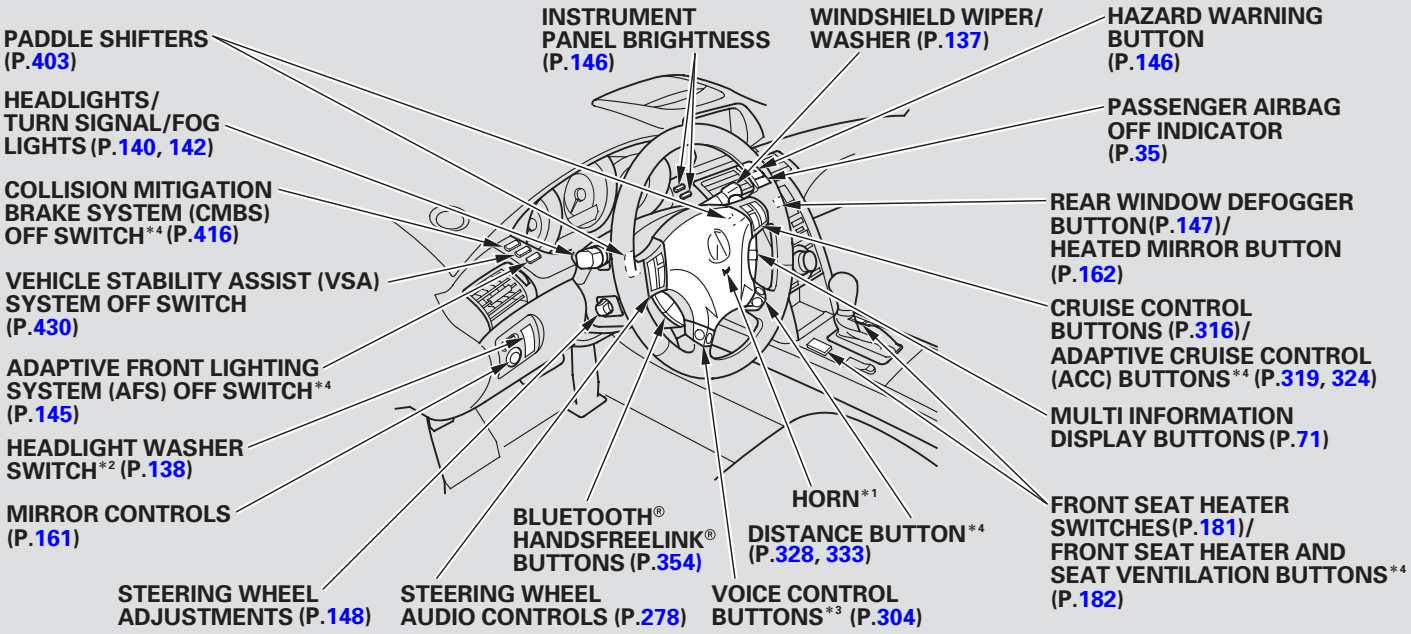
When your choice is set, you will see the above display for several seconds, then the screen goes back to CUSTOMIZE ENTRY.

If your choice is not set, you will see the above display for several seconds, then the screen goes back to CUSTOMIZE SETUP. If this happens, you need to repeat the wiper action setup.

To exit WIPER ACTION without changing the current setting, select EXIT by pressing the INFO (▲/▼) button, then press the SEL/RESET button. The screen goes back to CUSTOMIZE MENU.

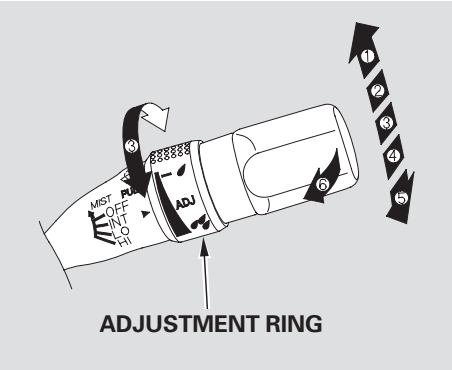
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Controls Near the Steering Wheel


PADDLE SHIFTERS (P.403)
HEADLIGHTS/ TURN SIGNAL/FOG LIGHTS (P.140, 142)
COLLISION MITIGATION BRAKE SYSTEM (CMBS) OFF SWITCH*4 (P.416)
VEHICLE STABILITY ASSIST (VSA) SYSTEM OFF SWITCH (P.430)
ADAPTIVE FRONT LIGHTING SYSTEM (AFS) OFF SWITCH*4 (P.145)
HEADLIGHT WASHER SWITCH*2 (P.138)
MIRROR CONTROLS (P.161)
STEERING WHEEL ADJUSTMENTS (P.148)
STEERING WHEEL AUDIO CONTROLS (P.278)
BLUETOOTH® HANDSFREELINK® BUTTONS (P.354)
VOICE CONTROL BUTTONS*3 (P.304)
HORN*1
DISTANCE BUTTON*4 (P.328, 333)
INSTRUMENT PANEL BRIGHTNESS (P.146)
WINDSHIELD WIPER/ WASHER (P.137)
HAZARD WARNING BUTTON (P.146)
PASSENGER AIRBAG OFF INDICATOR (P.35)
REAR WINDOW DEFOGGER BUTTON (P.147)/ HEATED MIRROR BUTTON (P.162)
CRUISE CONTROL BUTTONS (P.316)/ ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL (ACC) BUTTONS*4 (P.319, 324)
MULTI INFORMATION DISPLAY BUTTONS (P.71)
FRONT SEAT HEATER SWITCHES (P.181)/ FRONT SEAT HEATER AND SEAT VENTILATION BUTTONS*4 (P.182)

*1 : To use the horn, press the center pad of the steering wheel.
*2 : Canadian models only
*3 : On models with navigation system, refer to the navigation system manual.
*4 : If equipped.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



ADJUSTMENT RING

1. MIST
2. OFF
3. INT — Intermittent
4. LO — Low speed
5. HI — High speed
6. Windshield washers

Push the right lever up or down to select a position.

MIST — The wipers run at high speed until you release the lever.

OFF — The wipers are not activated.

INT — The length of the wipe interval is varied automatically according to vehicle speed.

To change the "WIPER ACTION" setting, see page 134 .

Vary the delay by turning the adjustment ring. If you turn it to the shortest delay (position), the wipers change to low speed operation when the vehicle speed exceeds 12 mph (20 km/h).

LO — The wipers run at low speed.

HI — The wipers run at high speed.

CONTINUED

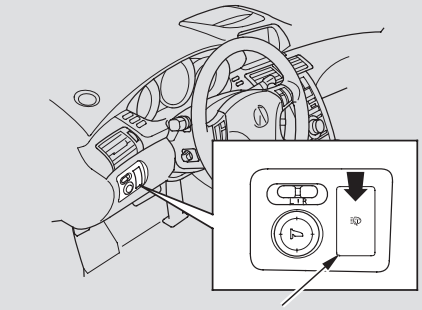
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Windshield Wipers and Washers

Windshield Washer – Pull back and hold the wiper control lever. The washers spray until you release the lever. The wipers run at low speed, then complete one more sweep after you release the lever.

When you activate the windshield washer with the headlights turned on, the headlight washer will be activated under certain conditions. For more information, see ***Headlight Washers*** section in the next column.

Headlight Washers
Canadian models only



HEADLIGHT WASHER SWITCH

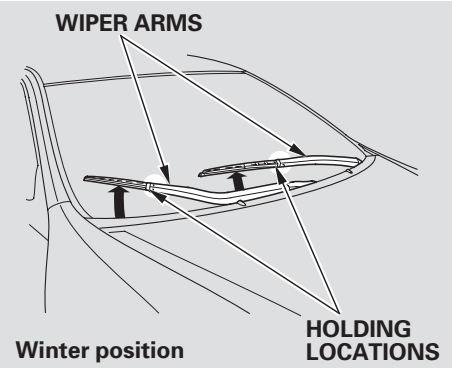
The headlight washers can be operated at any time by pressing the headlight washer button located next to the steering wheel column. The headlights must be turned on to use this button. In addition, the headlight washer operates without pressing the button at the first time you turn on the windshield washers after you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position.

The headlight washers use the same fluid reservoir as the windshield washers.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

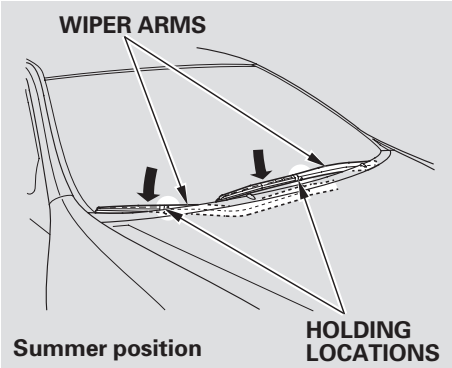
Wiper Arm Positions

The windshield wiper arms have two parked positions: winter and summer. In the winter position, the arms sit slightly above the edge of the hood. This reduces the possibility of damage to the wiper arms or windshield wiper motor by a build-up of snow and ice.



Adjust the wiper arms to the winter position by holding both arms as shown in the illustration at the same time. Pull on the arm, parallel to the windshield, until it locks in the higher position.

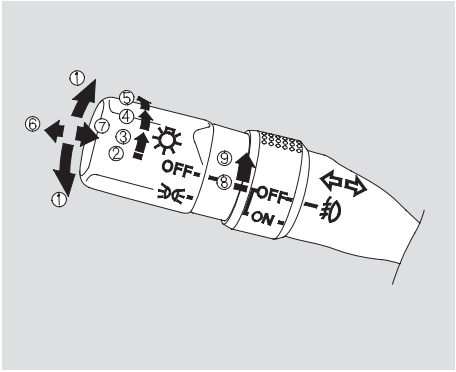
A heavy build-up of snow or ice on the wiper arms will cause them to automatically park in the winter position.



To return to the summer position, push the same area of both arms the other direction.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Turn Signals and Headlights



1. Turn signal
2. Off
3. Parking and indicator lights
4. AUTO
5. Headlights on
6. High beams
7. Flash high beams
8. Fog lights off
9. Fog lights on

Turn Signal — Push down on the lever to signal a left turn and up to signal a right turn. To signal a lane change, push lightly on the lever, and hold it. The lever will return to center when you release it or complete a turn.

Headlights — The rotating switch on the left lever controls the lights. Turning this switch to the " " position turns on the parking lights, taillights, instrument panel lights, side-marker lights, and rear license plate lights.

Turning the switch to the " " position turns on the headlights. If you leave the lights on with the ignition switch released after turned to the LOCK (0) position or when the built-in key is removed from the ignition switch, you will hear a reminder chime when you open the driver's door.

When the light switch is in the " " or " " position, the lights on indicator comes on as a reminder. This indicator stays on if you leave the light switch on and turn the ignition switch to the ACCESSORY (I) or the LOCK (0) position.

High Beams — To switch from low beams to high beams, push the left lever forward until you hear a click. The blue high beam indicator will come on (see page 65). Pull it back to return to low beams. To flash the high beams, pull the lever back lightly, then release it. The high beams stay on as long as you hold the lever back.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

AUTO – The automatic lighting feature turns on the headlights, all other exterior lights, and the instrument panel lights when it senses low ambient light.

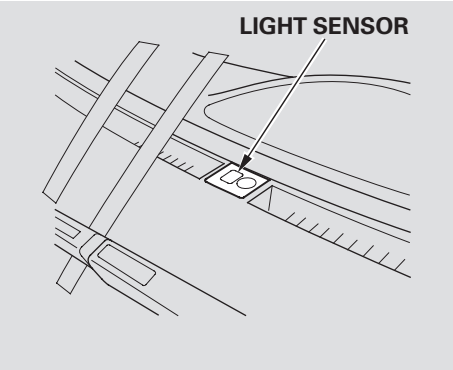
To turn on automatic lighting, turn the light switch to AUTO. The lights will come on automatically when the outside light level becomes low (at dusk, for example). The lights on indicator comes on as a reminder. The lights and indicator will turn off automatically when the system senses high ambient light.

The lights will remain on when you turn off the ignition switch. They will turn off automatically when you open and close the driver's door. To turn them on again, either turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position or turn the light switch to the position.

Even with the automatic lighting feature turned on, we recommend that you turn on the lights manually when driving at night or in a dense fog, or when you enter dark areas such as long tunnels or parking facilities.

To change the "AUTO LIGHT SENSITIVITY" setting, see page 120 .

Do not leave the light switch in AUTO if you will not be driving the vehicle for an extended period (a week or more). You should also turn off the lights if you plan to leave the engine idling or off for a long time.

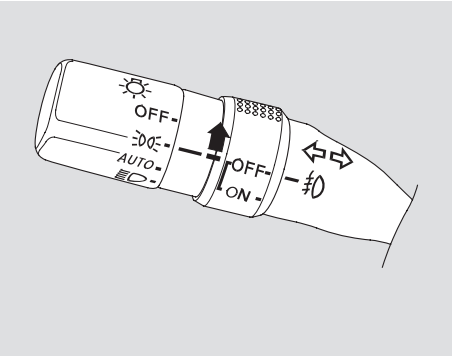


The automatic lighting feature is controlled by a sensor located on top of the dashboard. Do not cover this sensor or spill liquids on it.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Turn Signals and Headlights

Fog Lights



Turn the fog lights on and off by turning the switch next to the headlight switch.

You can use the fog lights only when the headlights are on low beam. With the light switch in the AUTO position, you can also use the fog lights when the headlights turn on automatically. They will go off when the headlights turn off.

Daytime Running Lights

With the headlight switch off, the high beam headlights come on with reduced brightness when you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position and release the parking brake. They remain on until you turn the ignition switch off, even if you set the parking brake.

The headlights revert to normal operation when you turn them on with the switch.

If you see a “CHECK DRL SYSTEM” message on the multi-information display, there is a problem with the daytime running light system. Take your vehicle to a dealer to have it checked.

When the multi-information display shows a “DRL OFF” message, the daytime running lights are off. Follow the procedure in the left column to turn them on.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Automatic Lighting Off Feature
This feature turns off the headlights, all other exterior lights, and the instrument panel lights within 15 seconds after you turn the ignition switch to the LOCK (0) position and close the driver's door.

To change the "HEADLIGHT AUTO OFF TIMER" setting, see page 118 .

The automatic lighting off feature activates if you leave the headlight switch in the " " or " " position or if the lights are turned on by setting the switch in the "AUTO" position, turn the ignition switch to the LOCK (0) position, then open and close the driver's door.

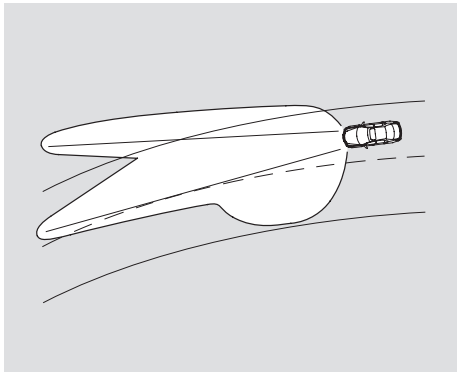
If you turn the ignition switch to the LOCK (0) position with the headlight switch on, but do not open the door, the lights turn off after 10 minutes (3 minutes, if the switch is in the "AUTO" position).

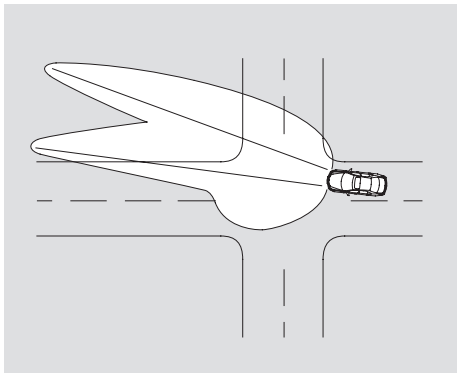
The lights turn on again when you unlock or open the driver's door. If you unlock the door, but do not open it within 15 seconds, the lights go off. With the driver's door open, you will hear a lights-on reminder chime.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Adaptive Front Lighting System (AFS)

If equipped
The adaptive front lighting system (AFS) helps to improve visibility during nighttime driving. The AFS controls the aiming direction and lighting distribution of the low beams according to the amount of turn applied to the steering wheel during cornering or turning. Press the AFS OFF switch to turn the AFS on and off when the ignition switch is in the ON (II) position and the headlights are turned on.





AFS Indicator

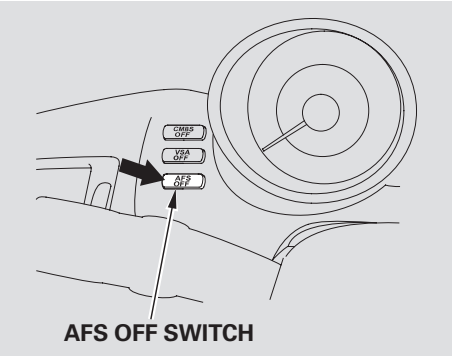
AFS

If the AFS indicator comes on and starts blinking while driving, pull to the side of the road when it is safe, and turn off the engine. If the AFS indicator keeps blinking, or starts blinking again while driving after turning the ignition switch to the ON (II) position, the AFS is not working properly (see page 69). Have the AFS inspected by your dealer. Without AFS, your vehicle still has normal lighting ability to continue driving.

When the AFS indicator comes on, you will also see a "CHECK ADAPTIVE FRONT LIGHTING SYSTEM" message on the multi-information display (see page 78).

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

AFS Off Switch



AFS OFF SWITCH

This switch is at the right side of the left vent. Press it to turn the AFS on and off. When AFS is off, the AFS indicator comes on as a reminder when you turn on the headlights.

When you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position, the AFS is turned on if it was on previously.

Here are some operating characteristics of the AFS:

- The system requires an initialization period. It does not begin to operate until you have driven the vehicle a short distance.
- At a stop, the right headlight turns right when you turn the steering wheel to the right. But the left headlight does not turn left when you turn the steering wheel to the left. This prevents the left headlight from pointing at oncoming traffic.
- AFS is turned off when the shift lever is in the R position.

Automatic Headlight Adjusting System

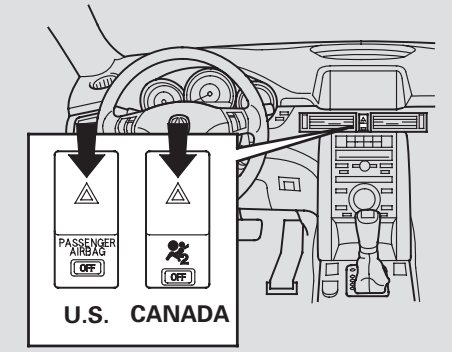
The AFS works with the automatic headlight adjusting system to sense changes in vehicle height due to driving and loading conditions of passengers and luggage, and adjusts the vertical aim of the low beam headlights automatically to compensate for load.

If the headlights do not seem to be properly aimed, have the automatic headlight adjusting system inspected by your dealer.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

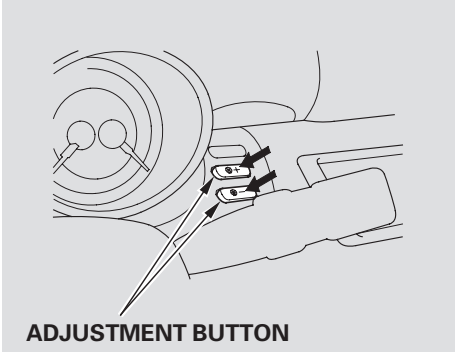
Hazard Warning Button, Instrument Panel Brightness

Hazard Warning Button



Push the button between the center vents to turn on the hazard warning lights (four-way flashers). This causes all four outside turn signals and both indicators in the instrument panel to flash. Use the hazard warning lights if you need to park in a dangerous area near heavy traffic, or if your vehicle is disabled.

Instrument Panel Brightness



Adjust the brightness of the instrument panel by pressing the + or − button. Press the + button to increase the brightness and the − button to decrease it. The brightness can be set differently for when the headlights are on, and when they are off.

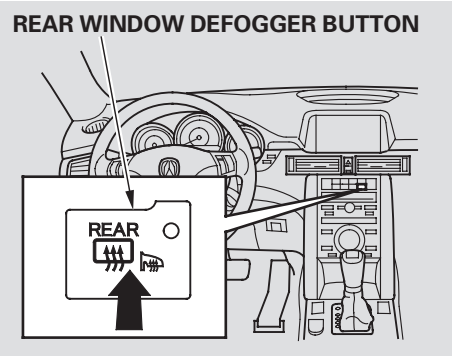
The level of brightness is shown on the multi-information display while you adjust it. It goes out 5 seconds after you finish adjusting.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Instrument Panel Brightness, Rear Window Defogger

To reduce glare at night, the instrument panel illumination dims when you turn the light switch to or . To cancel the glare reduction function, set the brightness to the highest level, then press the + button. You will hear a beep when it is canceled.

Rear Window Defogger



The rear window defogger clears fog, frost, and thin ice from the window. Push the defogger button to turn it on and off. Pushing this button also turns the mirror heaters on and off. The indicator in the button comes on to show the defogger is on. If you do not turn it off, the defogger will shut itself off after 5 to 40 minutes (depending on the ambient temperature). It also shuts off when you turn off the ignition switch. You have to turn it on again when you restart the vehicle.

Make sure the rear window is clear and you have good visibility before starting to drive.

The defogger and antenna wires on the inside of the rear window can be accidentally damaged. When cleaning the glass, always wipe side to side.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

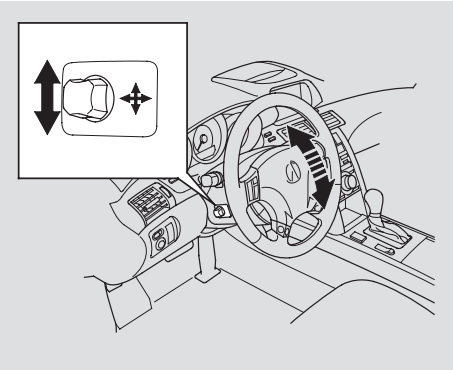
Steering Wheel Adjustments

Make any steering wheel adjustment before you start driving.

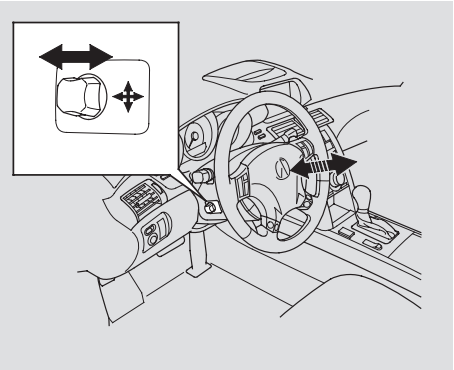
⚠ WARNING

Adjusting the steering wheel position while driving may cause you to lose control of the vehicle and be seriously injured in a crash.

Adjust the steering wheel only when the vehicle is stopped.



Move the steering wheel in, out, up, or down by pushing and holding the adjustment switch in that direction.



Release the switch when the steering wheel reaches the desired position. Make sure the steering wheel points towards your chest, not toward your face, and that you can see the instrument panel gauges and indicators.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Steering Wheel Adjustments

When you turn the ignition switch to the LOCK (0) position and release it, or remove the built-in key from the ignition switch, the steering wheel automatically moves fully in and up.

The steering wheel returns to its original position when you push the ignition switch or insert the built-in key back in the ignition switch.

Steering wheel movement is also controlled by the driving position memory system (see page 163).

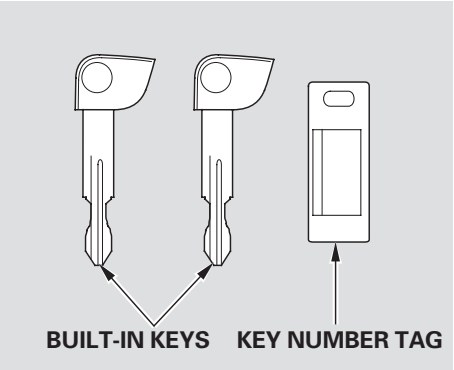
To change the “AUTO TILT & TELESCOPIC” setting, see page 106 .

If your vehicle’s battery is disconnected or goes dead, or the fuse for the power tilt and telescopic steering wheel is removed, the power tilt and telescopic steering wheel system needs to be reset when you reconnect the battery or install the fuse.

Push the ignition switch for more than 1 second and release it, or insert the built-in key into the ignition switch, and remove it. The steering wheel automatically moves fully in and up to let you know the system is reset.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Keys and Locks



The built-in key (see page 180) fits all the locks on your vehicle.

You should have received a key number tag with your keys. You will need this key number if you ever have to get a lost key replaced. Use only Acura-approved key blanks.

These keys contain electronic circuits that are activated by the immobilizer system. They will not work to start the engine if the circuits are damaged.

- Protect the keys from direct sunlight, high temperature, and high humidity.
- Do not drop the keys or set heavy objects on them.
- Keep the keys away from liquids. If they get wet, dry them immediately with a soft cloth.

The keys do not contain batteries. Do not try to take them apart.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Immobilizer System

The immobilizer system protects your vehicle from theft. If an improperly-coded key (or other device) is used, the engine will not start.

When you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position, the immobilizer system indicator should come on for a few seconds, then go out. If the indicator starts to blink, it means the system does not recognize the coding of the Honda smart key or built-in key. Turn the ignition switch to the LOCK (0) position, release the ignition switch and push it, or remove the built-in key, and reinsert it. Then turn the switch to the ON (II) position again.

The system may not recognize your key's coding if another immobilizer key or other metal object (i.e. key fob) is near the ignition switch when you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position.

If the system repeatedly does not recognize the coding of your remote or built-in key, contact your dealer.

Do not attempt to alter this system or add other devices to it. Electrical problems could result that may make your vehicle inoperable.

If you have lost your remote or built-in key and cannot start the engine, contact your dealer.

NOTICE

Always take the keyless access remote and built-in key with you whenever you leave the vehicle alone.

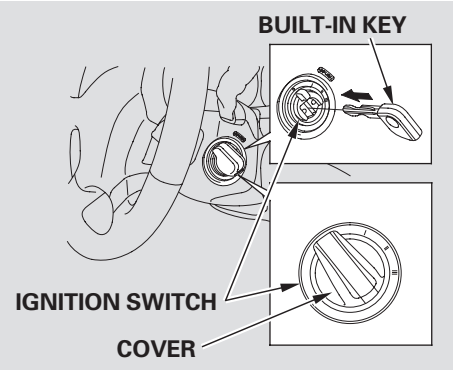
As required by the FCC:
This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

This device complies with Industry Canada Standard RSS-210.
Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Ignition Switch



The ignition switch has four positions: LOCK (0), ACCESSORY (I), ON (II), and START (III).

To use the built-in key, you have to remove the cover (see page 180).

LOCK (0) – You can insert or remove the built-in key only in this position. To turn the ignition switch to the LOCK (0) position, the shift lever must be in Park, and you must push the knob or built-in key in slightly.

If the front wheels are turned, the anti-theft lock may make it difficult to turn the ignition switch. Firmly turn the steering wheel to the left or right as you turn the ignition switch.

ACCESSORY (I) – You can operate the audio system and the accessory power sockets in this position.

When you turn the ignition switch to the ACCESSORY (I) position, an "ACCESSORY (I) POSITION" message is shown on the multi-information display.

ON (II) – This is the normal ignition switch position when driving. Several of the indicators on the instrument panel come on as a test when you turn the ignition switch from the ACCESSORY (I) to the ON (II) position.

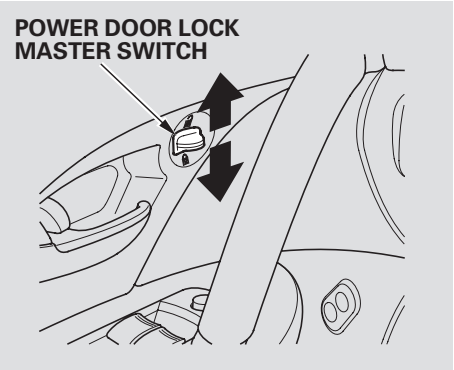
START (III) – Use this position only to start the engine. The switch returns to the ON (II) position when you let go of the ignition switch.

If you open the driver's door and leave the key in the ignition switch, you will hear a reminder beeper, and a message appears on the multi-information display according to the ignition switch position. When the ignition switch is in the ACC (I) position, a "RETURN IGNITION SWITCH TO LOCK (0) POSITION" message is shown on the multi-information display. When the ignition switch is in the LOCK (0) position, a "REMOVE KEY" message is shown on the multi-information display.

The shift lever must be in Park before you turn the ignition switch knob to the LOCK (0) position or remove the built-in key from the ignition switch.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Door Locks



Each front door has a power door lock master switch. Either switch locks and unlocks all doors. Push the switch down to lock all doors and up to unlock them.

Each door has a lock tab above the inside door handle. Pull the tab to lock the door and push it to unlock. When you pull the tab on the driver's door, all the doors lock.

To lock any door when getting out of the vehicle, pull the lock tab and close the door.

All doors can be locked from the outside by using the built-in key in the driver's door. To unlock only the driver's door, insert the built-in key, turn it clockwise, and release it. The remaining doors unlock when you turn the built-in key a second time within a few seconds.

To change the "DOOR UNLOCK MODE" setting, see page 109 .

When the vehicle speed reaches about 10 mph (15 km/h) or more, all the doors lock automatically.

To change the "AUTO DOOR LOCK" setting, see page 123 .

When you shift to P after driving, the driver's door unlocks.

To change the "AUTO DOOR UNLOCK" setting, see page 125 .

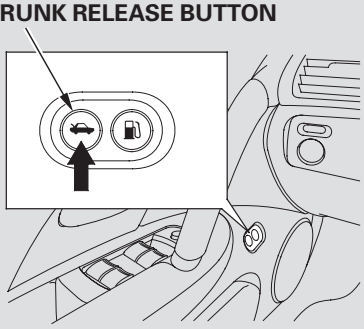
Lockout Prevention

With the driver's door open and the built-in key in the ignition, both master door lock switches are disabled. They are not disabled if the driver's door is closed. Pushing the switch down on the open front passenger's door will lock all doors. If you try to lock an open driver's door by pulling the lock tab rearward with the remote inside the vehicle and closing the driver's door, the driver's door will unlock.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Trunk

TRUNK RELEASE BUTTON



You can open the trunk in any of four ways:

- Press the trunk release button on the driver's door.
- Press and hold the trunk release button on the remote.
- If the doors are unlocked, press the trunk release switch on the trunk lid.
- If the doors are locked, press the trunk release switch on the trunk lid with the remote in keyless access operating range.

To close the trunk, press down on the trunk lid.

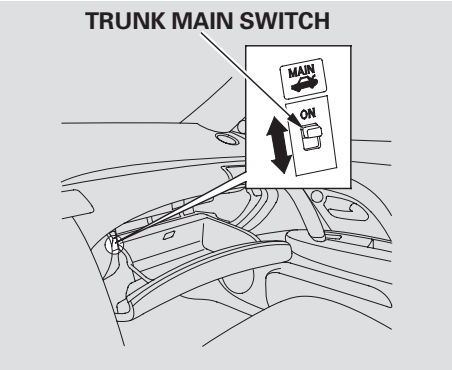
TRUNK RELEASE HANDLE

If your vehicle's battery goes dead or is disconnected, you can open the trunk from the rear seat by pulling the trunk release handle. Reach the handle through the trunk pass-through.

Keep the trunk lid closed at all times while driving to avoid damaging the lid, and to prevent exhaust gas from getting into the interior. See **Carbon Monoxide Hazard** on page 56 .

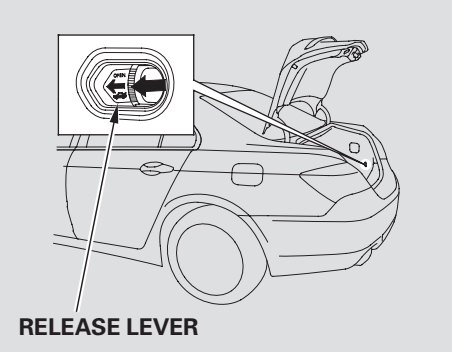
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Trunk, Childproof Door Locks



To protect items in the trunk, you can disable the trunk-release button on the driver's door, the trunk lid, and the remote. To do this, turn off the trunk main switch in the glove box, lock the glove box, and lock the trunk pass-through cover with the built-in key.

Emergency Trunk Opener

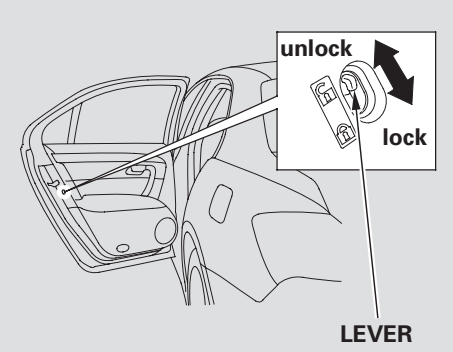


As a safety feature, your vehicle has a release lever on the right corner in the trunk so the trunk can be opened from the inside. To open the trunk, push the release lever to the left.

Parents should decide if their children should be shown how to use this feature.

For more information about child safety, see page 42 .

Childproof Door Locks



The childproof door locks are designed to prevent children seated in the rear from accidentally opening the rear doors. Each rear door has a lock lever near the edge. With the lever in the LOCK position, the door cannot be opened from the inside regardless of the position of the lock tab. To open the door, push the lock tab in, and use the outside door handle.

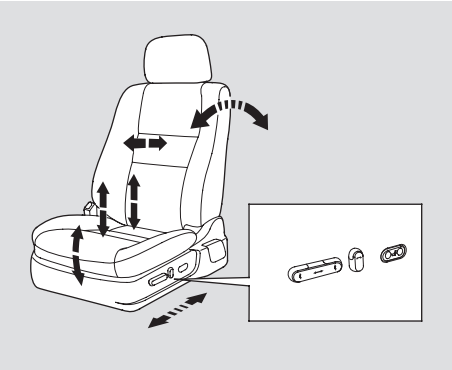
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

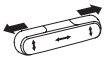
Seats

Front Seat Power Adjustments

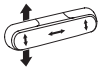
See pages 15 – 16 for important safety information and warnings about how to properly position the seats and seat-backs.

The controls for the power adjustable front seats are on the outside edge of each seat bottom. You can adjust the seats with the ignition switch in any position. Make all seat adjustments before you start driving.

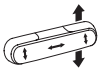




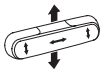
Moves the seat forward and backward.



Moves the front of the seat up or down.



Raises or lowers the seat.



Moves the whole seat up and forward, or down and backward. The front of the seat also tilts up or down at the same time.

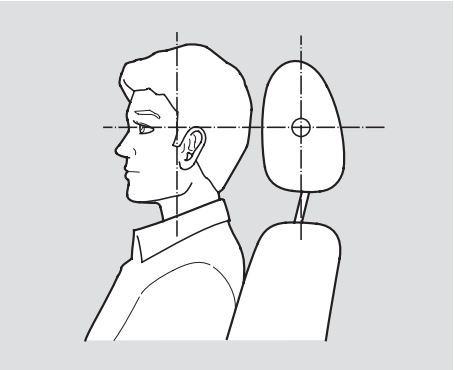
Adjusts the seat-back angle forward or backward.

Increases or decreases the lumbar support.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

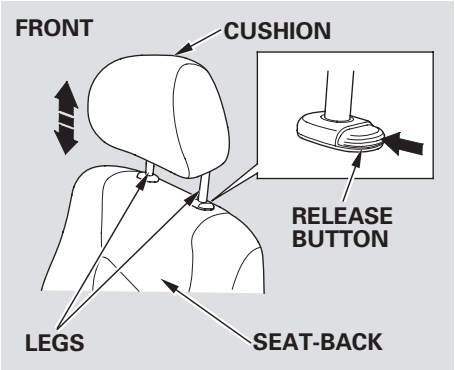
Head Restraints

See page 16 for important safety information and a warning about improperly positioning head restraints.
Your vehicle is equipped with head restraints in all seating positions to help protect you and your passengers from whiplash and other injuries.



Your vehicle has adjustable head restraints on the front seats.

They are most effective when you adjust them so the center of the back of the occupant's head rests against the center of the restraint.



Adjusting the Head Restraint
The front head restraints adjust for height. You need both hands to adjust a restraint. Do not attempt to adjust it while driving. To raise it, pull upward. To lower the restraint, push the release button sideways, and push the restraint down.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Seats

Removing the Head Restraint

To remove a head restraint for cleaning or repair, pull it up as far as it will go. Push the release button, then pull the restraint out of the seatback.

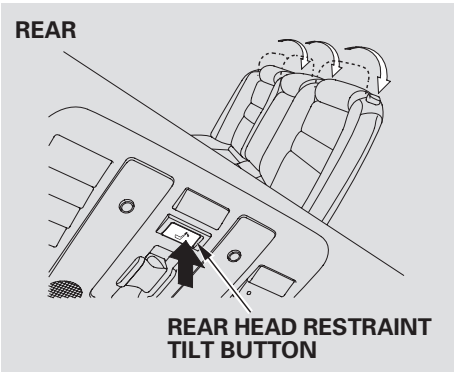
⚠WARNING

Failure to reinstall the head restraints can result in severe injury during a crash.

Always replace the head restraints before driving.

When reinstalling a head restraint, put the legs back in place. Then adjust it to the appropriate height while pressing the release button.

Make sure the head restraint locks in position when you reinstall it.

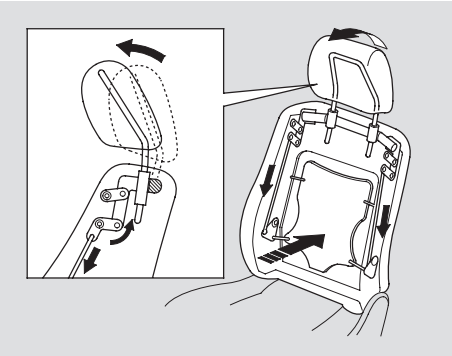


You can raise the rear head restraints by hand.

To lower the rear head restraints for better visibility, press the rear head restraint tilt button on the ceiling console with the ignition switch in the ON (II) position.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Active Head Restraints



The driver's and front passenger's seats have active head restraints. If the vehicle is struck severely from the rear, the occupant properly secured with the seat belt will be pushed against the seat-back and the head restraint will automatically move forward.

This reduces the distance between the restraint and the occupant's head. It also helps protect the occupants against whiplash and injuries to the neck and upper spine.

After a collision, the activated restraint should return to its normal position.

If the restraints do not return to their normal position, or in the event of a severe collision, have the vehicle inspected by an Acura dealer.

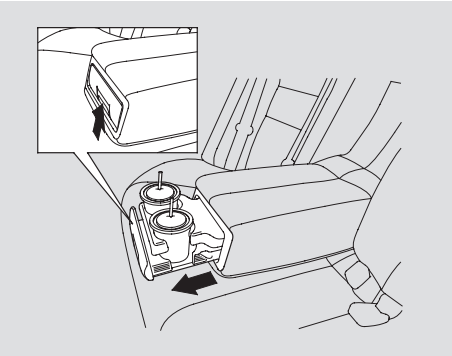
For a head restraint system to work properly:

- Do not hang any items on the head restraints, or from the restraint legs.
- Do not place any object between an occupant and the seat-back.
- Install each restraint in its proper location.
- Only use genuine Acura replacement head restraints.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

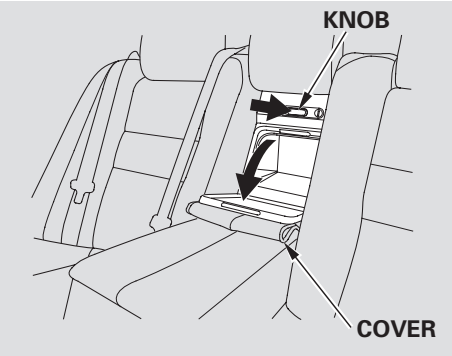
Seats

Rear Seat Armrest



The rear seat armrest is in the center of the rear seat. Pivot it down to use it.

Trunk Pass-through Cover



To open the cover, pull down the rear seat armrest. Pull on the tab at the top of the inner partition, and press on the button to fully release the cover. To close the cover, swing it up, and push firmly on the top. Make sure it latches properly.

Make sure all items in the trunk and those extending through the pass-through are secured.

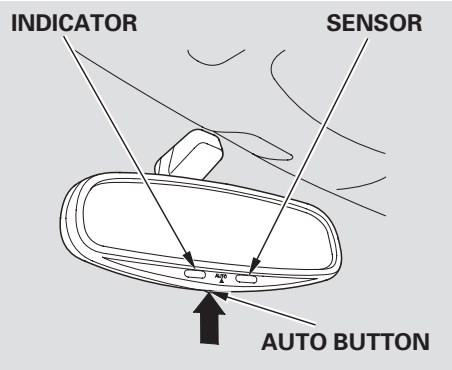
For security, this cover can be locked and unlocked only with the built-in key. To lock the cover, insert the key, and turn it clockwise.

Never drive with this cover open and the trunk lid open.

See **Carbon Monoxide Hazard** on page 56 .

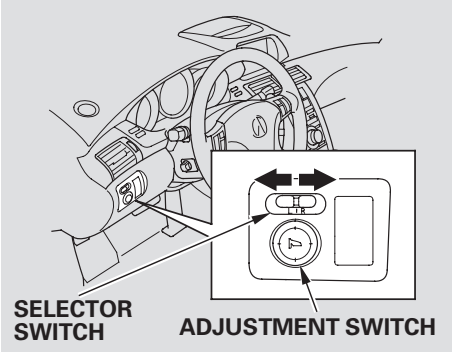
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Keep the inside and outside mirrors clean and adjusted for best visibility. Be sure to adjust the mirrors before you start driving.



The inside mirror can automatically darken to reduce glare. To turn on this feature, press the button on the bottom of the mirror. The AUTO indicator comes on as a reminder. When it is on, the mirror darkens when it senses the headlights of a vehicle behind you, then returns to normal visibility when the lights are gone. Press the button again to turn off this feature.

Adjusting the Power Mirrors



1. Move the selector switch to L (driver's side) or R (passenger's side).
2. Push the appropriate edge of the adjustment switch to move the mirror right, left, up, or down.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Mirrors

3. When you finish, move the selector switch to the center (off) position. This turns off the adjustment switch so you can't move a mirror out of position by accidentally bumping the switch.

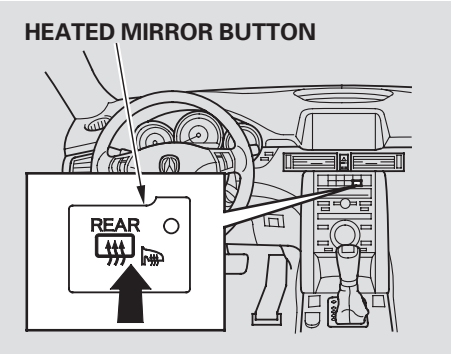
Outside mirror positions can be stored in the driving position memory system (see page 163).

Reverse Tilt Door Mirror

Both outside door mirrors have a reverse tilt feature. When in reverse, the selected mirror will tilt down slightly to improve your view as you parallel park. Shifting out of reverse will return the mirror to its original position.

- To tilt the driver's mirror, place the selector switch in the left position.
- To tilt the passenger's mirror, place the switch in the right position.
- To turn the feature off, place the switch in the center position.

Power Mirror Heaters



The outside mirrors are heated to remove fog and frost. With the ignition switch in the ON (II) position, turn on the heaters by pressing the button. The indicator in the button comes on as a reminder. Press the button again to turn the heaters off. Pressing this button also turns the rear window defogger on and off.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

If you do not turn the heaters off, they will shut themselves off after 5 to 40 minutes (depending on the ambient temperature). It also shuts off when you turn off the ignition switch.

Driving Position Memory System
Your vehicle has a memory feature for the steering wheel, driver's seat, and outside mirror positions.

Two seat, steering wheel, and outside mirror positions can be stored in separate memories. You select a memorized position by pushing the appropriate button.

You can also select the memorized positions by unlocking the doors with the remote. Each remote has a driver's ID (see page 173). The driver's ID (Driver 1) corresponds to the memorized positions stored with the memory button (1). The driver's ID (Driver 2) corresponds to the memorized positions stored with the memory button (2).

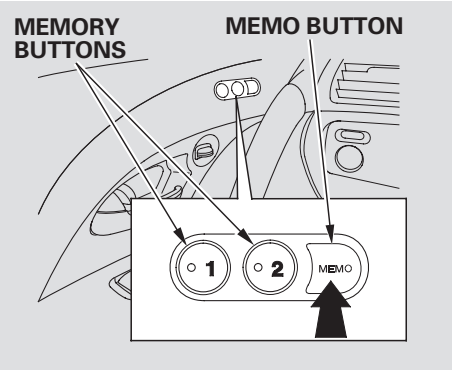
Storing a Driving Position in Memory
Store a driving position only when the vehicle is parked.

1. Turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position. You cannot add a new driving position to the memory unless the ignition switch is in the ON (II) position. You can recall a memorized position with the ignition switch in any position.
2. Adjust the seat to a comfortable position (see page 156).
   Adjust the steering wheel to a comfortable position (see page 148).
   Adjust the outside mirrors for best visibility (see page 161).

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Driving Position Memory System



3. Press the MEMO button on the driver's door. You will hear a beep. The indicator in the memory buttons (1 and 2) will blink. Immediately press one of the memory buttons (1 or 2) until you hear two beeps. The indicator in the memory button will stay on. The current positions of the driver's seat, steering wheel, and outside mirrors are now stored.

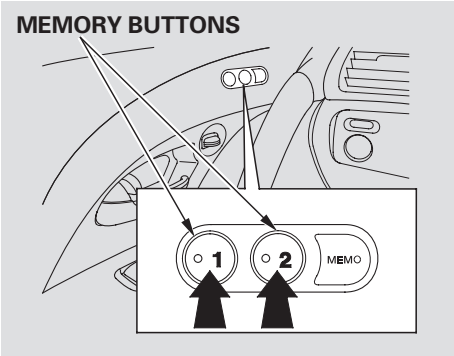
To cancel the storing procedure after pressing the MEMO button:

- Do not press a memory button within 5 seconds.
- Readjust the seat or steering position.
- Readjust the outside mirror position.

Each memory button stores only one driving position. Storing a new position erases the previous setting stored in that button's memory.

All stored driving positions will be lost if your vehicle's battery goes dead or is disconnected.

Selecting a Memorized Position



To select a memorized position, do this:

1. Make sure the shift lever is in Park.
2. Press the desired memory button (1 or 2) until you hear a beep.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

The system will move the seat, steering wheel, and outside mirrors to the memorized positions. The indicator in the selected memory button will flash during movement. When the adjustments are complete, you will hear two beeps, and the indicator will remain on.

To change the “MEMORY POSITION LINK” setting, see page 104 .

To stop the system’s automatic adjustment, do any of the following:

- Press any button on the control panel: MEMO, 1, or 2.
- Push any of the adjustment switches for the seat or steering wheel.
- Shift out of Park.
- Adjust the outside mirrors.

If you select a memorized position without pushing the ignition switch knob or inserting the built-in key in the ignition switch, only the seat and outside mirrors will adjust. To get the system to also adjust the steering wheel, push and turn the ignition switch or insert the built-in key in the ignition switch. You will hear two beeps when it is complete.

You can use the adjustment switches to change the positions of the seat, steering wheel, or outside mirrors after they are in their memorized position. If you change the memorized position, the indicator in the memory button will go out. To keep this driving position for later use, you must store it in the driving position memory.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Keyless Access System

Your vehicle has a keyless access system. When you carry the remote with you, you can lock/unlock the door(s), unlock the trunk, and start the engine without using the built-in key.

The system may not work if:
- The battery of the remote is weak.
- There is strong electrical current nearby.
- You carry a cell phone, a laptop computer, or other electrical device near the remote.
- The remote is covered by metal.
- A vehicle is being operated with a transmitter nearby.
- When the remote battery is dead.
- When the vehicle battery is dead.

Make sure the driver always carries the remote/built-in key set.

Protect the remote and the built-in key from direct sunlight, high temperature, and high humidity.

Do not drop the remote or the built-in key, and do not set heavy objects on them.

Keep the remote and the built-in key away from liquids. If they get wet, dry them immediately with a soft cloth.

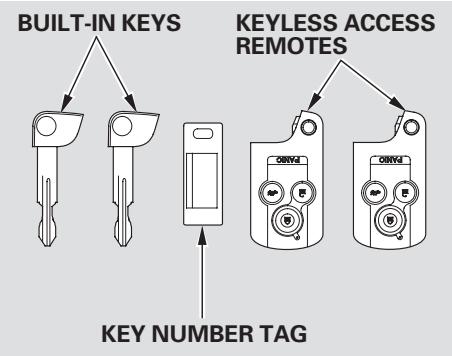
The built-in keys do not contain batteries.

Always keep the remote and the built-in key away from any magnetic material.

You should have received a key number tag with your built-in key. You will need this key number if you ever have to get a lost key replaced. Use only Acura-approved key blanks.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

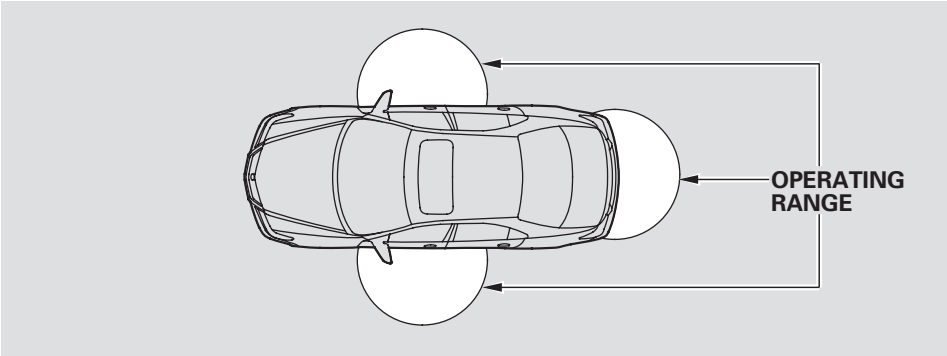
Keys



The following keys come with your vehicle. Refer to page 180 for how to separate the keys.

Built-in Key
This key is used to lock/unlock the doors, glove box, trunk pass-through cover, and to start the engine (after you remove the ignition switch cover, see page 177).

Keyless Access Remote
This remote is used to lock/unlock the doors and unlock the trunk. When you carry the remote, you can lock/unlock the doors, unlock the trunk, and start the engine without a key.



You can lock/unlock the doors within about a 32 inch (about 80 cm) radius from the outside door handle. You can open the trunk within about a 32 inch (about 80 cm) radius from the trunk release switch.

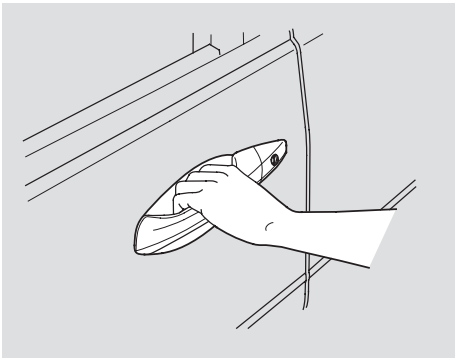
Anyone can lock/unlock a door or open the trunk if the remote is within the operating range of the door or the trunk.

The remote may not work if:
- It is too close to the vehicle.
- It is above or below the vehicle, even when it is within its operating range.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Keyless Access System

Unlocking the Door(s)



The handle of each front door has a sensor. That sensor works with the remote so you can automatically unlock/lock the door(s).

By default, only the driver's door unlocks when you grab its handle.

To change the "DOOR UNLOCK MODE" setting, see page 109 .

All the doors unlock when you grab the handle of the front passenger's door.

When you unlock the door(s), some exterior lights blink twice and the system beeps twice.

To change the "KEYLESS ACCESS LIGHT FLASH" setting, see page 111 .

To change the "KEYLESS ACCESS BEEP" setting, see page 113 .

If you wear a glove while grabbing a front door handle, the door sensor may be slow to respond or may not respond by unlocking the doors.

If you do not open any of the doors within 30 seconds, they will automatically relock.

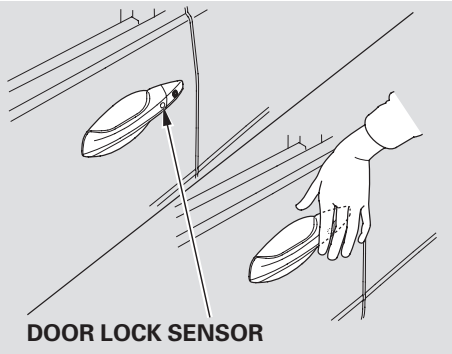
If a remote is within operating range while you wash your vehicle or when it is raining heavily, the door sensors may respond by unlocking the doors.

The unlock sensors do not operate when:

- The remote is not within the operating range.
- The remote is too close to the vehicle.
- When the doors are unlocked.
- The remote battery is dead.
- The vehicle battery is dead.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Locking the Doors



Each front door has a LOCK/UNLOCK feature.

When you touch the door lock sensor of the front door by hand, all the doors and the trunk will lock.

Before locking the doors, make sure the remote is not inside the vehicle.

When you lock the doors, some exterior lights blink once and the system beeps once. When you cannot set the security system because the trunk or hood is open, no exterior light blinks and/or no beeper sounds.

To change the "KEYLESS ACCESS LIGHT FLASH" setting, see page 111 .

To change the "KEYLESS ACCESS BEEP" setting, see page 113 .

Within 2 seconds of touching the handle to lock the doors or locking the doors with remote, pull the handle to make sure the doors are actually locked. The door unlock sensors do not operate for about 2 seconds after the doors are locked.

If a remote is within operating range while you wash your vehicle or when it is raining heavily, the door sensors may respond by locking the doors.

If you touch the door lock sensor of the front door with your hand wearing a glove, the door sensor may delay to respond or not respond by locking the doors.

The lock sensors do not operate if:

- The remote is not within the operating range.
- The doors are open.
- The ignition switch is not in the LOCK (0) position.
- The built-in key is in the ignition switch.
- The remote is too close to the vehicle.
- The remote battery is dead.
- The vehicle battery is dead.

CONTINUED

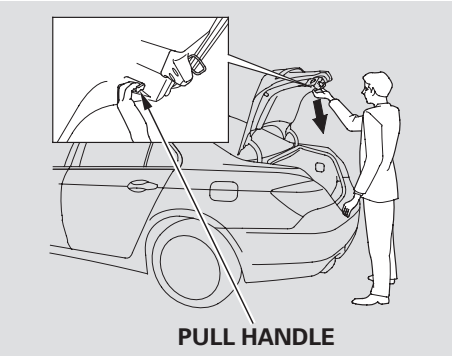
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Keyless Access System

Door Lock Prevention

If you open a door, pull its lock tab, and shut it when the remote is inside the vehicle, the driver's door will unlock. Make sure you carry the remote with you when you lock the doors.

Locking the Trunk



When you close the trunk with all doors locked, the trunk will lock.

When you unlock all the doors with the remote, built-in key or power door lock master switch, the trunk will unlock.

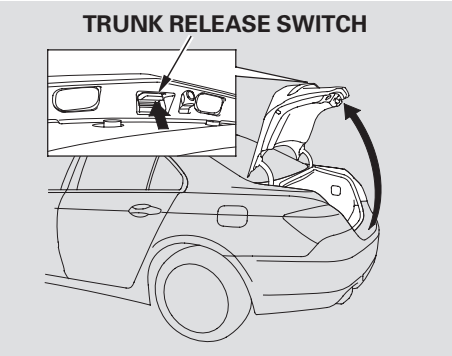
Use the pull handle when you close the trunk.

Before closing the trunk, make sure the remote is not in the trunk.

If you close the trunk when the remote is in it, the system beeps, and the trunk reopens.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Locking and Unlocking the Trunk



When the trunk is locked, you can open it in any of these ways:

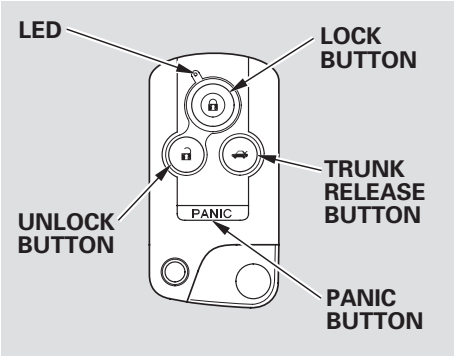
- Press the trunk release button inside the vehicle.
- Press the trunk button on the remote.
- Pull the trunk release switch when carrying the remote (the system beeps once).

The trunk cannot be locked if:

- The remote is too close to the trunk lid.
- The remote is on the interior rear panel.
- The remote is too close to the seat-back of the rear seat or the seat cushion.

Keep the trunk lid closed at all times while driving to avoid damaging the lid, and to prevent exhaust gas from getting into the interior. See **Carbon Monoxide Hazard** on page 56 .

Keyless Access Remote



LOCK – Press this button once to lock all doors. Some exterior lights will flash. When you push the LOCK button twice within 5 seconds, you will hear a beep to verify that the doors are locked and the security system is set.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Keyless Access System

You cannot lock the doors if any door, the trunk, or the hood is not fully closed if the built-in key is in the ignition switch, or if the ignition switch is in any position except the LOCK (0) position.

When you cannot set the security system because the trunk or hood is open, no exterior light blinks and/or no beeper sounds.

UNLOCK – Press this button once to unlock the driver's door. Press it twice to unlock the other doors. Some exterior lights will flash twice each time you press the button. The ceiling light (if the ceiling light switch is in the DOOR position) will come on when you press the UNLOCK button. If you do not open any doors within 30 seconds, the ceiling light fades out. If you relock the doors with the remote before 30 seconds have elapsed, the ceiling light will go off immediately.

To change the "DOOR LOCK MODE" setting, see page 127 .

To change the "INTERIOR LIGHT DIMMING TIME," see page 116 .

If you unlock the doors with the remote, but do not open any doors within 30 seconds, the doors automatically relock and the security system sets.

To change the "SECURITY RELOCK TIMER" setting, see page 131 .

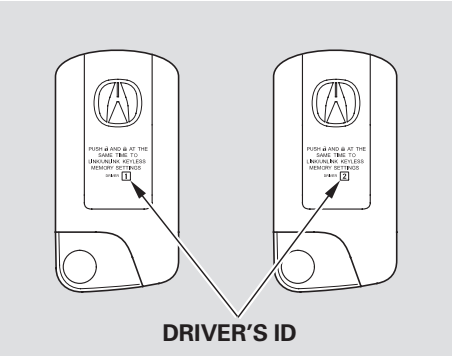
To change the "KEYLESS LOCK ACKNOWLEDGMENT" setting, see page 129 .

TRUNK – Press this button for about 1 second to open the trunk. You cannot open the trunk if the built-in key is in the ignition or the ignition switch is in any position except the LOCK (0) position. You cannot open the trunk with the remote if the trunk main switch is turned off.

PANIC – Press this button for about 2 seconds to attract attention: the horn will sound and the exterior lights will flash for about 30 seconds. To cancel panic mode, press any other button on the remote.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Keyless Memory Settings™



When you unlock the door with your remote, each remote activates the keyless memory settings related to that remote. The driver's ID (Driver 1 or Driver 2) is shown on the back of each remote.

Here are the settings activated with the remote:

- Driving position memory (see page 163).
- Customized settings (see page 81).
- Audio system settings (see page 213).
- Climate control settings (see page 205).

U.S. RL model

- Compass system preferences (see page 281).

Except U.S. RL model

- Navigation system preferences (see the navigation system manual).

To turn off this feature, press and hold the LOCK and UNLOCK buttons at the same time. The LED in the remote will blink once. Then release the buttons. Doing this cancels the keyless memory settings for that remote and restores the default settings.
Some of them keep the same settings as they were set previously.

To turn the keyless memory settings back on, repeat this procedure. The LED will blink twice to indicate the feature has been turned on.

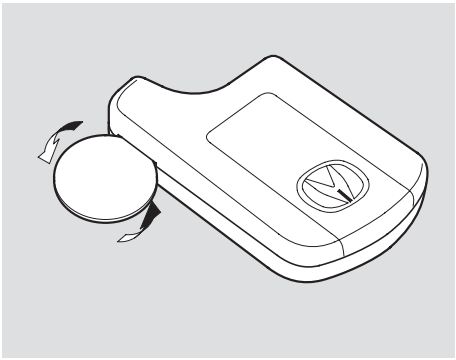
Remote Transmitter Care

- Avoid dropping or throwing the transmitter.
- Protect the transmitter from extreme temperature.
- Do not immerse the transmitter in any liquid.
- If you lose a transmitter, the replacement needs to be reprogrammed by your dealer.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Keyless Access System

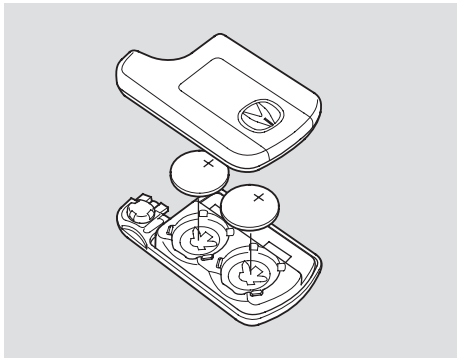
Replacing the Remote Battery



Replace the batteries if necessary.
Battery type: CR2025

Remove the built-in key.

Remove the upper half by carefully prying on the edge with a coin.



Replace the old batteries with new batteries. Place the batteries so the + side is facing up. Snap the two halves of the remote case back together.

An improperly disposed of battery can hurt the environment.
Always confirm local regulations for battery disposal.

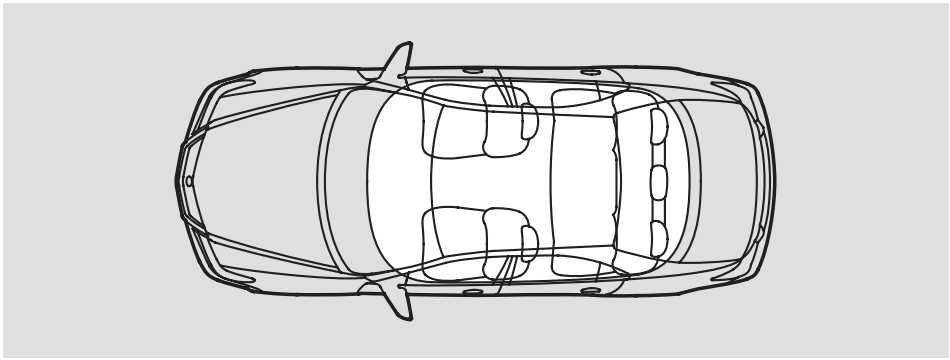
As required by the FCC:
This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

This device complies with Industry Canada Standard RSS-210.
Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Ignition Switch Operating Range



The engine may not run, and some malfunctions may occur, if the remote is:

- Outside the vehicle.
- On the dashboard.
- On the rear interior panel.
- In the glove box.
- In the door pockets.
- In the trunk, etc.

The engine may not start if the remote is subjected to strong radio waves.

Also, the engine may not start if the remote is too close to the windows.

NOTICE

Make sure you know where the remote is when you are inside the vehicle.

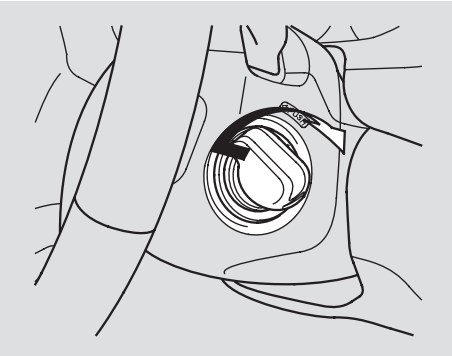
Remember that you can start the engine without using the built-in key when the remote is inside the vehicle.

Make sure you always carry the remote with you.

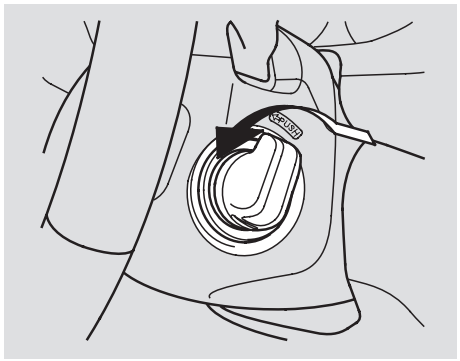
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Keyless Access System

Ignition Switch



When you push the ignition switch, the remote and the vehicle recognize each other. After the recognition, the remote indicator flashes, and a beeper sounds once. After the beep, turn the ignition switch.
When the remote is out of the operating range, the ignition switch is locked.
If the ignition switch cannot be turned from the LOCK (0) position to the ACCESSORY (I) position after the beep, the steering wheel is locked. To unlock the steering wheel, turn it right and left while turning the ignition switch at the same time. If the remote and the vehicle do not recognize each other, turn the ignition switch to the LOCK (0) position, remove the ignition switch cover, insert the built-in key, and turn the switch (see pages 152 and 177).



To turn the ignition switch to the LOCK (0) position, put the transmission in Park, press the switch in, and turn it to the LOCK (0) position. When the transmission is not in Park, you cannot turn the ignition switch to the LOCK (0) position.

Before leaving the vehicle, make sure the ignition switch is in the LOCK (0) position.

If you open the driver's door with the ignition switch in the ACCESSORY (I) position, a beeper will sound. You will also see a "RETURN IGNITION SWITCH TO LOCK (0) POSITION" message on the multi-information display.

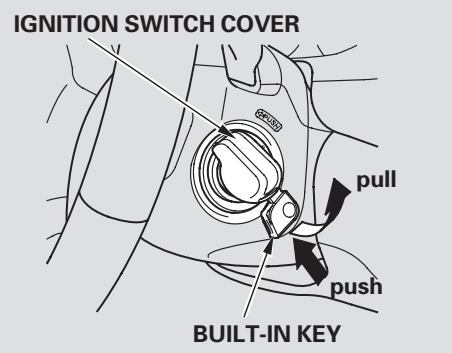
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Also, if you close the door when the ignition switch is not in the LOCK (0) position and the remote is not inside the vehicle, the keyless access alarm sounds outside the vehicle, a message appears on the multi-information display, and the beeper sounds if the ignition switch is in the ON (II) position.

When the beeper sounds after you close the driver's door outside the vehicle, check the position of the ignition switch and the location of the remote.

If the engine is running and you remove the remote from the vehicle, it will continue to run. But once turned to the LOCK (0) position, the engine will not restart until a remote is brought back into the vehicle.

Removing the Ignition Switch Cover



To remove the ignition switch cover, insert the built-in key (see page 180), then pull the cover out by pulling the built-in key while pushing it.

Beeper and Message

Keyless Remote Not Detected

When you are pressing the ignition switch, or when the ignition switch is in the ON (II) position, the beeper sounds if you take the remote out of the vehicle and close the door.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

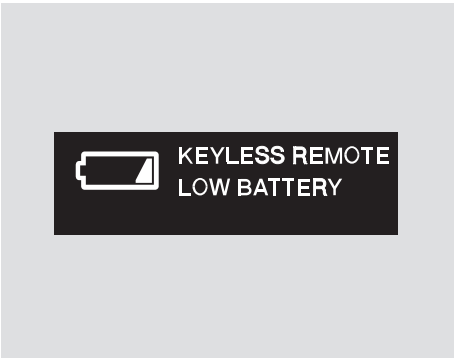
Keyless Access System

- The outside beeper sounds when the ignition switch is in the ACCESSORY (I) or the ON (II) position.
- When the ignition switch is in the ON (II) position, the multi-information display shows "KEYLESS REMOTE NOT DETECTED," and the inside and outside beepers sound. The multi-information display message goes away when you bring the remote back inside the vehicle, and close the door or apply the parking brake.
- If the engine is running and you remove the remote from the vehicle, it will continue to run. Once turned to the LOCK (0) position, the engine will not restart until a remote is brought back into the vehicle.

The engine does not restart if you turn the ignition switch to the LOCK (0) position when the remote is outside the vehicle. Check where the remote is. Make sure that you carry the remote or built-in key with you when you operate the ignition switch.

If you pass the remote through an open window, the system does not respond. Also, even when the remote is inside the vehicle, the beeper may sound when the location of the remote is not detected due to surrounding conditions. It is not a failure. Make sure that you carry the remote with you.

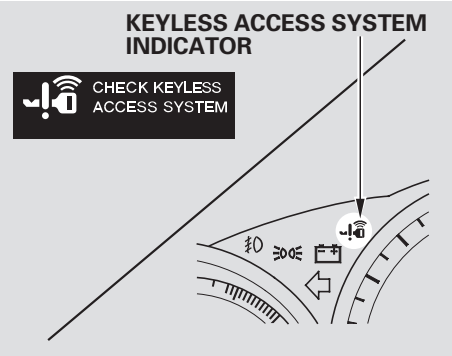
Keyless Remote Low Battery



The batteries in the remote normally last about 2 years. To ensure maximum battery life, do not store the remote close to electrical devices such as computers or TVs. When the multi-information display shows "KEYLESS REMOTE LOW BATTERY," replace the batteries as soon as possible (see page 174).

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Check Keyless Access System



The indicator comes on for several seconds when you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position. Have your vehicle checked by your dealer if:

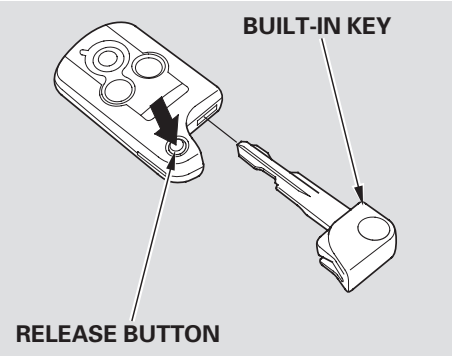
- The keyless access system indicator comes on and stays on while you are driving.
- The indicator comes on with the ignition switch in the ON (II) position.
- The multi-information display shows “CHECK KEYLESS ACCESS SYSTEM.”

In this case, use the built-in key to lock/unlock the doors and start the engine.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Keyless Access System

Built-in key and Remote



To remove the built-in key, pull it out while pressing the release button. To reinstall the built-in key, push the key into the remote until it clicks.

To avoid damaging the remote and the built-in key, never pull on the built-in key unless you are pressing the release button.

The keyless access system uses an electric field to identify the remote.

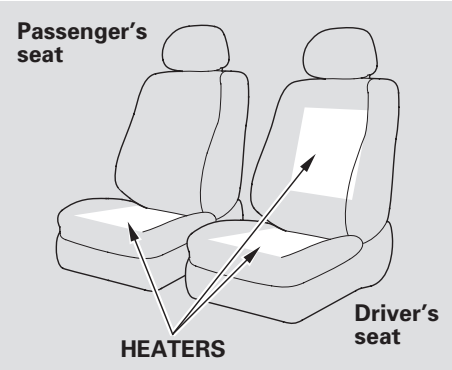
If you use medical equipment such as a cardiac pacemaker, ask your doctor if the radio waves used by the remote will affect it.

Valet Function

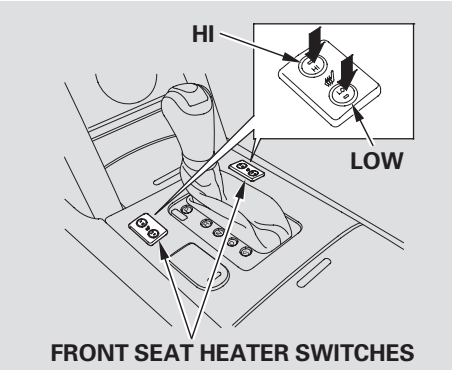
The trunk and glove box cannot be opened when you turn the trunk main switch off and lock the glove box and trunk pass-through cover with the built-in key. Also, the trunk cannot be opened by using the remote.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Front Seat Heaters



RL models
Both front seats are equipped with seat heaters. The passenger seat only has heaters in the seat bottom because of the side airbag cutoff system.



The ignition switch must be in the ON (II) position to use the heaters. Push the top of the switch, HI, to rapidly heat up the seat. After the seat reaches a comfortable temperature, select LO by pushing the bottom of the switch. This will keep the seat warm.

In the HI setting, the heater turns off when the seat gets warm, and turns back on after the seat's temperature drops.

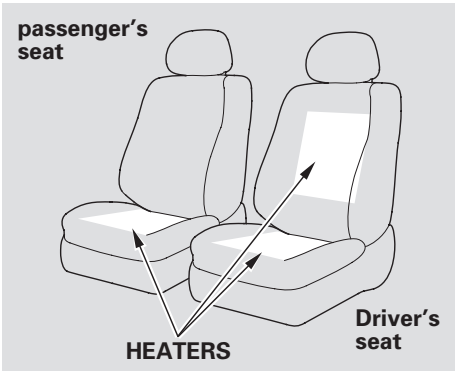
In the LO setting, the heater runs continuously. It does not cycle with temperature changes.

Follow these precautions whenever you use the seat heaters:

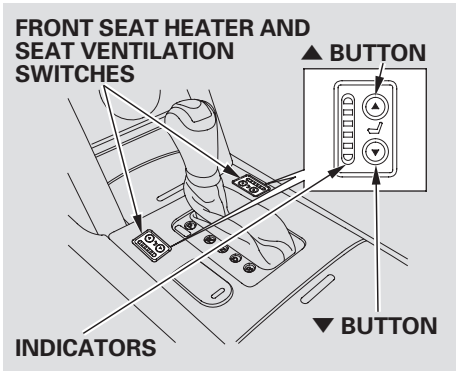
- Use the HI setting only to heat the seats quickly, because it draws large amounts of current from the battery.
- If the engine is left idling for an extended period, do not use the seat heaters, even on the LO setting. It can weaken the battery, causing hard starting.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Front Seat Heaters and Seat Ventilation



If equipped
Both front seats are equipped with seat heaters and an air ventilation system. The passenger seat only has heaters in the seat bottom because of the side airbag system.



The ignition switch must be in the ON (II) position to use the heaters and the air ventilation system.

To use the heaters, press the ▲ button. The indicator (red) next to the button will come on. There are four settings in the heaters:

HI – Three indicators on.
MID – Two indicators on.
LO – One indicator on.
OFF – All indicators off.

When you press the ▲ button once, the heater is set to HI. After the seat reaches a comfortable temperature, select MID or LOW by pressing the ▼ button. This will keep the seat warm. To shut down the heater, press the ▼ button until the indicators go off.

In HI, when the seat gets warm, the heater will change to MID after about 5 minutes.

In MID, the heater will change to LOW after about 60 minutes.

In LOW, the heater runs continuously.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Front Seat Heaters and Seat Ventilation

To ventilate the seat, press the ▼ button. The indicator (blue) next to the button will come on. The air ventilation system has four settings:

HI — Three indicators on.
MID — Two indicators on.
LO — One indicator on.
OFF — All indicators off.

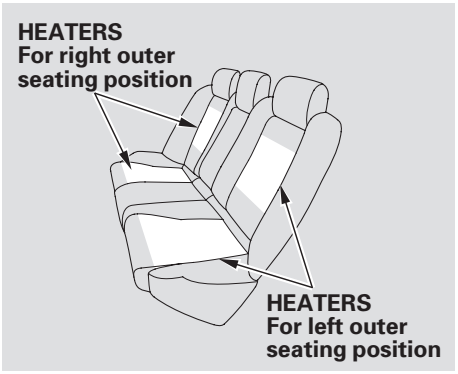
When you press the ▼ button once, the system is set to HI. To change to the lower mode, press the ▲ button. To turn the air ventilation off, press the ▲ button until the indicators go off.

Follow these precautions whenever you use the seat heaters and the seat ventilation:

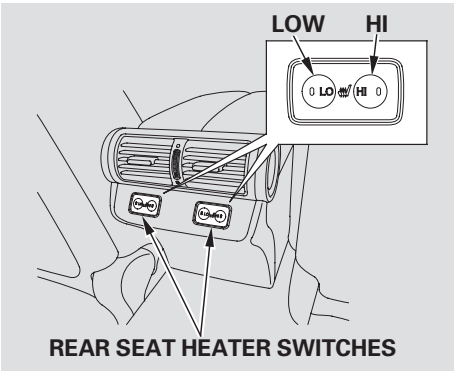
- Use the HI setting only to heat or to ventilate the seats quickly, because it draws large amounts of current from the battery.
- If the engine is left idling for an extended period, do not use the seat heaters or the seat ventilation, even on the LO setting. It can weaken the battery, causing hard starting.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Rear Seat Heaters (Canadian models)



The outer rear seat cushions and seat-backs are equipped with seat heaters.



The rear seat heater switches are located under the rear vents. The left (right) switch controls the seat heaters on left (right) outer seating position.

The ignition switch must be in the ON (II) position to use seat heaters. Push the right side of the switch, HI, to rapidly heat up the seat. After the seat reaches a comfortable temperature, select LO by pushing the left side of the switch. This will keep the seat warm.

In the HI setting, the heater turns off when the seat gets warm, and turns back on after the seat's temperature drops.

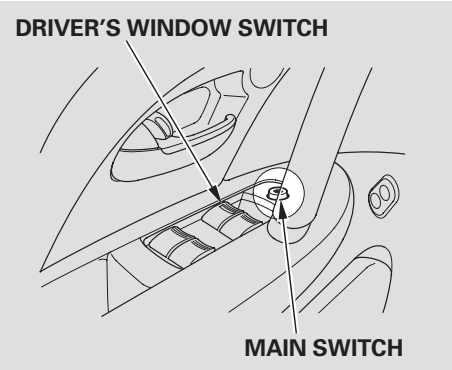
In the LO setting, the heater runs continuously. It does not cycle with temperature changes.

Follow these precautions whenever you use the seat heaters:

- Use the HI setting only to heat the seats quickly, because it draws large amounts of current from the battery.
- If the engine is left idling for an extended period, do not use the seat heaters even on the LO setting. It can weaken the battery, causing hard starting.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position before operating any of the window switches. To open a window, push the switch down and hold it. To close the window, pull the switch up and hold it. Release the switch to stop the window.



If the MAIN switch is pushed down (OFF), the passenger windows cannot be raised or lowered. Keep the MAIN switch off when you have children in the vehicle so they do not injure themselves by operating the windows unintentionally.

⚠ WARNING

Closing a power window on someone's hands or fingers can cause serious injury.

Make sure your passengers are away from the windows before closing them.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Power Windows

AUTO — To open the window fully, push the window switch firmly down to the second detent, then release it. The window automatically goes down all the way. To stop the window from going all the way down, pull back on the window switch briefly.

To close the window fully, pull back the window switch firmly to the second detent, then release it. The window automatically goes all the way up. To stop the window from going all the way up, push down on the window switch briefly.

To open or close the window partially, push down or pull back on the window switch lightly to the first detent, and hold it. The window will stop when you release the switch.

All window switches also have the AUTO feature.

Auto Reverse
If the window runs into any obstacle while it is closing automatically, it will reverse direction, and then stop. To close the window, remove the obstacle, then use the window switch again.

Auto reverse stops sensing when the window is almost closed. You should always check that all passengers and objects are away from the window before closing it.

The indicators in the switches come on when you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position.

The power windows have a key-off delay. You can still open and close the windows for up to 10 minutes after you turn off the ignition switch. The key-off delay cancels as soon as you open either front door. You must then turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position for the power windows to operate.

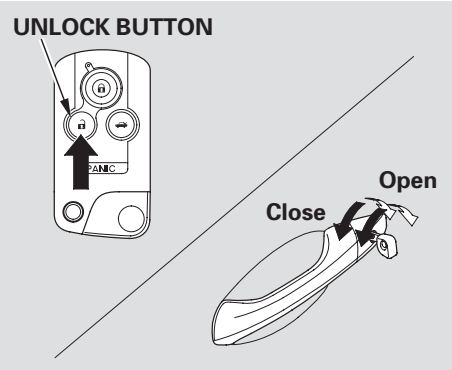
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Opening the Windows and Moonroof with the Remote

You can open all of the windows and the moonroof from outside with the remote.

1. Press the UNLOCK button once to unlock the driver's door.
2. Press the UNLOCK button a second time, and hold it. All the doors unlock, and all four windows and moonroof start to open. To stop the windows and moonroof, release the button.
3. To open the windows and moonroof further, press the button again and hold it. If the windows and the moonroof stop before the desired position, repeat steps 1 and 2.

You cannot close the windows or the moonroof with the remote.



Opening/Closing the Windows and Moonroof with the Built-in Key

You can open and close the windows and moonroof with the built-in key in the driver's door lock.

To open:

1. Insert the built-in key in the driver's door lock.
2. Turn the key clockwise, then release it.
3. Turn the built-in key clockwise again, and hold it. All four windows and the moonroof start to open. To stop the windows and moonroof, release the built-in key.
4. When the windows or moonroof stops before opening fully, to open the windows and moonroof further, turn and hold the key again (within 10 seconds).

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Power Windows, Moonroof

To close:
1. Insert the built-in key in the driver's door lock.

2. Turn the key counterclockwise, then release it.

3. Turn the key counterclockwise again, and hold it. All four windows and the moonroof start to close. To stop the windows and the moonroof, release the key.

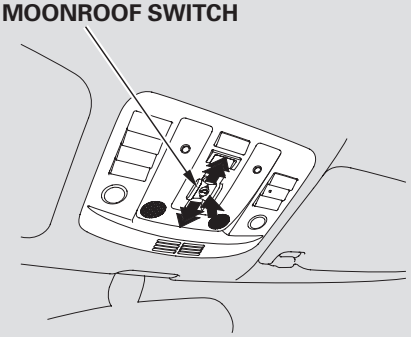
4. To close the windows and moonroof further, turn and hold the key again (within 10 seconds).

NOTE: If the windows and the moonroof stop before the desired position, repeat steps 2 and 3.

Opening/Closing the Moonroof with the Ceiling Console Switch

Turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position before operating the moonroof switch on the ceiling console. To open the moonroof, pull back the moonroof switch. To close the moonroof, push the moonroof switch forward. Release the switch to stop the moonroof.

MOONROOF SWITCH



To open the moonroof fully, pull back the moonroof switch firmly. The moonroof opens all the way. To stop the moonroof from opening fully, push the switch briefly.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Moonroof

To tilt the moonroof, push the center of the moonroof switch straight up. To stop the moonroof from tilting fully open, push the moonroof switch forward.

To open or close the moonroof partially, pull back or push forward on the moonroof switch lightly to the first detent, and hold it. The moonroof will stop when you release the switch.

To close the moonroof fully, push the moonroof switch forward to the second detent, then release it. The moonroof closes all the way. To stop the moonroof from closing all the way, push the switch briefly.

⚠ WARNING

Opening or closing the moonroof on someone's hands or fingers can cause serious injury.

Make sure all hands and fingers are clear of the moonroof before opening or closing it.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Moonroof

Auto Reverse
If the moonroof runs into any obstacle while it is closing automatically, it will reverse direction, and then stop. To close the moonroof, remove the obstacle, then use the moonroof switch again.

Auto reverse stops sensing when the moonroof is almost closed. You should always check that all passengers and objects are away from the moonroof before closing it.

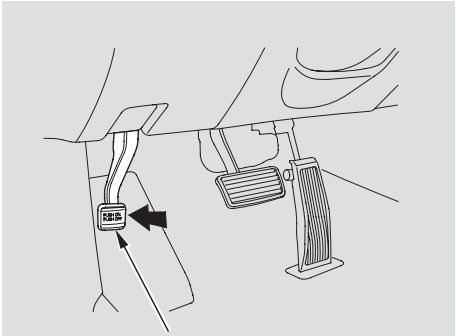
The moonroof has a key-off delay. You can still open and close the moonroof for up to 10 minutes after you turn off the ignition switch. The key-off delay cancels as soon as you open either front door. You must then turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position for the moonroof to operate.

NOTICE

If you try to open the moonroof in below-freezing temperatures, or when it is covered with snow or ice, you can damage the moonroof panel or its motor.

Operating the Moonroof with the Remote Transmitter or the Key
You can use the remote transmitter or the key to operate the moonroof from the outside. Refer to page 187 for details.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



PARKING BRAKE PEDAL

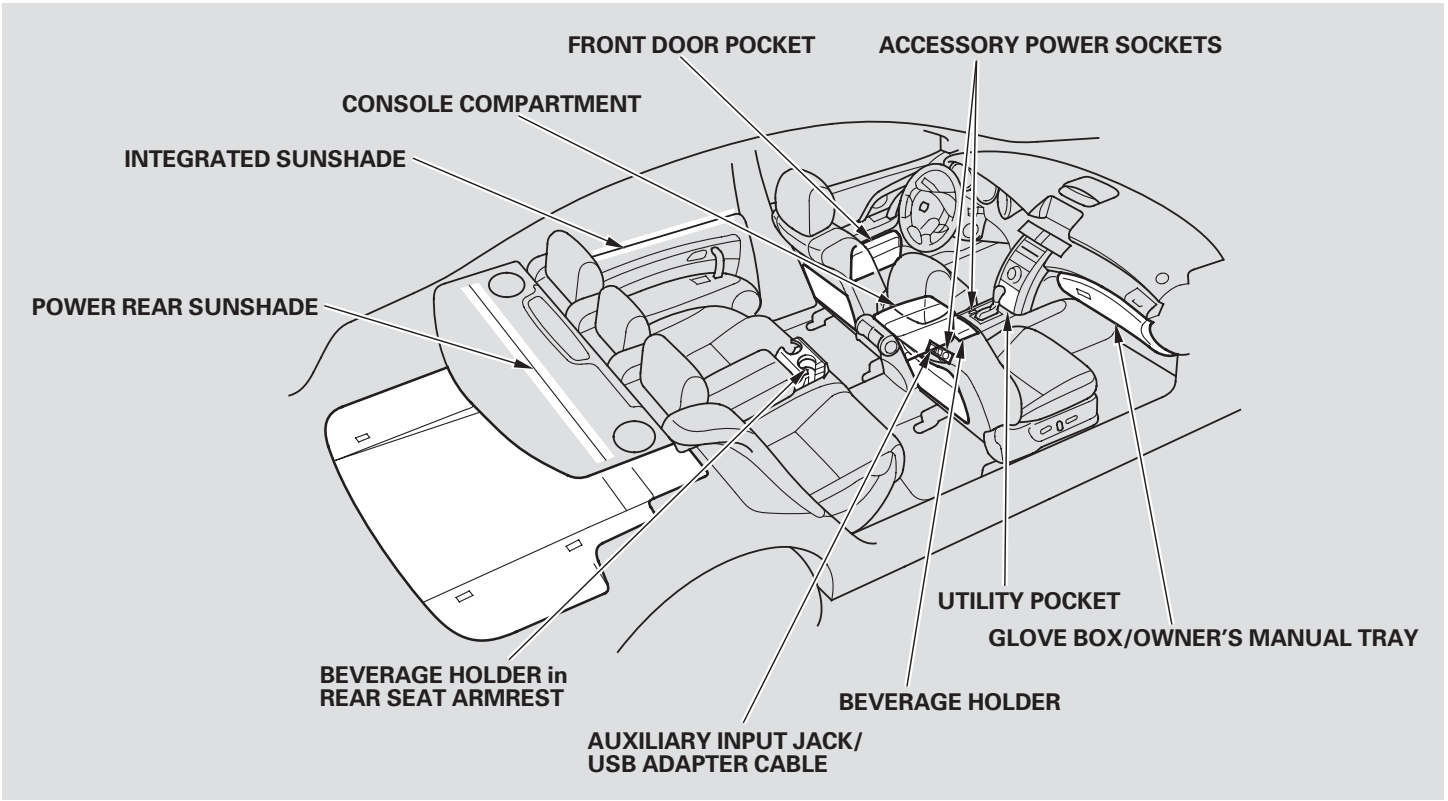
To apply the parking brake, push the parking brake pedal down with your foot. To release the parking brake, push on the pedal again. The parking brake indicator on the instrument panel should go out when the parking brake is fully released with the engine running (see page 63).

NOTICE

Driving the vehicle with the parking brake applied can damage the rear brakes, axles, and tires. A beeper will sound if the vehicle is put into gear with the parking brake on.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Interior Convenience Items



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Glove Box

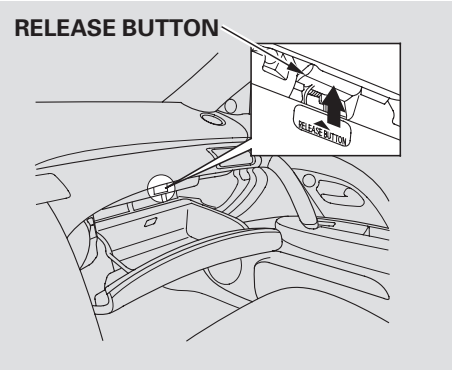
Open the glove box by pulling the handle. Close it with a firm push. Lock or unlock the glove box with the built-in key.

The glove box light comes on only when the parking lights are on.

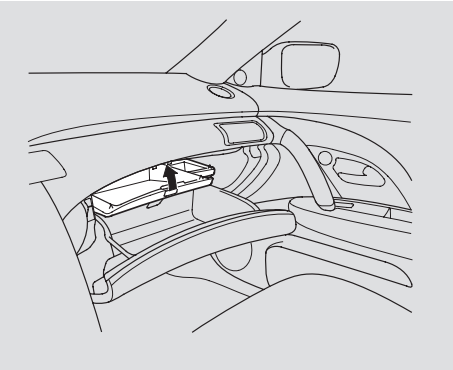
⚠WARNING

An open glove box can cause serious injury to your passenger in a crash, even if the passenger is wearing the seat belt.

Always keep the glove box closed while driving.



Your vehicle has an owner's manual tray inside the glove box. To open the tray, push the release button up.

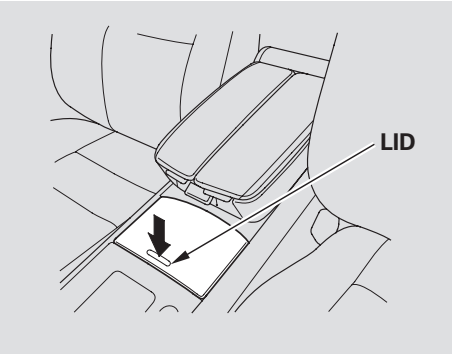


To close the tray, push it up.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

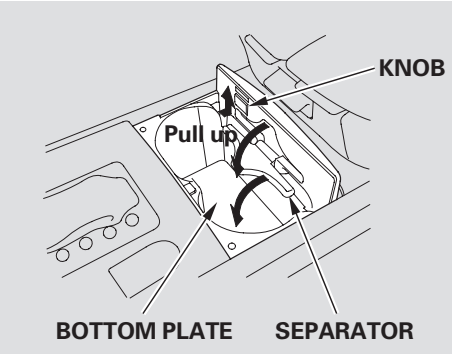
Interior Convenience Items

Beverage Holders

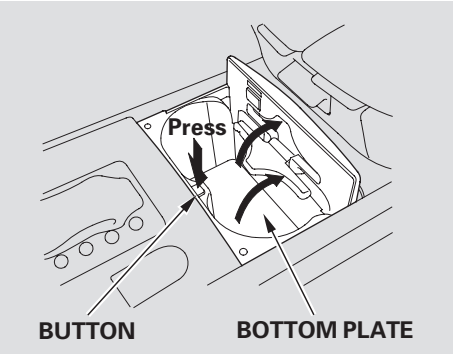


Be careful when you are using the beverage holders. A spilled liquid that is very hot can scald you or your passengers. Spilled liquids can damage the upholstery, carpeting, and electrical components in the interior.

To use the beverage holder, push the lid.

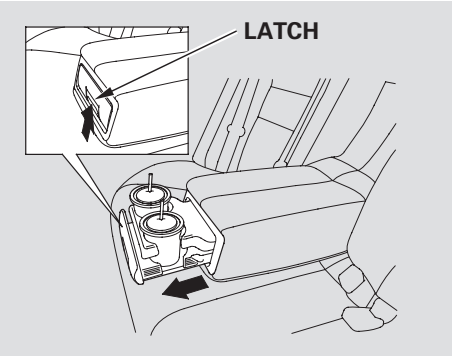


For a short container, put the bottom plate down, and pull up the knob to use the separator.



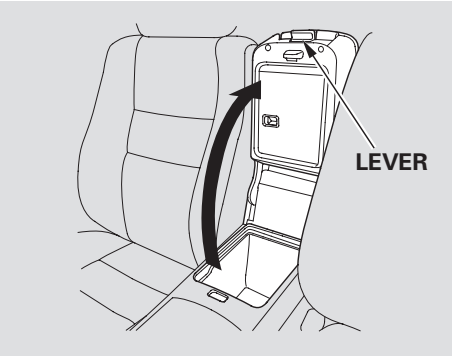
For a long container, press the button in the beverage holder to raise the bottom plate. Stand the separator up.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



The rear beverage holder is in the rear seat armrest. Open the beverage holder by pulling up on the latch on the front.

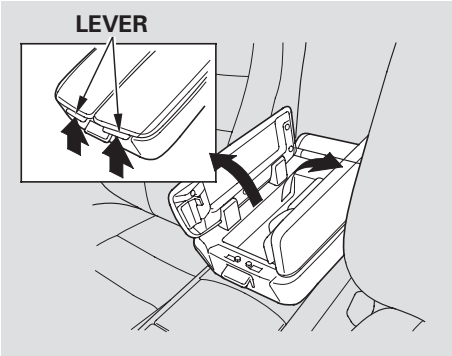
Console Compartment



To open the console compartment, pull up on the lever and lift the armrest.

To close, lower the armrest, and push it down until it latches.

The console compartment light is on when the light switch is in the or position.

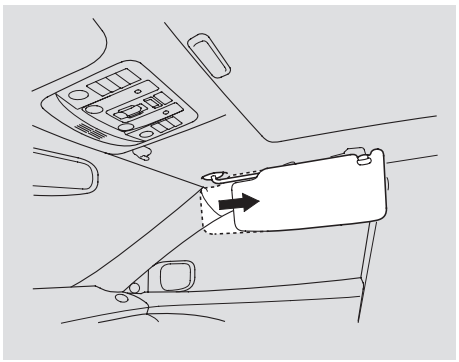


You can put small items in the tray located in the console compartment lid. To use the tray, pull up on the lever, and lift the armrest pad.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Interior Convenience Items

Sun Visors



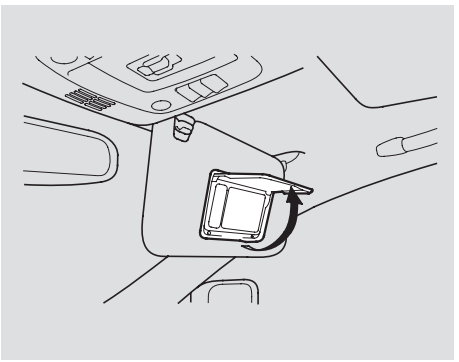
To use a sun visor, pull it down. You can also use a sun visor at the side window. Remove the support rod from the clip, and swing the sun visor toward the side window. You can extend the sun visor further by pulling it back.

Do not use the sun visor extension feature over the rear view mirror.

Make sure to slide the sun visor back to its original position before flipping it back in place.

Make sure you put the sun visor back in place when you are getting into or out of the vehicle.

Vanity Mirror

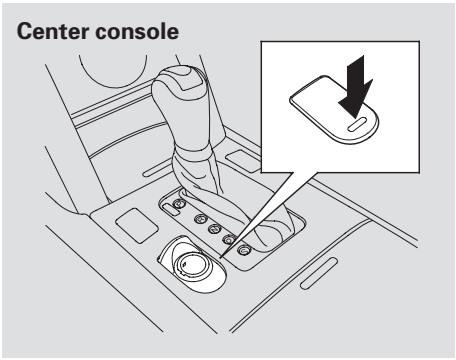


To use the vanity mirror on the back of the sun visor, pull up the cover.

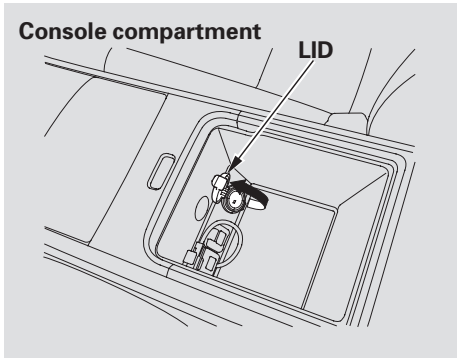
The vanity mirror lights come on when you pull up the cover.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Accessory Power Sockets



There are two accessory power sockets. One is located in the front of the center console. To use the power socket, push and release the lid.

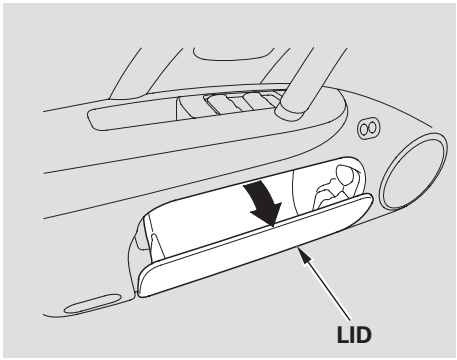


The other socket is under the armrest in the console compartment storage area. To use the power socket, pull up the cover.

These sockets are intended to supply power for 12 volt DC accessories that are rated 120 watts or less (10 amps).

They will not power an automotive type cigarette lighter element.

Front Door Pockets



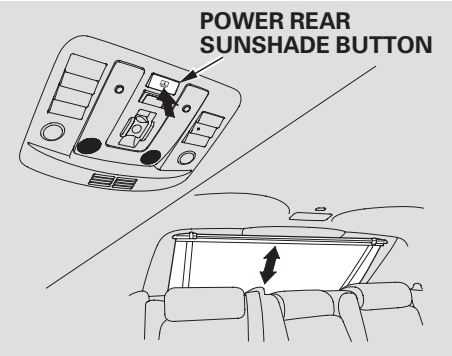
The interior of each front door has an extendable pocket for maps and other small, lightweight items. For safety, be sure both front door pockets are closed while driving.

When the light switch is in the or position, the front door pocket light is on.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Interior Convenience Items

Power Rear Sunshade

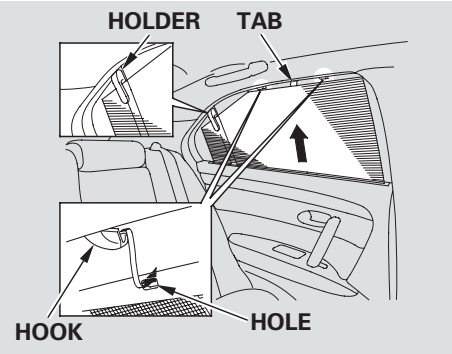


With the ignition switch in the ON (II) position, push the power rear sunshade button on the ceiling console to raise the rear sunshade. Push the button again to lower it.

When you shift to reverse, the sunshade goes down automatically. To use it again, shift to another position, and push the button to raise it.
If the sunshade stops while moving, check for and clear any obstacles, then push the button again.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Integrated Sunshades



Each rear door has an integrated sunshade. To use a sunshade, hold the tab on the top, insert the sunshade into the holder, and pull the sunshade all the way up. Insert the holes on the sunshade into the hooks on the window frame.

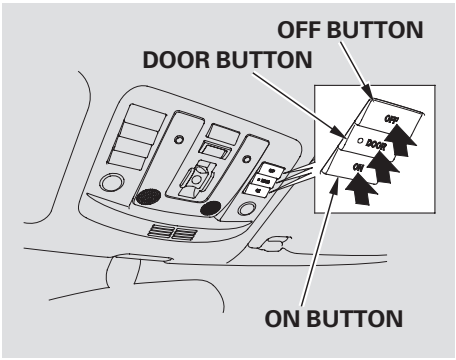
The hooks are intended for use only by the sunshades. Do not hang any other items on the hooks, as that could interfere with proper operation of the side curtain airbags.

To prevent the integrated sunshades from being unhooked due to winds, leave the rear windows closed while driving.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Interior Lights

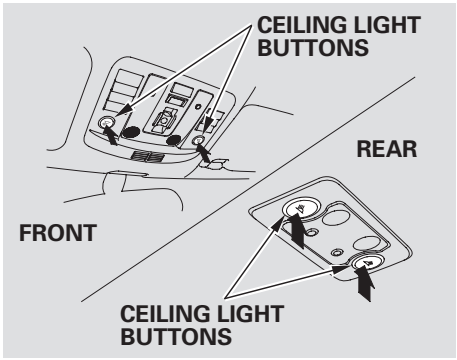
Ceiling Lights



The front and rear of the ceiling have ceiling lights.

Push the ON button to turn on all the ceiling lights. Push the OFF button to turn them off.

After pushing the DOOR button, all the lights come on when you open any door, unlock the doors with the remote or built-in key, or turn the ignition switch from the ON (II) or the ACCESSORY (I) position to the LOCK (0) position. The indicator in the button comes on as a reminder.



Push each ceiling light button to turn its light on and off.

To change the “INTERIOR LIGHT DIMMING TIME” setting, see page 116 .

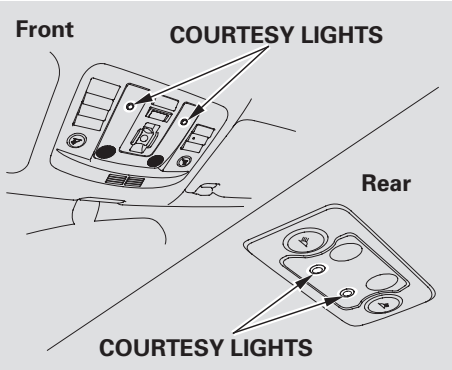
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Interior Lights

Courtesy Lights

The courtesy light in each door comes on when the door is opened, and goes out when the door is closed.

Your vehicle also has a courtesy light in the ignition switch. This light comes on when you open the driver's door. It fades out in about 30 seconds after the door is closed.



The courtesy lights between the sun visors and on the rear ceiling light panel come on when you turn the parking lights on. To adjust its brightness, press either of the instrument panel brightness control buttons (+ or −) (see page 146).

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

09/04/02 19:03:31 31SJA650 0207

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Features

The climate control system in your vehicle provides a comfortable driving environment in all weather conditions.

The standard audio system has many features. This section describes those features and how to use them.

The climate control system and the audio system have a voice control feature.

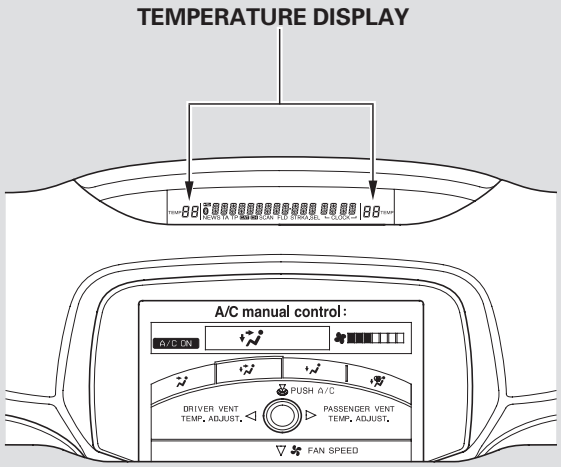
Your vehicle has an anti-theft audio system that requires a code number to enable it.

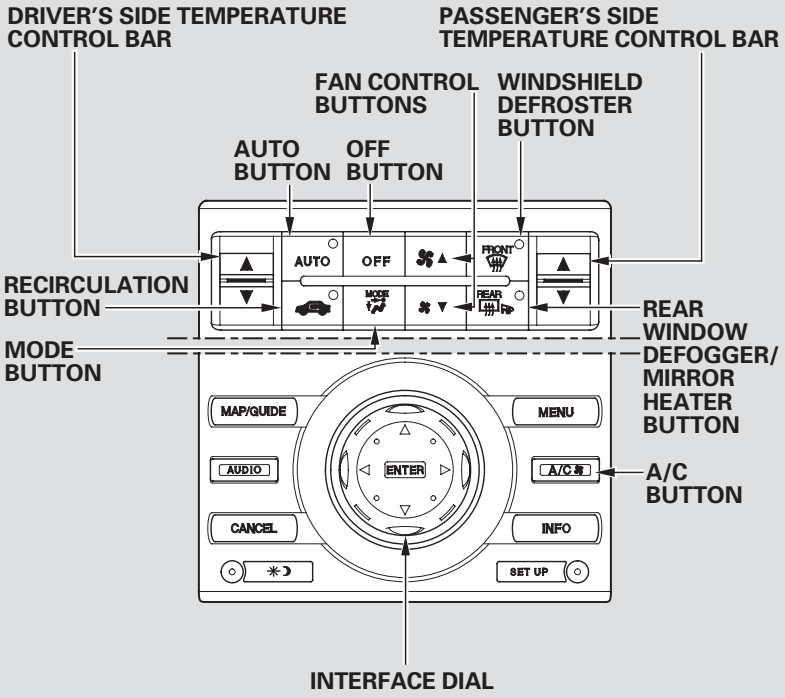
The security system helps to discourage vandalism and theft of your vehicle.

Climate Control System 204
Climate Control Sensors 212
Audio System 213
  Playing the AM/FM Radio 214
  AM/FM Radio Frequencies 224
  AM/FM Radio Reception 224
  Adjusting the Sound 226
  Playing the XM® Radio 229
  Operating the Disc Changer 236
  Playing an iPod 247
  Playing a USB Flash Memory Device 256
  Playing a *Bluetooth*® Audio 265
Disc Changer Error Messages 271
iPod Error Messages 272
USB Flash Memory Device Error Messages 273
Protecting Your Discs 274
Auxiliary Input Jack 277
Remote Audio Controls 278
Radio Theft Protection 280
Compass System 281
  Voice Control Basics 304
  Setting the Clock 313
Security System 315
Cruise Control 316
Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) ... 319
HomeLink® Universal Transceiver 334
AcuraLink® 337
Bluetooth® HandsFreeLink® 354
Rearview Camera and Monitor 375

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Climate Control System



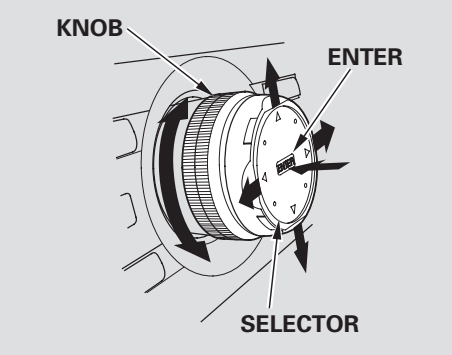


U.S. models
(Technology package model is shown)

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Interface Dial

Many climate control functions can still be controlled by standard buttons, dials, and knobs, but some functions can only be accessed using the interface dial. The interface dial has two parts, a knob and a selector.



The knob turns left and right. Use it to make selections or adjustments to a list or menu on the screen.

The selector can be pushed left, right, up, down, and in. Use the selector to scroll through lists, to select menus, and to highlight menu items. When you make a selection, push the center of the selector (ENTER) to go to that selection.

Personalization Setting

When you unlock the doors with your remote, the driver's ID (Driver 1 or Driver 2) is detected, and the climate control settings are turned to the respective mode automatically when the ignition is turned to the ON (II) position.

Voice Control System

The climate control system can also be operated by voice control.

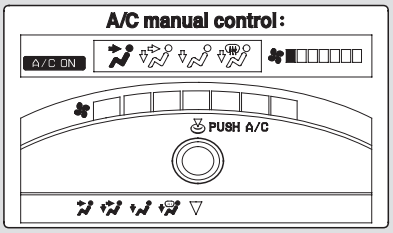
On models with navigation system
See the Navigation System manual for complete details.

On models without navigation system
Refer to Voice Control Basics for complete details (see page 304).

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Climate Control System

Fan Control



Using the Fan Control Buttons
Press the ▲ button to increase the fan speed and airflow. Press the ▼ button to decrease it.

Using the Interface Dial
Press the A/C button to view the climate control display, then turn the interface knob to increase or decrease the fan speed and airflow.

Temperature Control Bars

To select the desired temperature, push the temperature control bar up or down.

To set the driver's and passenger's temperature separately, push the temperature control bar up or down on the driver's or passenger's side. The driver and passenger can each set the temperature to the desired setting.

Air Conditioning (A/C)

Press the A/C button to view the climate control display. Pushing ENTER on the interface selector turns the air conditioning on and off. You will see A/C ON or A/C OFF in the display.

When you turn the A/C off, the system cannot regulate the inside temperature if you set the temperature control below the outside temperature.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Recirculation Button

When the indicator in the button is on, air from the vehicle's interior is sent throughout the system again. When the indicator is off, air is brought in from the outside of the vehicle (fresh air mode).

The outside air intakes for the climate control system are at the base of the windshield. Keep this area clear of leaves and other debris.

The system should be left in fresh air mode under almost all conditions. Keeping the system in recirculation mode, particularly with the A/C off, can cause the windows to fog up.

Switch to recirculation mode when driving through dusty or smoky conditions, then return to fresh air mode.

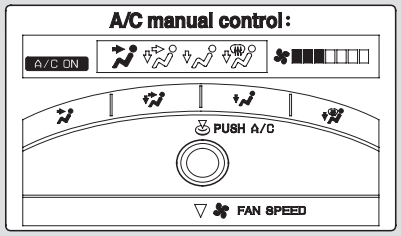
Windshield Defroster Button

This button turns the windshield defroster on and off.
When you push this button, air flows from the defroster vents at the base of the windshield, and the system automatically switches to fresh air mode and turns on the A/C. When the indicator in the button is on, the passenger's temperature cannot be set separately from the driver's.

Rear Window Defogger Button

This button turns the rear window defogger on and off (see page 147). Pushing this button also turns the power mirror heaters on and off.

Mode Control



You can select the vents air flows from. Some air will flow from the dashboard corner and side vents in all modes.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Climate Control System

Using the Mode Control Button
Use the mode control button to select the vents the air flows from. Some air will flow from the dashboard vents in all modes.

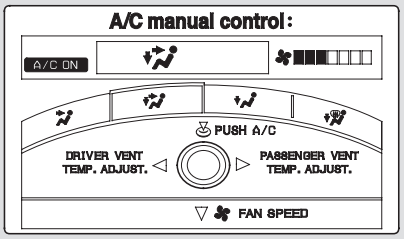
Using the Interface Dial
Press the A/C button to view the climate control display, then push the interface selector down. Select any of the modes by turning the interface knob.

Air flows from the center and corner vents in the dashboard.

Airflow is divided between the vents in the dashboard and the floor vents.

Air flows from the floor vents.

Airflow is divided between the floor vents and defroster vents at the base of the windshield.

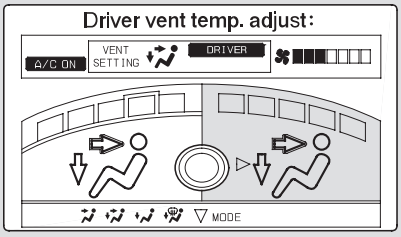


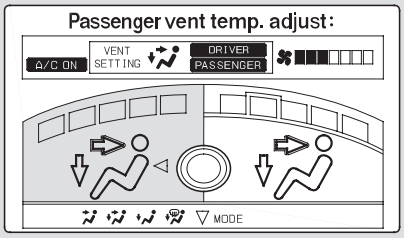
When is selected, you can increase or decrease the temperature of airflow from the dashboard vent for the driver's side and the passenger's side without changing the temperature of airflow from the floor vent.

Push the interface selector right or left, then turn the interface knob to select the desired temperature.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Climate Control System





Ventilation

The ventilation system draws in outside air, circulates it through the interior, then releases it through vents near the rear window.

1. Set the temperature to the lower limit.
2. Make sure the A/C is off.
3. Select and fresh air mode.
4. Set the fan to the desired speed.

Using the Heater

The heater uses engine coolant to warm the air. If the engine is cold, it will be several minutes before you feel warm air coming from the system.

1. Select and fresh air mode.
2. Set the fan to the desired speed.
3. Adjust the warmth of the air with the temperature control bar.

Using the A/C

Air conditioning places an extra load on the engine. Watch the engine coolant temperature gauge (see page 70). If it moves near the red zone, turn off the A/C until the gauge reading returns to normal.

If the interior is very warm, you can cool it down more rapidly by partially opening the windows, turning on the air conditioning, and setting the fan to maximum speed in fresh air mode.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Climate Control System

1. Press the A/C button to view the climate control display.
2. Turn on the A/C by pushing ENTER on the interface selector. You will see A/C ON in the display.
3. Make sure the temperature is set to maximum cool.
4. Select .
5. If the outside air is humid, select recirculation mode. If the outside air is dry, select fresh air mode.
6. Set the fan to the desired speed by turning the interface knob.

Dehumidify the Interior

Air conditioning, as it cools, removes moisture from the air. When used in combination with the heater, it makes the interior warm and dry.

1. Switch the fan on.
2. Turn on the air conditioning.
3. Select and fresh air mode.
4. Adjust the temperature to your preference.

This setting is suitable for all driving conditions whenever the outside temperature is above 32°F (0°C).

To Defog and Defrost

To remove fog from the inside of the windows:

1. Set the fan to the desired speed, or high for faster defrosting.
2. Select . The system automatically switches to fresh air mode and turns on the A/C.
3. Adjust the temperature so the airflow feels warm.
4. Select to help clear the rear window.
5. To increase airflow to the windshield, close the corner vents.

When you switch to another mode from , the A/C setting returns to the previous setting (on or off). Select A/C, then press ENTER on the interface selector to turn the A/C off if it is on.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

To Remove Exterior Frost or Ice From the Windows

1. Select . The system automatically switches to fresh air mode and turns on the A/C.
2. Select .
3. Set the fan and temperature controls to maximum level.

To clear the windshield faster, you can close the dashboard corner vents by rotating the wheel next to it. This sends more warm air to the windshield defroster vents. Once the windshield is clear, select the fresh air mode to avoid fogging the windows.

For your safety, make sure you have a clear view through all the windows before driving.

Automatic Climate Control

The automatic climate control system adjusts the fan speed and airflow levels to maintain the interior temperature you select.

In AUTO mode, the vehicle's interior temperature is independently regulated for the driver and passenger. If the driver's side of the vehicle is getting too much sun, the system will adjust to a lower temperature.

1. Press the AUTO button.
2. Set the desired temperature with the temperature control bars. You will see AUTO in the display if the climate mode is selected.

The system automatically selects the proper mix of conditioned and/or heated air that will, as quickly as possible, raise or lower the interior temperature to your preference.

When you set the temperature to its lower or its upper limit, the system runs at full cooling or heating only. It does not regulate the interior temperature.

When you change the fan speed, the fan is taken out of AUTO mode and starts to run at the selected speed.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Climate Control Sensors

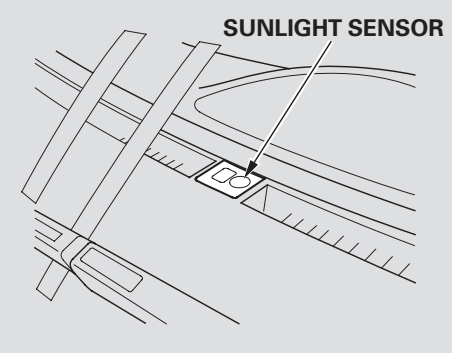
Semi-automatic Operation

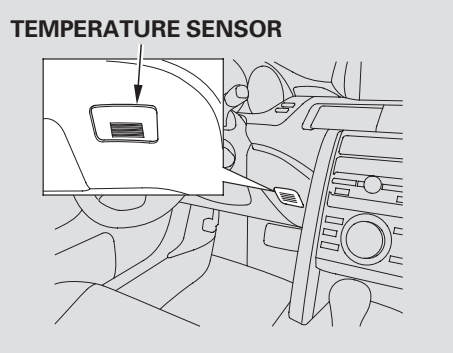
You can manually select various functions of the climate control system when it is in fully automatic mode. All other features remain automatically controlled. Making any manual selection causes the word AUTO in the display to go out.

To Turn Everything Off

Press the OFF button. However, a lack of airflow can cause the windows to fog up. You should keep the fan on at all times so stale air and moisture do not build up in the interior and cause fogging.

Sunlight and Temperature Sensors



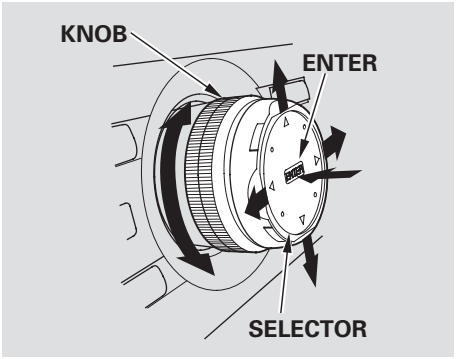


The climate control system has two sensors: a sunlight sensor on top of the dashboard, and a temperature and humidity sensor next to the steering column. Do not cover the sensors or spill any liquid on them.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Interface Dial

Most audio system functions can still be controlled by standard buttons, dials, and knobs, but some functions can only be accessed using the interface dial. The interface dial has two parts, a knob and a selector.



The knob turns left and right. Use it to make selections or adjustments to a list or menu on the screen.

The selector can be pushed left, right, up, down, and in. Use the selector to scroll through lists, to select menus, and to highlight menu items. When you make a selection, push the center of the selector (ENTER) to go to that selection.

Personalization Setting

When you unlock the doors with your remote and turn the audio system on, the driver's ID (Driver 1 or Driver 2) is detected, and the radio preset memory (see page 216), the auto select preset memory (see page 217), and the volume and sound level settings (see page 226) are turned to the respective memorized mode automatically.

Voice Control System

The audio system can also be operated by voice control.

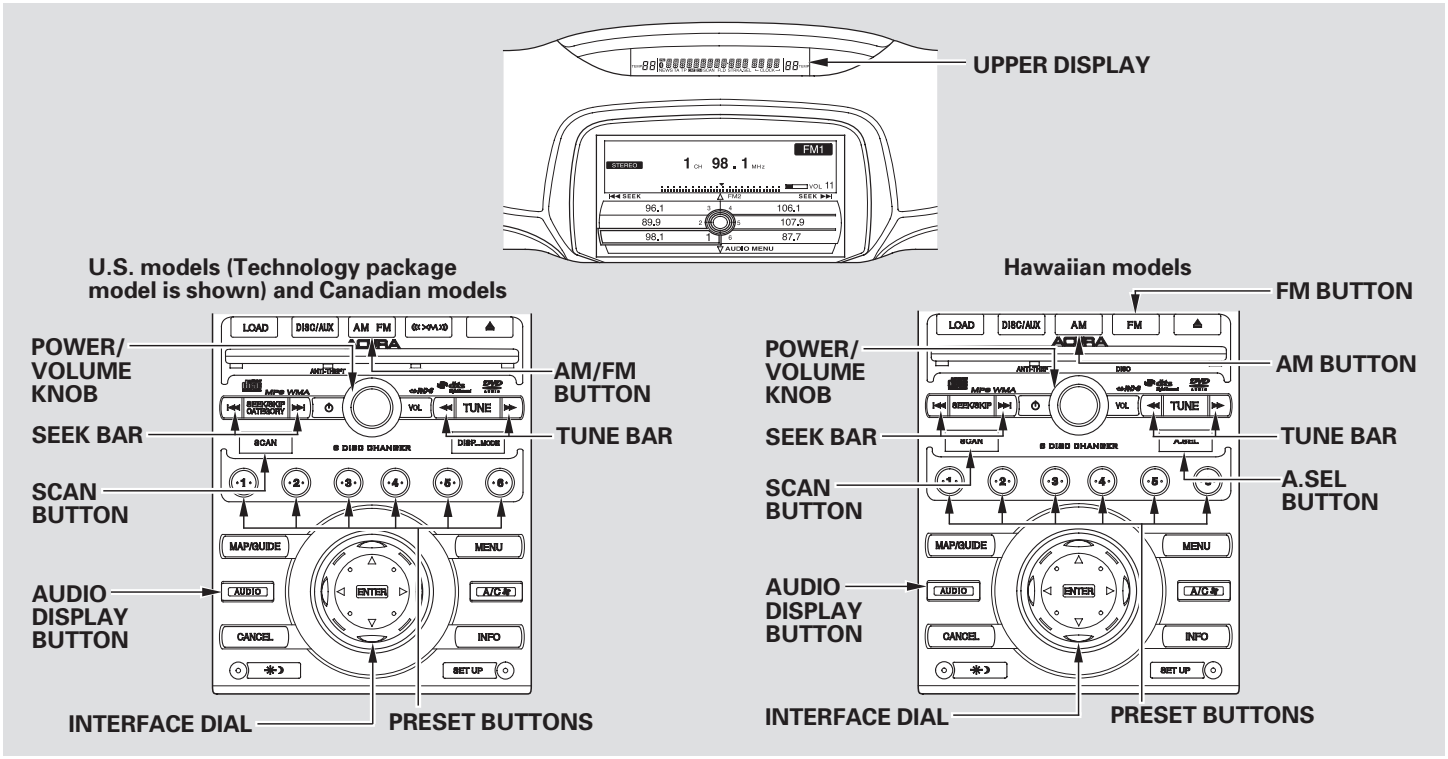
On models with navigation system
See the Navigation System manual for complete details.

On models without navigation system
Refer to Voice Control Basics for complete details (see page 304).

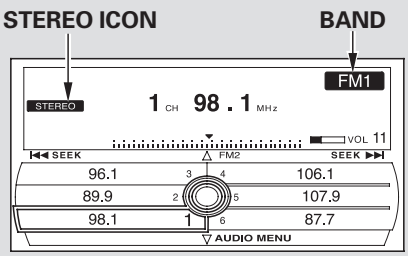
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Audio System

Playing the AM/FM Radio



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

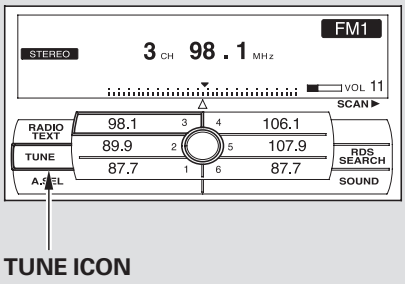


The ignition switch must be in the ACCESSORY (I) or the ON (II) position. Press the AUDIO button to view the audio control display. Turn the system on by pressing the power/volume knob or the AM/FM button (AM or FM button on Hawaiian model). Adjust the volume by turning the power/volume knob.

The band and frequency that the radio was last tuned to are shown on the display. To change bands, press the AM/FM button (AM or FM button Hawaiian models). You can also change bands between FM1 and FM2 by pushing the interface selector up. Each time you push it up, the band will change to FM1 or FM2. On the FM bands, STEREO will be shown on the navigation screen and ST on the upper display, if the station is broadcasting in stereo. Stereo reproduction on AM is not available.

To Select a Station

You can use any of five methods to find radio stations on the selected band: **TUNE, SEEK, SCAN,** the preset buttons, and **AUTO SELECT**.



TUNE – Use the TUNE bar to tune the radio to a desired frequency. Press the right side of the bar to tune to a higher frequency, or the left side to tune to a lower frequency. To tune with the interface dial, push the selector down, and turn the knob to TUNE icon. Then press ENTER on the selector, and turn the knob to the desired frequency. To exit the TUNE mode, press ENTER on the selector, then push the selector up.

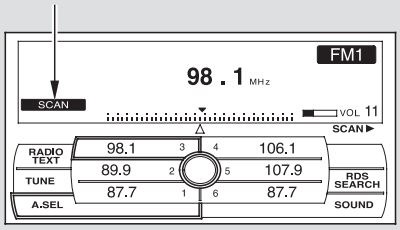
CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Audio System

SKIP (SEEK) – The skip (seek) function searches up and down from the current frequency to find a station with a strong signal. To activate it, press either side (⏮ or ⏭) of the SKIP bar, then release it. You can also activate the skip function (SEEK is displayed on the screen) by pushing the interface selector to the right or left.

SCAN ICON



SCAN – The SCAN function samples all stations with strong signals on the selected band. To activate it, press the SCAN button, then release it.

To scan with the interface dial, push the selector down, and then push it to the right. You will see SCAN flashing on the screen and the upper display.

The system will scan for a station with a strong signal. When it finds a strong signal, it will stop and play that station for about 10 seconds. If you do nothing, the system will then scan for the next strong station and play it for 10 seconds. When it plays a station that you want to listen to, press the scan button again, or push the interface selector to the right again.

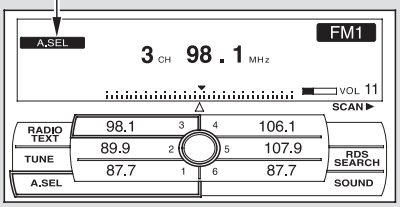
Preset – Each preset button or preset icon can store one frequency on AM and two frequencies on FM.

To store a preset memory location:

1. Select the desired band, AM or FM. FM1 and FM2 let you store two sets of FM frequencies with the preset buttons (on-screen icons).
2. Use the tune, seek, or scan function to tune the radio to a desired station.
3. Press the preset button, and hold it until you hear a beep. You can also store frequencies with the interface dial. Select the preset icon you want to store the frequency on, then press ENTER on the interface selector, and hold it for more than 2 seconds.
4. Repeat steps 1 through 3 to store a total of six stations on AM and twelve stations on FM.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

A.SEL ICON



AUTO SELECT – If you are traveling and can no longer receive your preset stations, you can use the auto select feature to find stations in the local area.

U.S. models (except Hawaiian) and Canadian models
Push the interface selector down to scroll down the screen, highlight A.SEL, then press ENTER on the interface selector. You will see A.SEL on the upper display and A.SEL on the screen, and the system goes into scan mode for several seconds.

Hawaiian models
Press the A.SEL button. You will see A.SEL on the upper display A.SEL on the screen, and the system goes into scan mode for several seconds. The system stores the frequencies of six AM and twelve FM stations in the preset buttons.

You will see "0" displayed if auto select cannot find a strong station for every preset button.
If you do not like the stations auto select has stored, you can store other frequencies on the preset buttons (icons) as previously described.

To turn off auto select, press ENTER on the interface selector (press the A.SEL button) again. This restores the presets you originally set.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

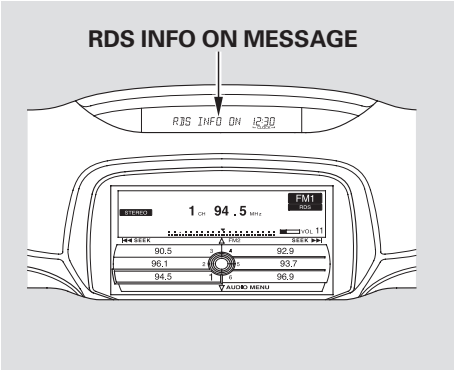
Audio System

Radio Data System (RDS)

On the FM band, you can select a favorite station and display the program service name provided by the radio data system (RDS).

Program Service (PS) Name Display

The program service name display function shows the name of the station you are listening to. You can turn this function on or off.



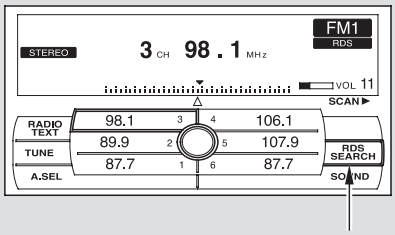
To switch the function between on and off, press and hold the DISP button. With the system on, you will see the “RDS INFO ON” message on the upper display. If the station you are listening to is an RDS station, the displayed frequency switches to the station name.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

If the station you are listening to is not an RDS station, the audio screen and the upper display continue to show the frequency with the PS name display function on.

When you turn off this function by pressing the DISP button, the upper display shows “RDS INFO OFF.”

Radio Data System (RDS) Category



RDS SEARCH ICON

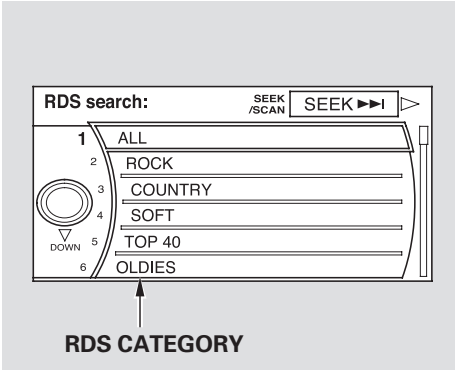
With the FM band selected, you can select the program type provided by the RDS. Press the AUDIO button to display the radio information on the screen. Push down the selector on the interface dial, then turn the knob to select RDS SEARCH icon. Press ENTER to set your selection. The principal RDS categories are shown as follows:

ALL: All RDS category stations
ROCK: Rock, classic rock and soft rock music
COUNTRY: Country music
SOFT: Adult hits and soft music
TOP 40: Top 40 hits
OLDIES: Nostalgia music and oldies
R & B: Rhythm and blues, and soft rhythm and blues
RELIGION: Programs concerned with religion
CLASSIC: Classical music
JAZZ: Jazz
INFO: News, information, sports, talk shows, foreign language, personality, public, college, and weather
TRAFFIC: Traffic information

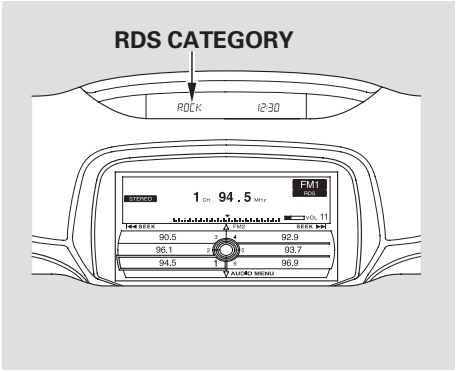
CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Audio System



Turn the selector to select an RDS category. You can use the search or scan function to find radio stations on the selected RDS category by pressing the selector to the right repeatedly. Press ENTER to set your selection. If you do nothing while the RDS category is selected, the selected category is canceled.



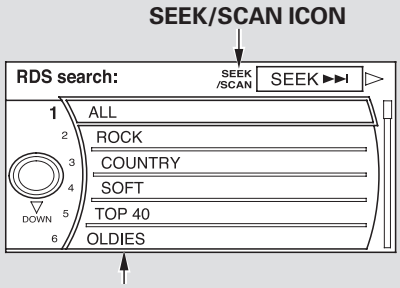
You can also select an RDS category with the TUNE bar. Press either side (◄◄ or ►►) of the TUNE bar to display an RDS category in the display. Select a category by pressing either side of the bar.

RDS Program Search

This function searches up and down a frequency for the strongest signal from the frequencies that carry the selected RDS category information. This can help you to find a station in your favorite category. To activate it, press and release either side (I◄◄ or ►►I) of the SEEK/SKIP bar. You will also see the selected RDS category name blinking in the display while searching it. When the system finds a station, the selected RDS category name will be displayed again for about 5 seconds in the upper display.

If the system does not find a station, “NOTHING” will be blinking for about 5 seconds, then the system goes back to the last selected station.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



SEEK is selected.

To activate RDS program search with the interface dial, push the AUDIO button to display the FM radio information on the screen. Push the selector down, and turn the knob to select RDS SEARCH icon. Press ENTER on the selector. The screen shows you the RDS category list.

Turn the knob to the desired RDS category.

While the RDS category is selected, move the selector knob to the right to select SEEK in the upper right corner of the screen. Then press ENTER to activate the seek function.

RDS Program SCAN

The scan function samples all stations with strong signals on the selected RDS category. To activate it, press and release the SCAN button. You will see SCAN in the display. The system will scan for a station with a strong signal in the selected RDS category. You will also see the selected RDS category name blinking in the display while searching it. When the system finds one, it will stop and play that station for about 10 seconds.

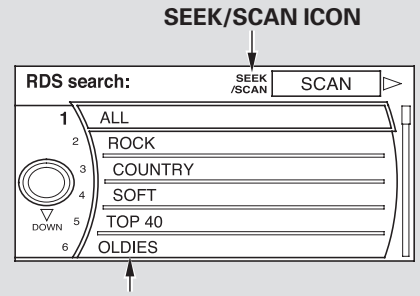
CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Audio System

If you do nothing, the system will scan for the next strong station and play it for 10 seconds. When it plays a station that you want to listen to, press the SCAN button again.

If the system does not find a station, "NOTHING" will be blinking for about 5 seconds, then the system goes back to the last selected station.



To activate RDS program scan with the interface dial, push the AUDIO button to display the FM radio information on the screen. Push the selector down, and turn the knob to select RDS SEARCH icon. Press ENTER on the selector. The screen shows you the RDS category list.

Turn the knob to the desired RDS category.

While the RDS category is selected, move the selector knob to the right to select SCAN in the upper right corner of the screen. Then press ENTER to activate the scan function.

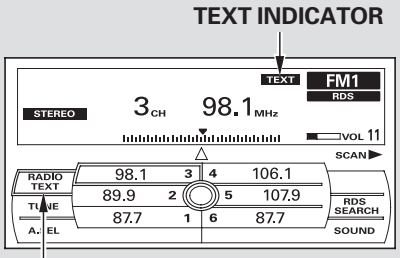
You can use the RDS program search or scan function even if the PS name display function is off. In this case, the display shows a frequency in place of a PS name.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

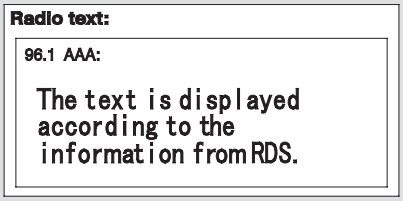
Radio Text Display

This function displays the radio text information of the selected RDS station.

If the selected RDS station has the radio text information, you will see the text indicator on the screen.



To activate radio text display, use the interface dial. Push the selector down, and turn the knob to select RADIO TEXT icon. Press ENTER on the selector to enter the setting.



The display shows up to 64 characters on the selected RDS station.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Audio System

AM/FM Radio Frequencies

The radio can receive the complete AM and FM bands.
Those bands cover these frequencies:

AM band: 530 to 1,710 kHz
FM band: 87.7 to 107.9 MHz

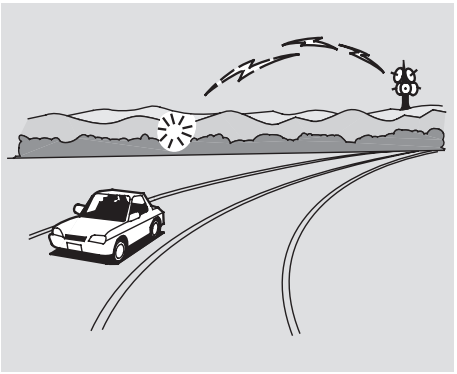
Radio stations on the AM band are assigned frequencies at least 10 kHz apart (530, 540, 550). Stations on the FM band are assigned frequencies at least 0.2 MHz apart (87.9, 88.1, 88.3).

Stations must use these exact frequencies. It is fairly common for stations to round-off the frequency in their advertising, so your radio could display a frequency of 100.9 even though the announcer may identify the station as "FM101."

AM/FM Radio Reception

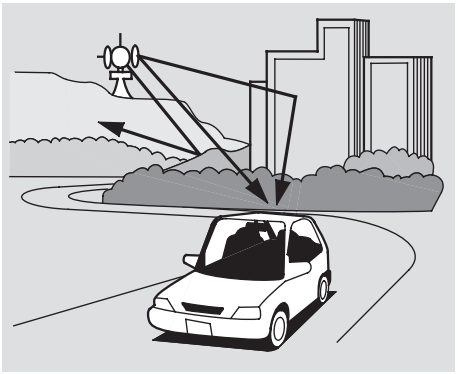
How well the radio receives stations is dependent on many factors, such as the distance from the station's transmitter, nearby large objects, and atmospheric conditions.

A radio station's signal gets weaker as you get farther away from its transmitter. If you are listening to an AM station, you will notice the sound volume becoming weaker, and the station drifting in and out. If you are listening to an FM station, you will see the stereo indicator flickering off and on as the signal weakens. Eventually, the stereo indicator will go off and the sound will fade completely as you get out of range of the station's signal.



Driving very near the transmitter of a station that is broadcasting on a frequency close to the frequency of the station you are listening to can also affect your radio's reception. You may temporarily hear both stations, or hear only the station you are close to.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



Radio signals, especially on the FM band, are deflected by large objects such as buildings and hills. Your radio then receives both the direct signal from the station's transmitter, and the deflected signal. This causes the sound to distort or flutter. This is a main cause of poor radio reception in city driving.

Radio reception can be affected by atmospheric conditions such as thunderstorms, high humidity, and even sunspots. You may be able to receive a distant radio station one day and not receive it the next day because of a change in conditions.

Electrical interference from passing vehicles and stationary sources can cause temporary reception problems.

As required by the FCC:
Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

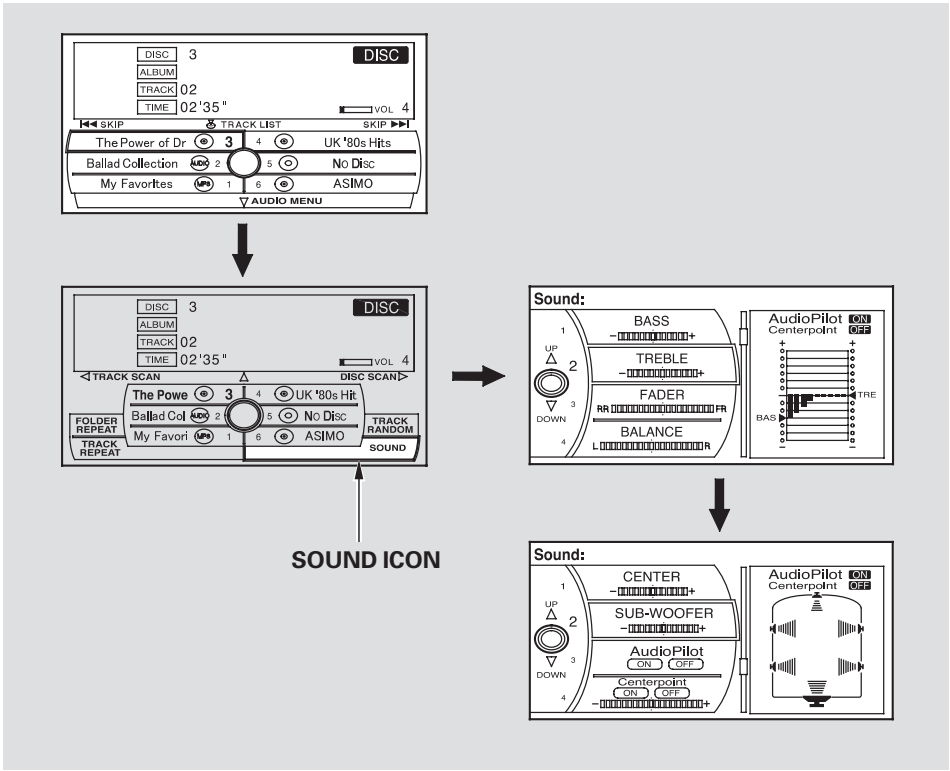
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Audio System

Adjusting the Sound

BASS, TREBLE, BALANCE, and FADER are each adjustable. You can also adjust the strength of the sound coming from the center and subwoofer speakers. In addition, you can set the AudioPilot® and Centerpoint® features (when playing a CD-DA) to on or off.
To adjust them, press the AUDIO button, push the interface selector down, and turn the interface knob to SOUND. Then press ENTER on the selector.

Select the mode you want to adjust by pushing the interface selector up or down, or by turning the interface knob.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

BASS/TREBLE – To adjust bass and treble, select BASS or TREBLE, and press ENTER on the interface selector. The current setting is shown on the display. Turn the interface knob to the desired level, and enter your selection by pressing ENTER on the interface selector.

FADER/BALANCE – These modes adjust the strength of the sound coming from each speaker. Fader adjusts the front-to-back strength, while balance adjusts the side-to-side strength. To adjust fader and balance, select FADER or BALANCE, then press ENTER on the interface selector. The current setting is shown on the screen. Turn the interface knob to the desired level, and enter your selection by pressing ENTER on the interface selector. To equalize the fader or balance, turn the interface knob until the marks on the sound grid come to the center of the adjustment bar.

CENTER/SUBWOOFER – To adjust the strength of the sound from the center or subwoofer speaker, select it and press ENTER on the interface selector. Turn the interface knob to the desired level, and enter your selection by pressing ENTER on the interface selector.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Audio System

AudioPilot® — Bose AudioPilot® digital processing monitors sound within the cabin, and helps compensate for unwanted ambient noise with no perceived change in audio volume.

To set this feature on or off, select AudioPilot, and press ENTER on the interface selector. Turn the interface knob to ON or OFF, and press ENTER on the interface selector. The ON or OFF indicator is shown on the screen.

Centerpoint® — Bose Centerpoint® signal processing processes stereo and matrix surround recordings to five independent channels, delivering a multi-channel surround sound experience, even from conventional stereo discs.

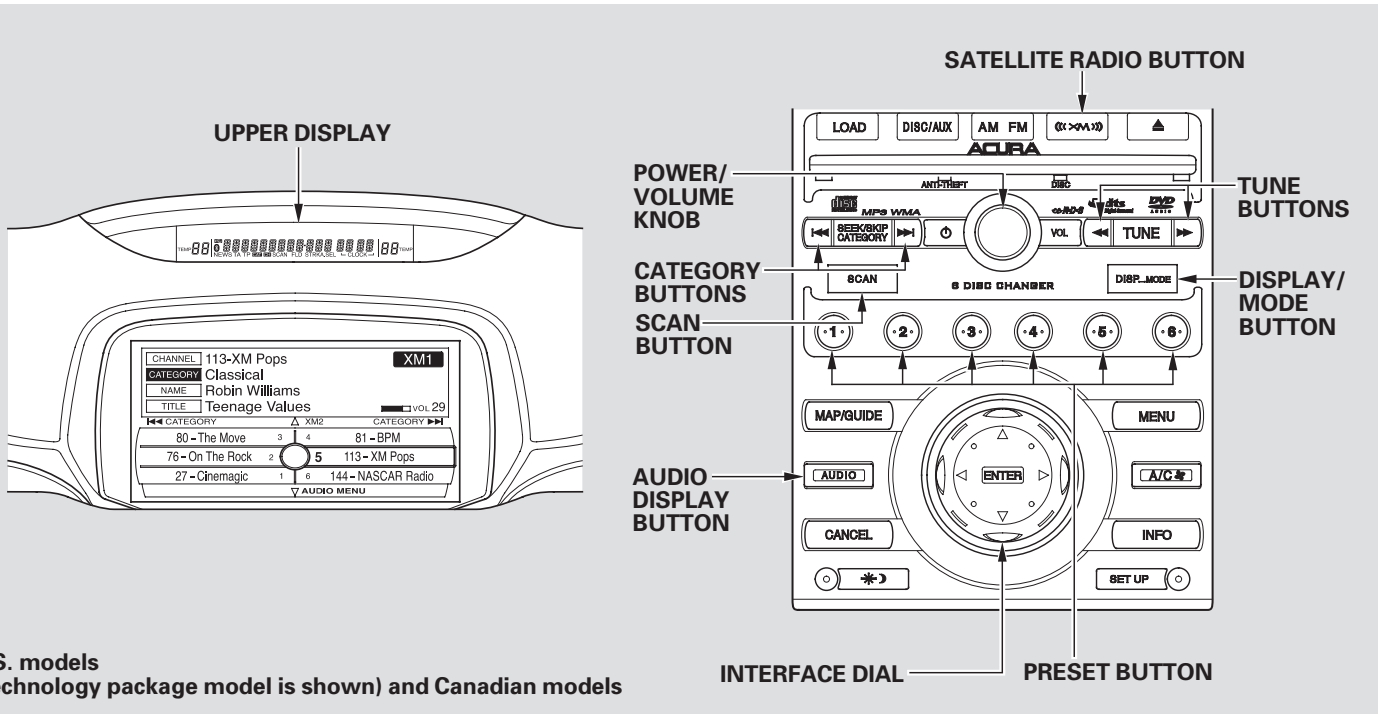
To set this feature on or off, select Centerpoint, and press ENTER on the interface selector. Turn the interface knob to ON or OFF, and press ENTER on the interface selector. The ON or OFF indicator is shown on the display.

NOTE: Centerpoint® is only available when listening to a CD (CD-DA).

AudioPilot® and Centerpoint® are registered trade marks of the Bose corporation.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Playing the XM® Radio



U.S. models
(Technology package model is shown) and Canadian models

CONTINUED

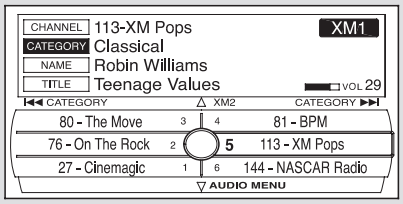
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Audio System

Your vehicle is capable of receiving XM® Radio anywhere in the United States, and Canada, except Hawaii and Alaska. XM is a registered trademark of Sirius XM Radio®, Inc. and, XM CANADA® is a registered business name of Canadian Satellite Radio Inc.

XM Radio receives signals from two satellites to produce clear, high-quality digital reception. It offers many channels in several categories. Along with a large selection of different types of music, XM Radio also allows you to view channel and category selections in the audio display.

Operating the XM Radio



To listen to XM Radio, turn the ignition switch to the ACCESSORY (I) or ON (II) position. Push the power/volume knob to turn on the audio system, and press the «XM» button. The last channel you listened to will show in the display. Adjust the volume by turning the power/volume knob.

Push the AUDIO button to display XM information on the screen. You can operate the XM Radio system with the interface dial.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

MODE – To switch between the category mode and channel mode, press and hold the DISP/MODE button until the mode changes. The CATEGORY or CHANNEL mode is displayed on the screen. To switch the mode with the interface dial, scroll down, select MODE, and press ENTER on the selector.

In the category mode, such as Jazz, Rock, Classical, etc., you can navigate through all of the channels within that category. In the channel mode, you can select all of the available channels.

Each time you press and release the DISP/MODE button, the audio display changes in the following sequence: channel name, channel number, category, artist name, and music title.

On the screen, you will see the selected CHANNEL (number), CATEGORY, NAME (artist name), and TITLE (music title).

TUNE – Press either side of the TUNE bar to change channel selections. Press the ►► side of the bar for higher numbered channels and the ◄◄ side for lower numbered channels. You can also change channels with the interface selector, push down the interface selector to select AUDIO MENU, then turn the interface knob to choose TUNE and press ENTER on the selector. Turn the interface knob to the appropriate direction. In the category mode, you can only select channels within that category.

SCAN – The scan function gives you a sampling of all channels while in the channel mode. In the category mode, only the channels within that category are scanned. To activate SCAN, press the SCAN button. To scan with the interface dial, scroll down, and push interface selector to the right. You will see SCAN on the screen.

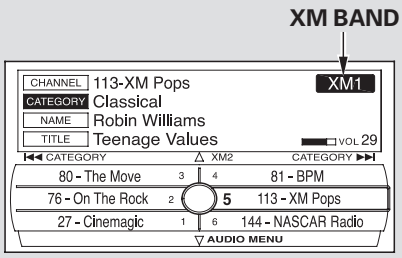
The system plays each channel in numerical order for a few seconds, then selects the next channel. When you hear a channel you want to continue listening to, press the SCAN button or push the interface selector to the right again.

CATEGORY (|◄◄ or ►►|) – Press either side of the bar to select another category. You can also change a category by pushing the interface selector left or right.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Audio System



Preset — You can store up to 12 preset channels using the six preset buttons. Each button stores one channel from the XM1 band and one channel from the XM2 band.

To store a channel:

1. Press the «XM» button or scroll up by pushing the interface selector up. Either XM1 or XM2 will be shown on the display.

2. Use the TUNE or SCAN function to tune to a desired channel.

In category mode, only channels within that category can be selected. In channel mode, all channels can be selected.

3. Pick the preset button you want for that channel. Press and hold the button until you hear a beep.

4. Repeat steps 2 and 3 to store the first six channels.

5. Press the «XM» button or scroll up again. The other XM band will be shown. Store the next six channels using steps 2 and 3.

Once a channel is stored, press and release the proper preset button to tune to it.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Note Function

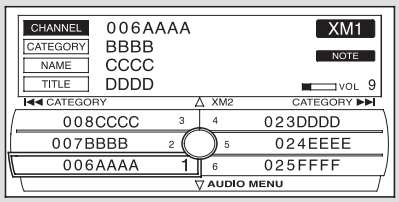
If equipped

This function stores the sound content played on the selected satellite radio station with the channel, category, name and title information.

To activate this function, press and hold the «XM» button for about 2 seconds while a song or passage which you want to store is playing.

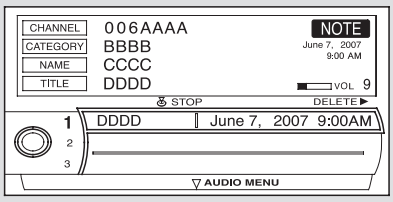
The function records for about 10 seconds, enough for you to identify the selection when you play it back.

Once you store the recorded sound file, you can replay it and confirm the information. The system can store up to 30 sound files. If you continue to store more files, the oldest one will be deleted each time you add new file.



To replay and see the stored file, press the AUDIO button to select the audio display on the navigation screen.

Push down the selector knob to display the audio menu. Turn the selector knob to select NOTE, then press ENTER.



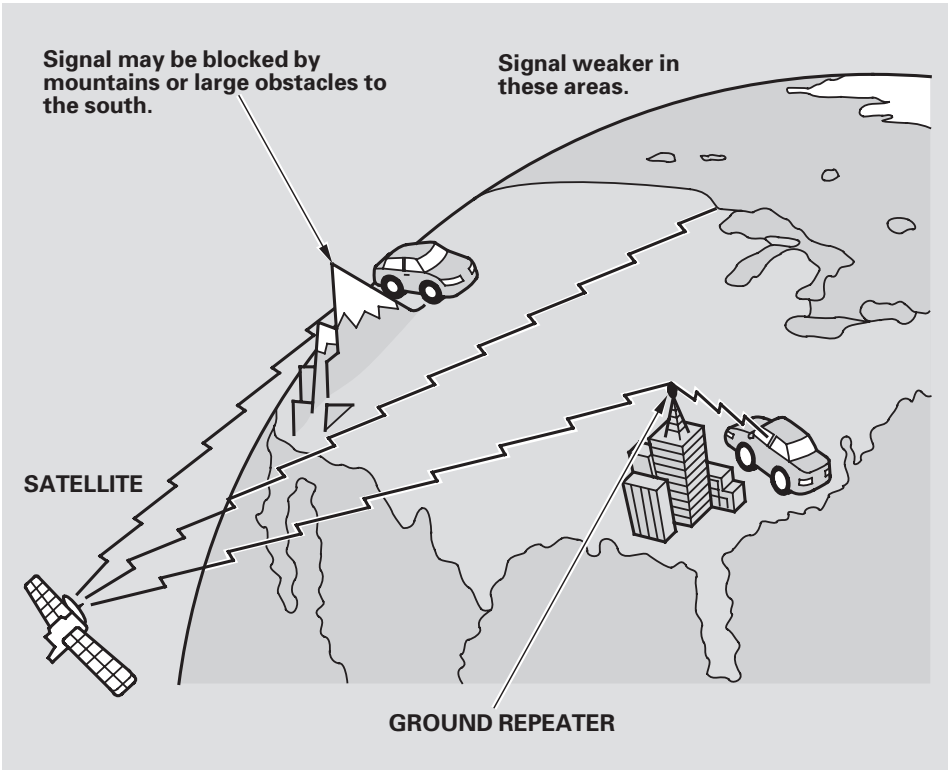
Turn the selector knob to select a sound file, then press ENTER. The display shows the category, name and title information of the selected file.

To delete a file, select it by turning the selector knob, then push it to the right. Select “Delete All” or “Delete Selected Item,” then press ENTER.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Audio System


Signal may be blocked by mountains or large obstacles to the south.
Signal weaker in these areas.
SATELLITE
GROUND REPEATER

The XM satellites are in orbit over the equator; therefore, objects south of the vehicle may cause satellite reception interruptions. To help compensate for this, ground-based repeaters are placed in major metropolitan areas.
Satellite signals are more likely to be blocked by tall buildings and mountains the farther north you travel from the equator.

Operation in Alaska
Because XM is unavailable in Alaska, the XM hardware equipped with your vehicle cannot be operated.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Depending on where you drive, you may experience reception problems. Interference can be caused by any of these conditions:

- Driving on the north side of an east/west mountain road.
- Driving on the north side of a large commercial truck on an east/west road.
- Driving in tunnels.
- Driving on a road beside a vertical wall, steep cliff, or hill to the south of you.
- Driving on the lower level of a multi-tiered road.
- Driving on a single lane road alongside dense trees taller than 50 ft. (15 m) to the south of you.

There may be other geographic situations that could affect satellite radio reception.

As required by the FCC:
Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

Receiving XM Radio Service
If your XM Radio service has expired or you purchased your vehicle from a previous owner, you can listen to a sampling of the broadcasts available on XM Radio. With the ignition switch in the ACCESSORY (I) or the ON (II) position, push the power/volume knob to turn on the audio system, and press the «XM» button. A variety of music types and styles will play.

If you decide to purchase XM radio service, contact XM Radio at *www.xmradio.com*, or at 1-800-852-9696. In Canada, contact XM CANADA® at *www.xmradio.ca*, or at 1-877-209-0079. You will need to give them your radio I.D. number and your credit card number. To get your radio I.D. number, press the ►► side of the TUNE bar until "0" appears in the display. Your I.D. will appear in the display.

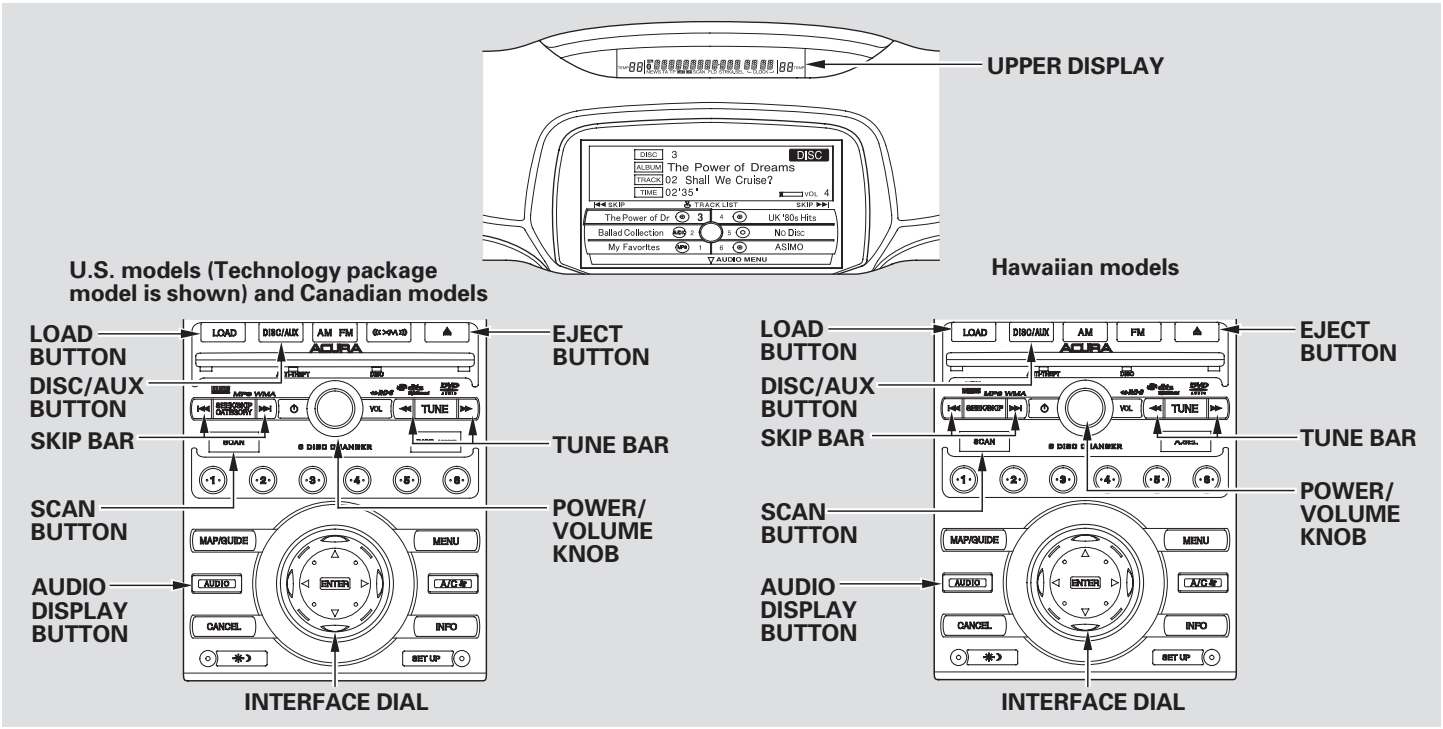
After you've registered with XM Radio, keep your audio system in the XM Radio mode while you wait for activation. This should take about 30 minutes.

While waiting for activation, make sure your vehicle remains in an open area with good reception. Once your audio system is activated, "category" or "CH" will appear in the display, and you'll be able to listen to XM radio broadcasts. XM Radio will continue to send an activation signal to your vehicle for at least 12 hours from the activation request. If the service has not been activated after 36 hours, contact XM Radio.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Audio System

Operating the Disc Changer



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Audio System

Your vehicle's audio system has an in-dash disc changer with the same controls used for the radio. To operate the disc changer, the ignition switch must be in the ACCESSORY (I) or the ON (II) position.

The disc changer can play these disc formats:
- CD (CD-DA)
- CD-R/RW
- DVD-A
- DTS™

The disc packages or jackets should have one of these marks.

The changer can also play MP3 or WMA format (see page 243).

DVD-A discs not meeting DVD verification standards may not be playable.

The changer cannot play DVD-V or DVD-R/RW formats.

Some CD-DA and CD-ROM mixed discs are not playable.

"DTS" and "DTS Digital Surround" are registered trademarks of Digital Theater Systems, Inc.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Audio System

Manufactured under license under U.S. Patent #'s: 5,451,942; 5,956,674; 5,974,380; 5,978,762; 6,487,535 & other U.S. and worldwide patents issued & pending. DTS and DTS Digital Surround are registered trademarks and the DTS logos and Symbol are trademarks of DTS, Inc. © 1996-2007 DTS, Inc. All Rights Reserved.

You cannot load and play 3-inch (8-cm) discs in this system.

NOTICE

Do not use discs with adhesive labels. The label can curl up and cause the disc to jam in the unit.

Loading Discs in the Changer

To load multiple discs in one operation:

1. Press and hold the LOAD button on the changer unit until you hear a beep. You will see "BUSY" on the upper display, and the disc load indicator turns red and starts blinking.

2. Insert the disc into the disc slot when the disc load indicator turns green and "LOAD" appears in the upper display at the same time. Insert it only halfway; the drive will pull it in the rest of the way. You will see "BUSY" on the upper display, and the disc load indicator turns red again and blinks as the disc is loaded.

3. When the disc load indicator turns green and "LOAD" appears on the upper display again, insert the next disc in the slot. Do not try to insert a disc until "LOAD" appears. You could damage the audio unit.

4. Repeat steps 1 through 3 until all six positions are loaded. If you are not loading all six positions, press the LOAD button again after the last disc has loaded.

If you stop loading discs before all six positions are filled, the system will wait for 15 seconds, stop the load operation, and begin playing the last disc loaded.

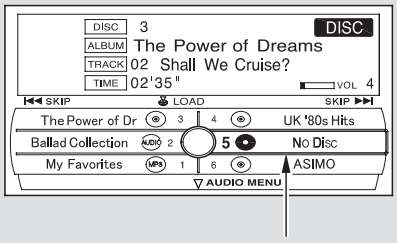
To load a single disc:

1. Press and release the LOAD button on the changer unit. You will see "BUSY" on the upper display, and the disc load indicator turns red and starts blinking.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

2. Insert a disc into the disc slot when the disc load indicator turns green, and “LOAD” appears on the upper display at the same time. Insert the disc only about halfway; the drive will pull it in the rest of the way. You will see the disc number blinking on the upper display, and the disc load indicator turns red again and blinks as the disc is loaded.

   Do not try to insert a disc until “LOAD” appears. You could damage the audio unit.



EMPTY POSITION

You can load a disc into an empty position while a disc is playing. Press the AUDIO button to view the audio control display. Select the empty position (“No Disc” is shown on the audio control display) by rotating the interface dial. Then press ENTER on the selector to enter your selection. The current disc stops playing and starts the loading sequence. The disc just loaded will play.

You can also select the empty position by pressing the appropriate preset button.

You can load a disc(s) in any mode (AM, FM, XM, or AUX) if you do not select an empty position.

You cannot select the empty position if there is no disc in the changer.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Audio System

To Play a Disc

Select the changer by pressing the DISC/AUX button. The system will begin playing the last selected disc in the disc changer. You will see the current disc position highlighted.

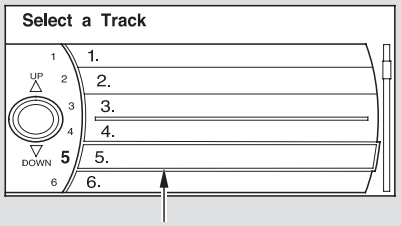
To select a different disc, press the corresponding number on the preset buttons, or turn the interface knob to highlight the desired disc, then press ENTER on the interface selector.

When playing a CD (CD-DA) with CD-TEXT, the audio control display shows the disc number, album name, track number, and elapsed time. When playing a CD without this information, the number of the disc and track playing and the elapsed time are shown on the audio control display.

To Change Tracks

Each time you press and release the ►►| side of the skip bar or push the interface selector to the right, the player skips forward to the beginning of the next track. Press and release the |◄◄ side of the skip bar or push the interface selector to the left to skip backward to the beginning of the current track. Press the |◄◄ side or push the interface selector to the left again to skip to the previous track. To move rapidly within a track, press and hold either side of the skip bar.

To Choose a Track



You can also choose a track directly from a track list. Press ENTER on the interface selector, and the track list screen will be shown. If there are no track names, track numbers are displayed. You will see the current track is highlighted. Turn the interface knob to select the desired track, then press ENTER on the interface selector.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

To exit the track list display, press the AUDIO button, or push the interface selector to the left.

Track Scan
When you press the SCAN button or scroll down and push the interface selector to the left, the next track of the current track plays for about 10 seconds. You will see SCAN next to TRACK on the screen and SCAN on the upper display. To hear the rest of the track, press the SCAN button or push the interface selector to the left again within 10 seconds.

If you don't, the system advances to the next track, plays about 10 seconds of it, and continues through the rest of the tracks the same way.

Disc Scan
When you press and hold the SCAN button until you hear a beep or scroll down and push the interface selector to the right, the first track of the current disc plays for about 10 seconds. You will see SCAN next to DISC on the screen and SCAN on the upper display. To hear the rest of the disc, press the SCAN button or push the interface selector to the right again within 10 seconds.

If you don't, the system advances to the next disc, plays about 10 seconds of it, and continues through the rest of the discs the same way. When the system reaches the last disc, DISC SCAN is canceled, and the disc plays normally.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Audio System

Track Repeat
To replay the current track continuously, use the interface selector to scroll down, select TRACK REPEAT, and press ENTER on the interface selector. As a reminder, you will see REPEAT next to TRACK on the screen. To turn this feature off, highlight TRACK REPEAT (if not already highlighted), and press ENTER on the interface selector again.

Disc Repeat
To replay the current disc continuously, use the interface selector to scroll down, select DISC REPEAT, and press ENTER on the interface selector. As a reminder, you will see REPEAT next to DISC on the screen. To turn this feature off, highlight DISC REPEAT (if not already highlighted), and press ENTER on the interface selector again.

Random Play
To play the tracks of the current disc in random order, use the interface selector to scroll down, select TRACK RANDOM, and press ENTER on the interface selector. As a reminder, you will see RANDOM next to TRACK on the screen. To turn this feature off, highlight TRACK RANDOM (if not already highlighted), and press ENTER on the interface selector again.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

To Pause a Disc
To pause a disc, press the corresponding number of the current disc on the preset buttons. To play the disc again, press the preset button again.

To Stop Playing a Disc
If you turn the system off while a disc is playing, either with the power/volume knob or by turning off the ignition switch, the disc will stay in the drive. When you turn the system back on, the disc will begin playing where it left off.

To take the system out of disc mode, press the AM/FM* button, the DISC/AUX button, or the XM button (If equipped). The system will switch to the function associated with the button you pressed. If you pressed the DISC/AUX button, any auxiliary input device attached to the system will be selected. To return to disc mode, press the DISC/AUX button again and play will continue at the same point it left off.

*: AM or FM button on Hawaiian models.

Playing a DVD-A Disc
You can play a DVD-A disc in the disc changer. The disc controls are same as previously described.

Playing an MP3/WMA Disc
The changer plays MP3/WMA discs in recorded order. Maximum playable file layers are 8, and total playable tracks are 255. If your disc has a complex structure, the changer takes some time to read the disc before beginning play.

The specifications for compatible MP3 files are:
- Sampling frequency:
  32/44.1/48 kHz (MPEG1)
  24/22.05/16 kHz (MPEG2)
- Bitrate:
  32/40/48/56/64/80/96/112/128/160/192/224/256/320 kbps (MPEG1)
  8/16/24/32/40/48/56/64/80/96/112/128/160 kbps (MPEG2)
  Compatible with variable bitrate and multi-session

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Audio System

The specifications for compatible WMA files are:
- Sampling frequency: 32/44.1/48 kHz
- Bitrate: 48/64/80/96/128/160/192 kbps Compatible with variable bitrate and multi-session

To play an MP3/WMA disc, use the disc controls previously described, along with the following information.

Name Display Function
All models except Hawaiian
Each time you press the DISP/MODE button while playing a CD (CD-DA), the upper display changes from album name, to track name, to artist name, and then to normal display. If the disc was not recorded with CD-TEXT, "NO INFO" will be shown on the upper display.

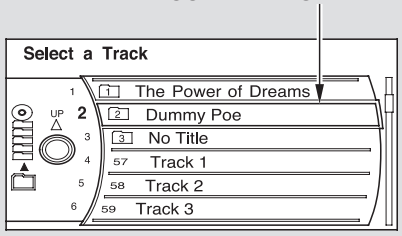
When playing a CD compressed in MP3/WMA format, the display changes from folder name, to file name, to track tag, to artist tag, to album tag, and then to normal display each time you press the DISP/MODE button. If the disc was not recorded with this information, "NO INFO" will be shown on the upper display.

If the title is too long, it will not show all at once. Press and hold the DISP/MODE button, and the rest of the title will show on the upper display.

You will also see the album and track name (CD-TEXT), or the folder and file name (MP3/WMA) under these conditions:

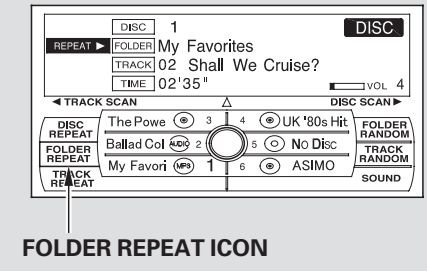
- When you insert a disc, and the system begins to play.
- Each time a new track, file, or folder plays.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



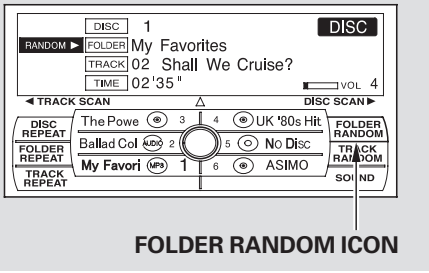
To enter the FOLDER LIST, press ENTER on the selector, select a folder by turning the interface knob, then press ENTER on the selector. If you want to move to the parent folder, push the selector up. If there are no folder names, “No Title” is displayed. You will see the current folder highlighted.

Folder Repeat (MP3/WMA Mode)



This feature, when activated, replays all files in the selected folder. To activate folder repeat mode, select FOLDER REPEAT by interface knob, and press ENTER on the interface selector. You will see REPEAT next to FOLDER on the screen. To turn this feature off, highlight FOLDER REPEAT (if not already highlighted), and press ENTER on the interface selector again.

Folder Random (MP3/WMA Mode)



This feature, when activated, plays all files in the current folder in random order. To activate folder random play, select FOLDER RANDOM by interface knob, and press ENTER on the interface selector. You will see RANDOM next to FOLDER on the screen. To turn this feature off, highlight FOLDER RANDOM (if not already highlighted), and press ENTER on the interface selector again.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Audio System

Removing Discs from the Changer

To remove the disc that is currently playing, press and release the eject (⏏) button. You will see "EJECT" on the upper display. When you remove the disc from the slot, the system begins the load sequence so you can load another disc in that position. If you do not load another disc within 15 seconds, the system selects the previous mode [AM, FM1, FM2, or XM Radio (all models except Hawaiian models)].

If you do not remove the disc from the slot, the system will reload the disc after 10 seconds and put the disc changer in pause mode. To begin playing the disc, press the DISC/AUX button.

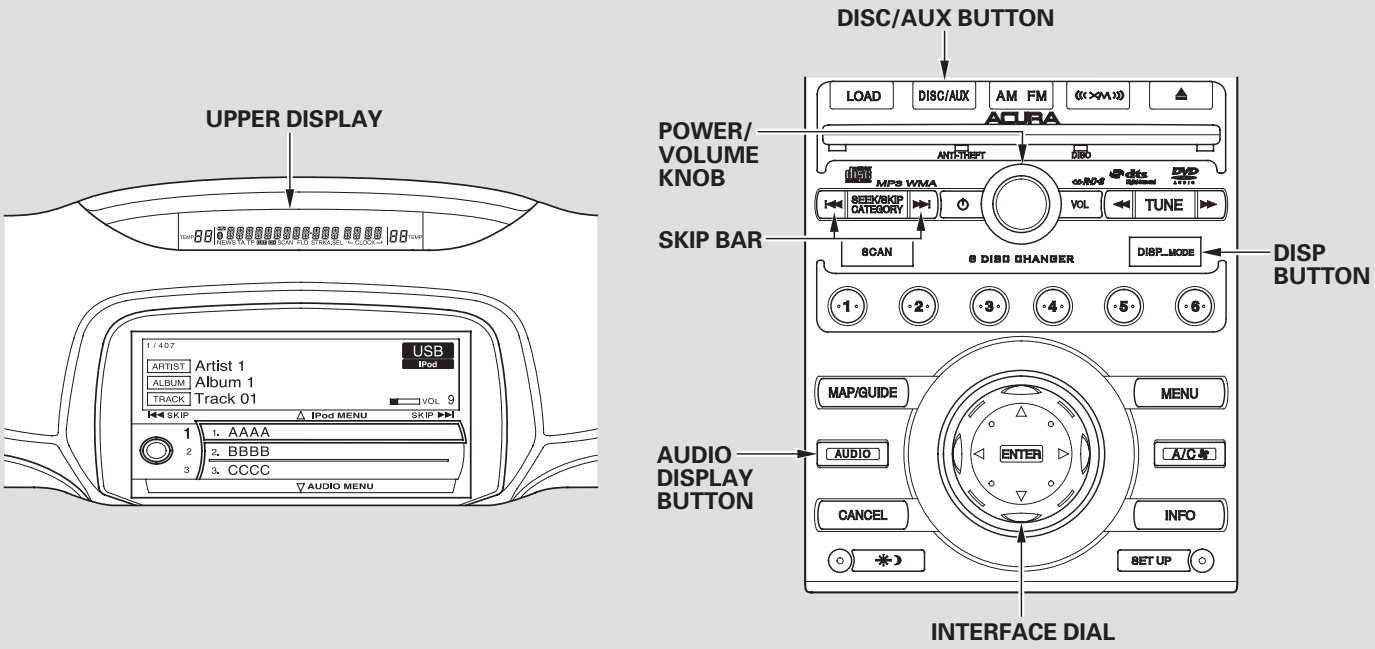
To remove a different disc from the changer, first select it by pressing the corresponding number on the preset button or turning the interface knob, and pressing ENTER on the interface selector. When that disc begins playing, press the eject button.

When you press the eject button while listening to the radio, or with the audio system turned off, the disc that was last selected is ejected. After that disc is ejected, pressing the eject button again will eject the next disc in numerical order. By doing this six times, you can remove all the discs from the changer.

You can also eject discs when the ignition switch is off:
To eject one disc, press and release the eject button.
To eject all discs, press and hold the eject button.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Playing an iPod®



U.S. Technology package model and Canadian models are shown

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Audio System

To Play an iPod®
This audio system can operate the audio files on the iPod® with the same controls used for the in-dash disc changer. To play an iPod, connect it to the USB adapter cable in the console compartment by using your dock connector, then press the DISC/AUX button. The ignition switch must be in the ACCESSORY (I) or ON (II) position. The iPod will also be recharged with the ignition switch in these positions.

The system will only play songs stored on the iPod with iTunes.

iPod and iTunes are registered trademarks owned by Apple Inc.

Voice Control System
You can select the AUX mode by using the navigation system voice control buttons, but cannot operate the play mode functions.

iPods compatible with your audio system using the USB adapter cable are:

Model	Software
iPod Classic 5th Gen. (2005 or later)	Ver. 1.2 or more
iPod Classic (2007 or later)	Ver. 1.0 or more
iPod nano	Ver. 1.2 or more
iPod nano 2nd generation	Ver. 1.1.2 or more
iPod nano 3rd generation	Ver. 1.0 or more
iPod touch	Ver. 1.1.1 or more
iPhone	Ver. 1.1.1 or more

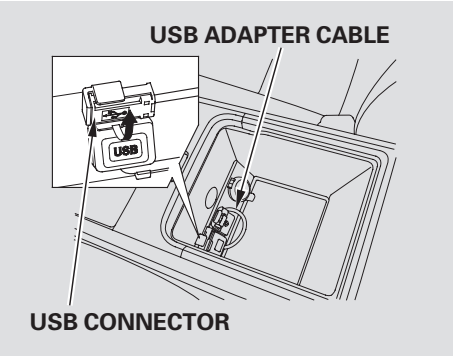
Use only compatible iPods with the latest software. iPods that are not compatible will not work in this audio unit.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

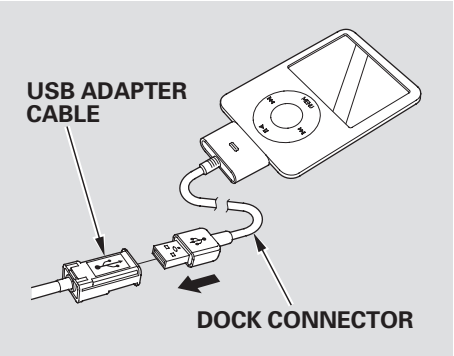
NOTE:

- Do not connect your iPod using a hub.
- Do not keep the iPod in the vehicle. Direct sunlight and high heat will damage it.
- Do not use an extension cable between the USB adapter cable equipped with your vehicle and your dock connector.
- We recommend backing up your data before playing it.

Connecting an iPod



1. Unclip the USB connector by pivoting it, and pull out the USB adapter cable in the console compartment.



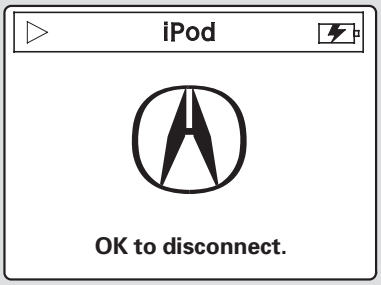
2. Connect your dock connector to the iPod correctly and securely.
3. Install the dock connector to the USB adapter cable securely.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Audio System

Sample Display



When the iPod is connected and the iPod mode is selected on the audio display, the USB and iPod indicators are shown in the display. After loading, you will see the Acura logo* on the iPod. That means you can only operate your iPod using the vehicle's audio unit.

*: It may take a few minutes for the Acura logo to display on the iPod. If the display does not change, this function is not supported on your iPod model or firmware.

If the iPod indicator does not appear in the audio display, check the connections, and try to reconnect the iPod a few times.

If the audio system still does not recognize the iPod, the iPod may need to be reset. Follow the instructions that came with your iPod, or you can find reset instructions online at *www.apple.com/ipod.*

The current file number and total of the selected playable files are displayed in the upper display. Pressing the AUDIO button displays the artist, album and track (file) names on the navigation screen.

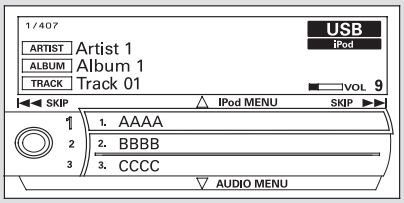
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

To Change or Select Files

Use the SKIP bar while an iPod is playing to select passages and change files.

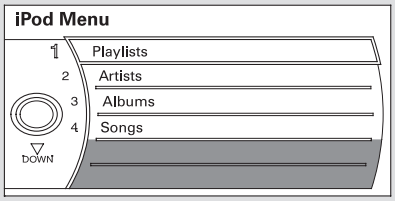
SKIP – Each time you press and release the ►►| side of the SKIP bar, the system skips forward to the beginning of the next file. Press and release the |◄◄ side of the bar, to skip backward to the beginning of the current file. Press it again to skip to the beginning of the previous file.

To move rapidly forward or backward within a track, press and hold the |◄◄ / ◄◄ or ►► / ►►| button.



You can also change files with the interface dial. Press the AUDIO button to show the audio control display on the navigation screen. Push the selector to the right side to skip forward and to the left side to skip backward.

To Select a File from iPod Menu

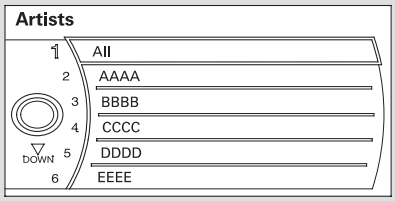


You can also select a file from any of the iPod menus: playlists, artists, albums and songs, by using the interface dial. Press the AUDIO button to display the audio control display on the navigation screen. Push up the interface selector to display the iPod menu. Turn the knob on the interface dial to select a desired list.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Audio System

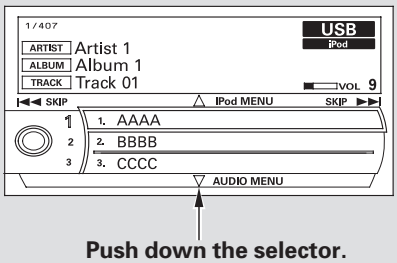


Push ENTER on the selector to display the items on that list, then turn the knob on the interface dial to select a desired list. Pushing the selector up or down moves a selection to the top or bottom of the screen items. Press ENTER to set your selection.

If you select "ALL," all available files on the selected list are played.

Press the AUDIO button to go back to the normal audio playing display. Pressing the CANCEL button goes back to the previous screen, and pressing the MAP button cancels the audio control display on the screen.

To Select Repeat or Random Mode:

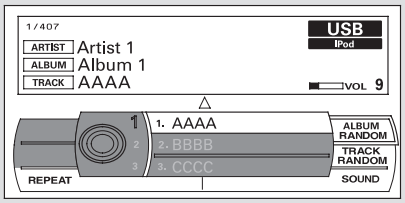


Push down the selector.

You can select any type of repeat and random mode on the audio menu. Press the AUDIO button to display the audio control screen, then push down the selector to display the audio menu. Turn the knob on the interface dial to select an audio mode: repeat, album random, and track random. Press ENTER to set your selection.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

To cancel the selected mode, press ENTER again while the highlighted mode is selected on the audio control display.



REPEAT – This feature continuously plays a file. To turn it off, press ENTER again.

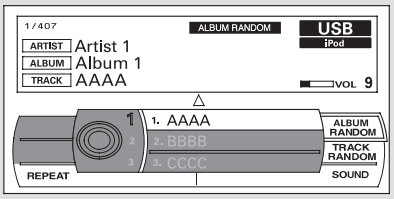
Pressing either side of the SKIP bar changes the file while keeping the repeat feature.

TRACK RANDOM – This feature plays all available files from the selected items in the iPod menu list (playlists, artists, albums or songs) in random order. You will see TRACK RANDOM on the screen. To turn it off, have this mode highlighted and press ENTER again.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Audio System



ALBUM RANDOM — This feature plays all available albums from the selected items in the iPod menu list (playlists, artists, albums or songs) in random order. The files in each album are played in the recorded order. You will see ALBUM RANDOM on the screen.

To turn it off, have this mode highlighted and press ENTER again.

You can also select another list from the iPod menu while keeping the random function.

NOTE:
Available operating functions vary on models or versions. Some functions may not be available on the vehicle's audio system.

To Stop Playing Your iPod

All models except Hawaiian
To play the radio, press the AM/FM or XM button. Press the DISC/AUX button to switch to the disc mode (if a disc is loaded). Press the DISC/AUX button to switch the audio mode between the *Bluetooth*® audio and iPod.

Hawaiian models
To play the radio, press the AM or FM button. Press the DISC/AUX button to switch to the disc mode (if a disc is loaded). Press the DISC/AUX button to switch the audio mode between the *Bluetooth*® audio and iPod.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Disconnecting an iPod

You can disconnect the iPod at any time when you see "OK to disconnect" message* in the iPod display. Always make sure you see "OK to disconnect" message in the iPod display before you disconnect it. Make sure to follow the iPod's instructions on how to disconnect the dock connector from the USB adapter cable.

*: The displayed message may vary on models or versions. On some models, there is no message to disconnect.

When you disconnect the iPod while it is playing, the upper display and the audio screen (if selected) show NO DATA.

If you reconnect the same iPod, the system may begin playing where it left off, depending on what mode the iPod is in when it is reconnected.

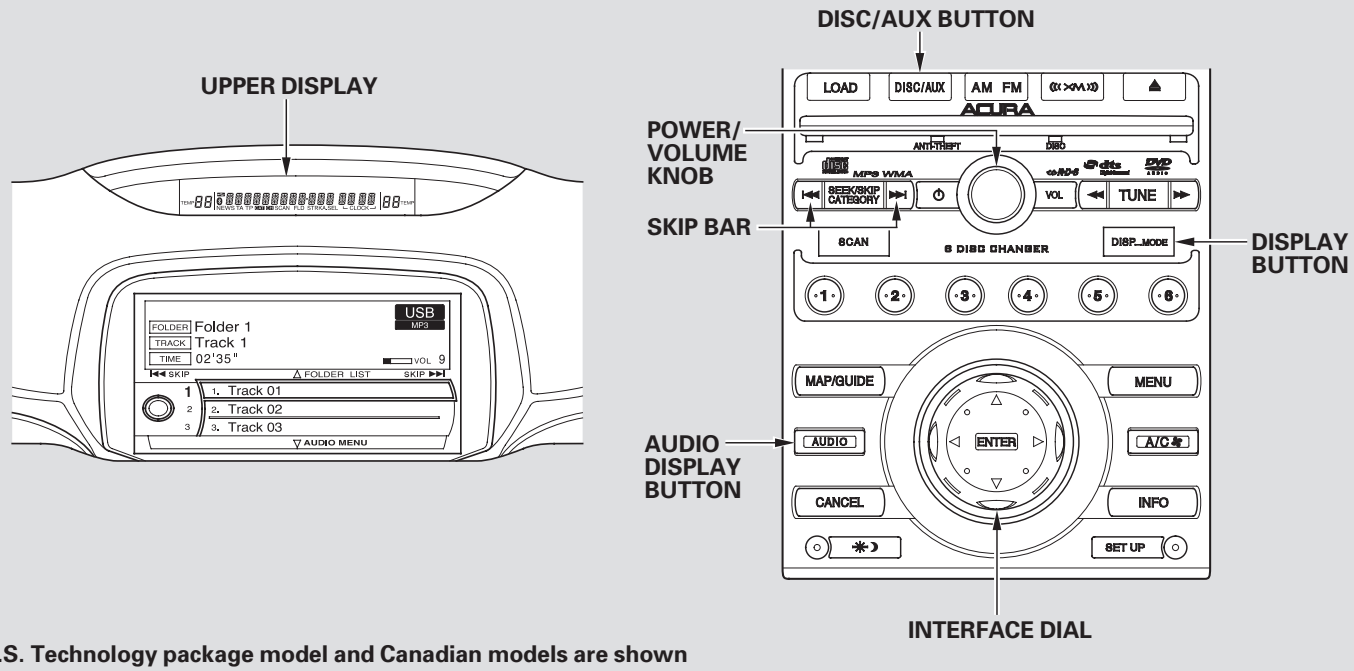
iPod® Error Messages

If you see an error message in the upper display, see page 272 .

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Audio System

Playing a USB Flash Memory Device



U.S. Technology package model and Canadian models are shown

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

To Play a USB Flash Memory Device

This audio system can operate the audio files from a USB flash memory device with the same controls used for the in-dash disc changer. To play a USB flash memory device, connect it to the USB adapter cable in the console compartment, then press the DISC/AUX button. The ignition switch must be in the ACCESSORY (I) or ON (II) position.

The audio system reads and plays the audio files on the USB flash memory device in MP3, WMA or AAC* formats. Depending on the format, the display shows MP3, WMA or AAC when a USB flash memory device is playing. The USB flash memory device limit is up to 700 folders or up to 65535 files.

*: Only AAC format files recorded with iTunes are playable on this audio unit.

The recommended USB flash memory devices are 256 MB or higher. Some digital audio players may be compatible as well.

Some USB flash memory devices (such as devices with security lock-out features, etc.) will not work in this audio unit.

NOTE:

- Do not use a device such as a card reader or hard drive as the device or your files may be damaged.
- Do not connect your USB flash memory device using a hub.
- Do not use an extension cable to the USB adapter cable equipped with your vehicle.
- Do not keep a USB flash memory device in the vehicle. Direct sunlight and high heat will damage it.
- We recommend backing up your data before playing a USB flash memory device.
- Depending on the type and number of files, it may take some time before they begin to play.
- Depending on the software the files were made with, it may not be possible to play some files, or display some text data.

Voice Control System

You can select the AUX mode by using the navigation system voice control buttons, but cannot operate the play mode functions.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Audio System

The specifications for compatible MP3 files are:
- Sampling frequency:
  32/44.1/48 kHz (MPEG1)
  16/22.05/24 kHz (MPEG2)
- Bitrate:
  32/40/48/56/64/80/96/112/128/160/192/224/256/320/VBR kbps (MPEG1)
- Supported standards:
  MPEG1 Audio Layer3
  MPEG2 Audio Layer3
- Partition: Top partition only
- Maximum layers: 8

The specifications for compatible WMA files are:
- Sampling frequency:
  32/44.1/48 kHz
- Bitrate:
  48–320/VBR kbps (Max 384)
- Supported standards:
  WMA version 7/8/9
- Partition: Top partition only
- Maximum layers: 8

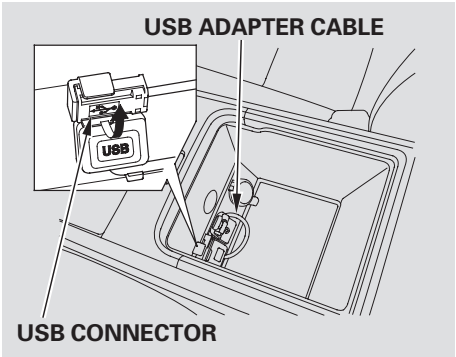
The specifications for compatible AAC files are:
- Sampling frequency:
  8/11.025/12/16/22.05/24/32/44.1/48 kHz
- Bitrate:
  48–320 kbps
- Supported standards:
  MPEG4/AAC LC
  MPEG2/AAC LC
- Partition: Top partition only
- Maximum layers: 8

Some versions of MP3, WMA, or AAC format may not be supported. If an unsupported file is found, the audio unit displays UNSUPPORTED, then skips to the next file.

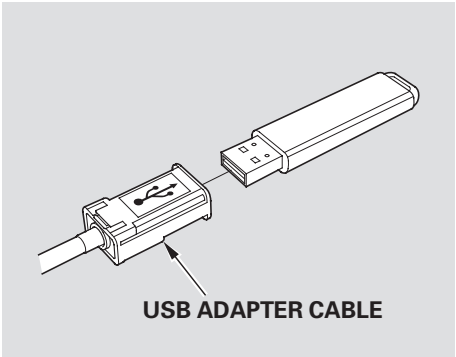
In WMA or AAC format, DRM (digital rights management) files cannot be played. If the system finds a DRM file, the audio unit displays UNPLAYABLE FILE, and then skips to the next file.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Connecting a USB Flash Memory Device



1. Unclip the USB connector by pivoting it, and pull out the USB adapter cable in the console compartment.



2. Connect the USB flash memory device to the USB adapter cable correctly and securely.

When the USB flash memory device is connected and the USB mode is selected on the audio system, the USB indicator is shown in the upper display. It also shows the folder and file numbers. Pressing the AUDIO button displays the folder and file names, and the elapsed time in the navigation screen.

To Change or Select Files

Use the SKIP bar while a USB flash memory device is playing to select passages and change files.

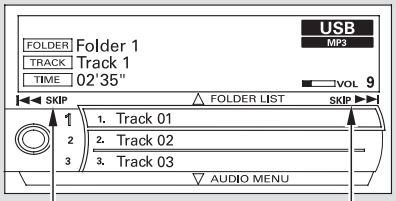
SKIP – Each time you press and release the ►►| side of the SKIP bar, the system skips forward to the beginning of the next file. Press and release the |◄◄ side of the bar, to skip backward to the beginning of the current file. Press it again to skip to the beginning of the previous file.

To move rapidly within a track, press and hold the |◄◄ / ◄◄ or ►► / ►►| button.

CONTINUED

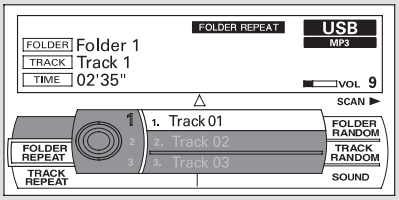
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Audio System



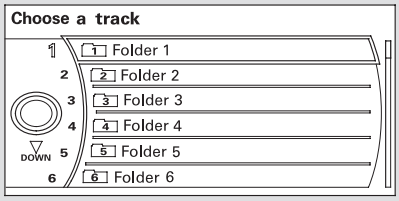
You can also change files with the interface dial. Press the AUDIO button to show the audio control display on the navigation screen. Push the selector knob to the right side to skip to the beginning of the next file, and to the left side to skip to the beginning of the current file. Pushing it to the left again skips to the beginning of the previous file.

To Select a File from Folder and File Lists

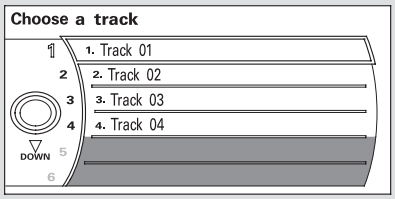


You can also select a folder or file from the list by using the interface dial. Press the AUDIO button to show the audio control display on the navigation screen.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



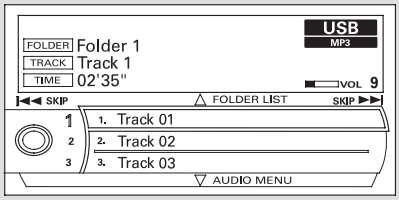
Push up the selector on the interface dial to switch the display to the folder list, then turn the knob on the interface dial to select a folder.



Press ENTER to change the display to the file list, then turn the knob on the interface dial to select a file. Press ENTER to set your selection.

To go back to the normal playing display, press the AUDIO button. Pressing the CANCEL button goes back to the previous screen and pressing the MAP button cancels the audio mode display.

To Select Repeat, Random or Scan Mode:

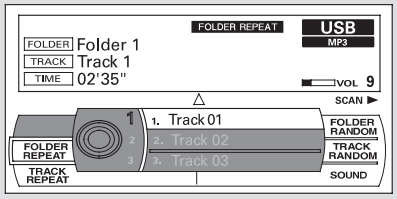


You can select any type of repeat, random and scan modes on the audio menu screen. Press the AUDIO button to show the audio control display on the navigation screen. Push down the selector on the interface dial to display the audio menu items.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Audio System



Turn the knob on the interface dial to select a play mode: folder random, track random, folder repeat, track repeat. Press ENTER to set your selection.

To cancel the selected mode, push down the selector to display the audio menu on the audio control display. Turn the knob on the interface dial to select the highlighted play mode, then press ENTER to turn off that selected mode.

FOLDER REPEAT — This feature replays all the files in the selected folder in the order they are stored.

TRACK REPEAT — This feature continuously plays a file. Pressing either side of the SKIP bar also turns off this feature.

FOLDER RANDOM — This feature plays the files in the selected folder in random order.

TRACK RANDOM — This feature plays all the files in random order.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

TRACK SCAN – This function samples all files in the selected folder in the order they are stored. To activate the scan feature, push the selector to the right. You will see TRACK SCAN on the screen. You will also see SCAN on the upper display and the file number blinking. You will get a 10 second sampling of each file in the folder. Push the selector repeatedly to get out of the scan mode. The system plays the last file sampled.

You can also select the scan feature with the SCAN button on the control panel.
Press and release the SCAN button.
Press and hold the SCAN button to get out of the scan mode and play the last file sampled.

FOLDER SCAN – This function samples the first file in each folder in the order they are stored. To activate the folder scan feature, push the selector to the right repeatedly. You will see FOLDER SCAN on the screen. You will also see SCAN on the upper display and the folder number blinking. You will get a 10 second sampling each first file in the folder(s). Push the selector repeatedly to get out of the scan mode. The system plays the last file sampled.

You can also select the folder scan feature with the SCAN button on the control panel. Press and release the SCAN button repeatedly.
Press and hold the SCAN button to get out of the folder scan mode and play the last file sampled.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Audio System

To Stop Playing a USB Flash Memory Device

All models except Hawaiian

To play the radio, press the AM/FM or XM button. Press the DISC/AUX button to switch to the disc mode (if a disc is loaded). Press the DISC/AUX button to switch the audio mode between the USB mode and *Bluetooth*® audio.

Hawaiian models

To play the radio, press the AM or FM button. Press the DISC/AUX button to switch to the disc mode (if a disc is loaded). Press the DISC/AUX button to switch the audio mode between the USB mode and *Bluetooth*® audio.

Disconnecting a USB Flash Memory Device

You can disconnect the USB flash memory device at any time even if the USB mode is selected on the audio system. Make sure to follow the USB flash memory device's instructions when you remove it.

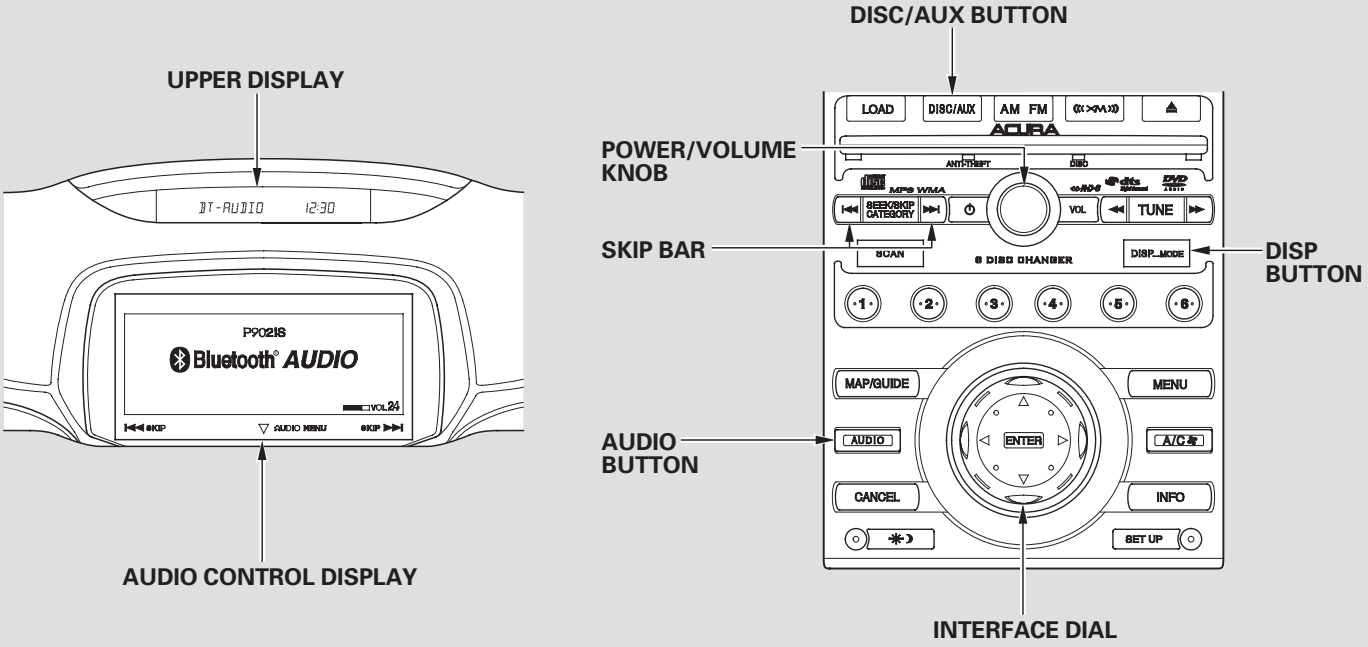
When you disconnect the USB flash memory device while it is playing, the upper display and the audio screen (if selected) show NO DATA.

USB Flash Memory Device Error Messages

If you see an error message in the upper display, see page 273 .

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Playing *Bluetooth*® Audio



CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

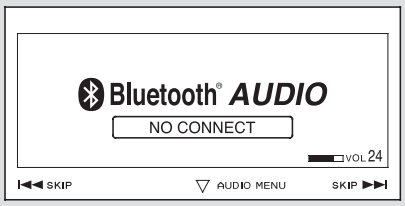
Audio System

Your vehicle is equipped with a *Bluetooth*® Audio system, which allows you to listen to streaming audio from your *Bluetooth*® Audio compatible phone. This function is only available on phones that are paired and linked to the vehicle's *Bluetooth*® HandsFreeLink® (HFL) system (see page 360).

Not all Bluetooth-enabled phones with streaming audio capabilities are compatible with the system. You can find an approved phone by visiting *www.acura.com/handsfreelink*, or by calling the HandsFreeLink® consumer support at 1-888-528-7876. In Canada, visit *www.acura.ca*, or call 1-866-78-ACURA.

NOTE: In some states it may be illegal to perform some data device functions while driving.

To Play *Bluetooth*® Audio Files



Make sure that your phone is paired and linked to HFL.

Press the DISC/AUX button*. When the phone is recognized, you will see the *Bluetooth*® Audio message on the upper display and the audio control display on the navigation screen (if selected), and the system begins to play.

Once a device is linked, the name of the device will appear on the screen. Pressing the DISP button switches the upper display between the *Bluetooth*® Audio and the device name.
If more than one phone is paired to the HFL system, there will be delay before the system begins to play.

To begin to play the audio files, you may need to operate your phone. Follow the phone maker's operating instructions.

*: If an iPod, USB flash memory device or audio unit connected to the auxiliary input jack was selected as the last mode, you will see iPod, USB or AUX in the upper display and the audio control display on the navigation screen (if selected). Push the DISC/AUX button again to play audio files from your *Bluetooth*® Audio phone.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

In the following conditions, the display shows “NO CONNECT” message after pressing the preset 1 button.

- The phone is not linked to HFL.
- The phone is not turned on.
- The phone is not in the vehicle.
- Your phone is not set to play audio files.

If your *Bluetooth*® Audio compatible phone does not operate as described, make sure it is an Acura approved phone. To find out if your phone is approved, go to *www.acura.com/handsfreelink* (in Canada, visit *www.acura.ca.*), or call the HandsFreeLink® client support at (888) 528-7876.

Voice Control System

You can select the AUX mode by using the navigation system voice control buttons, but cannot operate the play mode functions.

To skip a file

Press the ►►| side of the SKIP bar to skip forward to the next file, and press the |◄◄ side to skip backward to the beginning of the current file. Push the |◄◄ side again to skip to the previous file.

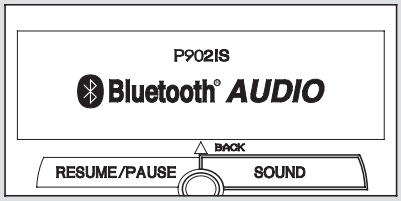
You can also operate the skip function with the interface dial on the audio control display of the navigation screen. Push the AUDIO button. Each time you push the selector on the interface dial to the right, the system skips forward to the beginning of the next file. Push it to the left to skip backward to the beginning to the current file. Push the selector to the left again to skip to the previous file.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Audio System

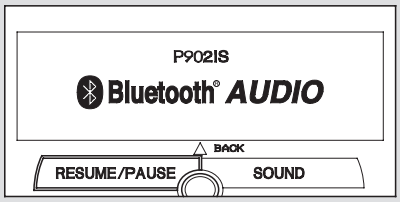
To change sound settings



Press the AUDIO button, then push down the selector to display the audio menu. Turn the knob to switch the setting between the resume/pause mode and the sound mode. Select SOUND, then press ENTER to set your selection.

Turn the knob to your liking (see page 226 for more sound setting information).

To pause or resume a file



The resume/pause mode can stop playing a file temporarily.

Turn the knob on the interface dial to switch the setting between the resume/pause mode and the sound mode. Select RESUME/PAUSE, then press ENTER to set your selection. Each time you press ENTER, the system switches between the resume mode and pause mode.

NOTE: The pause function may not work on some types of files.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

To switch to HFL mode
If you receive a call when the *Bluetooth*® Audio is playing, press the Talk button on the steering wheel. The screen and the upper display switch to the HFL mode (see page 354).

After ending the call, press the HFL Back button to go back to the *Bluetooth*® Audio mode.

If you receive a call while the system is in the pause mode, the mode will be canceled and *Bluetooth*® Audio will continue to play.

To turn off the Bluetooth® Audio mode
All models except Hawaiian
Select any other audio mode by pressing a button; FM/AM, XM or DISC/AUX (if a disc is loaded), on the audio control panel or press the mode button on the steering wheel repeatedly to select another audio mode. If an iPod or USB flash memory device is connected to the USB adapter cable or audio unit is connected to AUX jack, pressing the AUX button also changes a mode.

Hawaiian models
Select any other audio mode by pressing a button; FM, AM or DISC (if a disc is loaded), on the audio control panel or press the mode button on the steering wheel repeatedly to select another audio mode. If an iPod or USB flash memory device is connected to the USB adapter cable or audio unit is connected to AUX jack, pressing the DISC/AUX button also changes a mode.

Switching to another mode pauses the music playing from your phone.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Audio System

As required by the FCC:
This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.
Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.
This device complies with Industry Canada Standard RSS-210.
Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Disc Changer Error Messages

The chart on the right explains the error messages you may see in the display while playing a disc.

If you see an error message in the display while playing a disc, press the eject button. After ejecting the disc, check it for damage or deformation. If there is no damage, insert the disc again.
For additional information on damaged discs, see page 275 .

The audio system will try to play the disc. If there is still a problem, the error message will reappear. Press the eject button, and pull out the disc.

Insert a different disc. If the new disc plays, there is a problem with the first disc. If the error message cycle repeats and you cannot clear it, take your vehicle to a dealer.

Error Message	Cause	Solution
CHECK DISC	FOCUS Error	Press the EJECT button and pull out the disc(s). Check the disc for serious damage, signs of deformation, excessive scratches, and/or dirt (see page 275). Insert the disc again. If the code does not disappear, or the disc(s) cannot be removed, consult your dealer. Do not try to force the disc out of the player.
BAD DISC PLEASE CHECK MANUAL PUSH EJECT	Eject Error	

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

iPod Error Messages

If you see an error message in the upper display while playing an iPod, find the solution in the chart to the right. If you cannot clear the error message, take your vehicle to your dealer.

Error Message	Cause	Solution
USB ERROR	USB ROM error	There is a problem with the USB adapter unit.
BAD DEVICE PLEASE CHECK MANUAL	Abnormal power source	Appears when the overcurrent protection feature of the system stops supplying power to USB because an incompatible device is connected. Disconnect the device. Then, turn the audio system off, and turn it on again. Do not reconnect the device that caused the error.
NO SONG	No files in iPod	Appears when the iPod is empty. Store some AAC files in the iPod.
UNSUPPORTED	Use of unsupported device	Appears when an unsupported device is connected. Disconnect the device.
iPod RETRY	Recognition failure of iPod	Appears when the system does not acknowledge the iPod. Reconnect the iPod.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

USB Flash Memory Device Error Messages

If you see an error message in the upper display while playing a USB flash memory device, find the solution in the chart to the right. If you cannot clear the error message, take your vehicle to your dealer.

Error Message	Cause	Solution
USB ERROR	USB ROM error	There is a problem with the USB adapter unit.
BAD DEVICE PLEASE CHECK MANUAL	Abnormal power source	Appears when the overcurrent protection feature of the system stops supplying power to USB because an incompatible device is connected. Disconnect the device. Then, turn the audio system off, and turn it on again. Do not reconnect the device that caused the error.
UNPLAYABLE	Use of unsupported files	Appears when the files in the USB flash memory device are DRM or an unsupported format. This error message appears for a few seconds, then plays the next song.
NO SONG	No files in USB flash memory device	Appears when the USB flash memory device is empty or there are no MP3, WMA, or AAC files in the USB flash memory device. Save some MP3, WMA, or AAC files in the USB flash memory device.
UNSUPPORTED	Use of unsupported USB flash memory device	Appears when an unsupported device is connected. See page 258 for the specification information for the USB flash memory device. If it appears when the supported device is connected, reconnect the device.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Protecting Your Discs

General Information

- When using CD-R or CD-RW discs, use only high quality discs labeled for audio use.
- When recording a CD-R or CD-RW, the recording must be closed for it to be used by the disc changer.
- Play only standard, round, 5-inch (12 cm) discs. Smaller or odd-shaped discs may jam in the drive or cause other problems.
- Handle your discs properly to prevent damage and skipping.

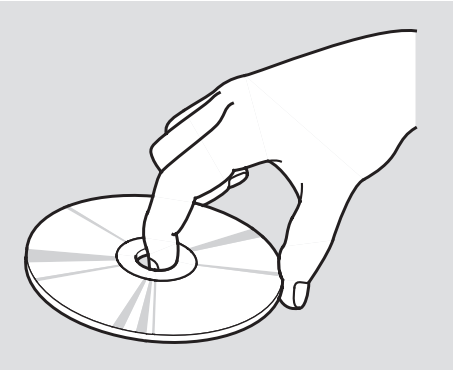
Protecting Discs

When a disc is not being played, store it in its case to protect it from dust and other contamination. To prevent warpage, keep discs out of direct sunlight and extreme heat.

To clean a disc, use a clean soft cloth. Wipe across the disc from the center to the outside edge.

A new disc may be rough on the inner and outer edges. The small plastic pieces causing this roughness can flake off and fall on the recording surface of the disc, causing skipping or other problems. Remove these pieces by rubbing the inner and outer edges with the side of a pencil or pen.

Never try to insert foreign objects in the disc changer.



Handle a disc by its edges; never touch either surface. Do not place stabilizer rings or labels on the disc. These, along with contamination from finger prints, liquids, and felt-tip pens, can cause the disc to not play properly, or possibly jam in the drive.

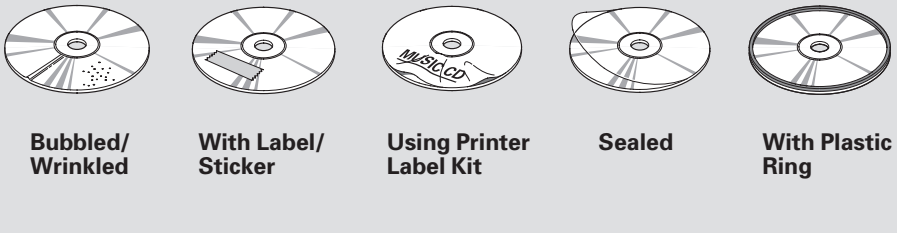
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Protecting Your Discs

Additional Information on Recommended Discs
The in-dash disc player/changer has a sophisticated and delicate mechanism. If you insert a damaged disc as indicated in this section, it may become stuck inside and damage the audio unit.

Examples of these discs are shown to the right:

1. Bubbled, wrinkled, labeled, and excessively thick discs

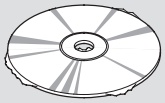


Bubbled/ Wrinkled | **With Label/ Sticker** | **Using Printer Label Kit** | **Sealed** | **With Plastic Ring**

2. Damaged discs

Chipped/ Cracked | **Warped**

3. Poor quality discs



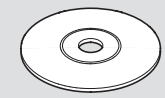
Burrs

CONTINUED

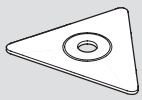
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Protecting Your Discs

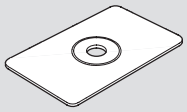
4. Small, irregular shaped discs



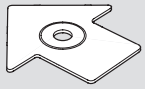
3-inch (8-cm) CD



Triangle Shape

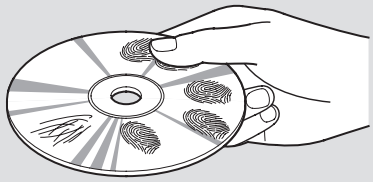


Can Shape



Arrow Shape

5. Discs with scratches, dirty discs



Fingerprints, scratches, etc.

- CD-R or CD-RW may not play due to the recording conditions.
- Scratches and fingerprints on the discs may cause the sound to skip.

- Recommended discs are printed with the following logo.

COMPACT disc DIGITAL AUDIO

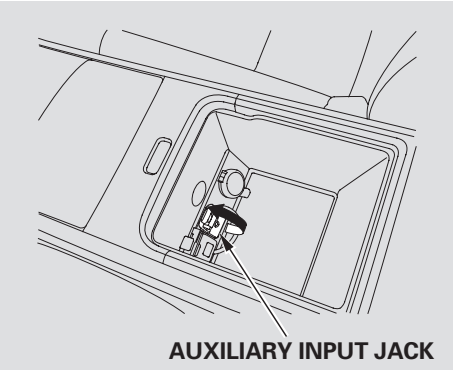
- Audio unit may not play the following formats.

mp3

Plays Windows Media™

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Auxiliary Input Jack

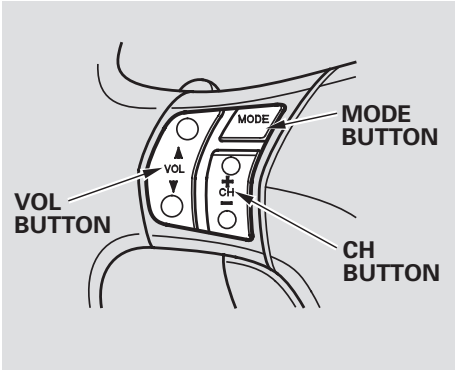


The auxiliary input jack is inside the console compartment. The system will accept auxiliary input from standard audio accessories.

When you plug in a mini-jack cable between a compatible audio unit and the jack, you will see AUX in the display and the system automatically switches to AUX mode.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Remote Audio Controls



Three controls for the audio system are mounted in the steering wheel hub. These let you control basic functions without removing your hand from the wheel.

The VOL button adjusts the volume up (▲) or down (▼). Press the top or bottom of the button, hold it until the desired volume is reached, then release it.

The MODE button changes the mode. Pressing the button repeatedly selects FM1, FM2, AM, or disc (if a disc(s) is loaded). On models with XM Radio, you can also select XM1 and XM2. If an iPod or a USB flash memory device is plugged into the system, you can also select AUX.

If you are listening to the radio, use the CH button to change stations. Each time you press the top (+) of the button, the system goes to the next preset station on the band you are listening to. Press the bottom (−) to go back to the previous station.

To activate the seek function, press and hold the top (+) or bottom (−) of the CH button until you hear a beep. The system searches up or down from the current frequency to find a station with a strong signal.

If you are playing a disc, the system skips to the beginning of the next track/file (in MP3/WMA mode) each time you press the top (+) of the CH button. Press the bottom (−) to return to the beginning of the current track/file. Press it again to return to the previous track/file.

To select a different disc (folder in MP3/WMA mode), press and hold the top (+) or bottom (−) of the CH button until you hear a beep.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

On all models except Hawaiian
If you are listening to XM Radio, use the CH button to change channels. Each time you press the top (+) of the button, the system goes to the next preset channel. Press the bottom (−) to go back to the previous preset channel.

To select a different channel of the category you are listening to, press and hold the top (+) or bottom (−) of the CH button until you hear a beep.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Radio Theft Protection

Your vehicle's audio system may disable itself if it is disconnected from electrical power for any reason. To make it work again, you must enter a specific five-digit code with the preset buttons. Because there are hundreds of number combinations possible from the five digits, making the system work without knowing the exact code is nearly impossible.

You should have received a radio code card that lists your audio system's code and serial numbers. It is best to store this card in a safe place at home. In addition, you should write the audio system's serial number in this owner's manual.

If you lose the card, you must obtain the code number from your dealer. To do this, you will need the audio system's serial number.

If your vehicle's battery is disconnected or goes dead, or the radio fuse is removed, the audio system will disable itself. If this happens, you will see "ENTER CODE" in the upper display the next time you turn on the system. Use the preset buttons to enter the code. The code is located on the radio code card included in your owner's manual kit. When it is entered correctly, the radio will start playing.

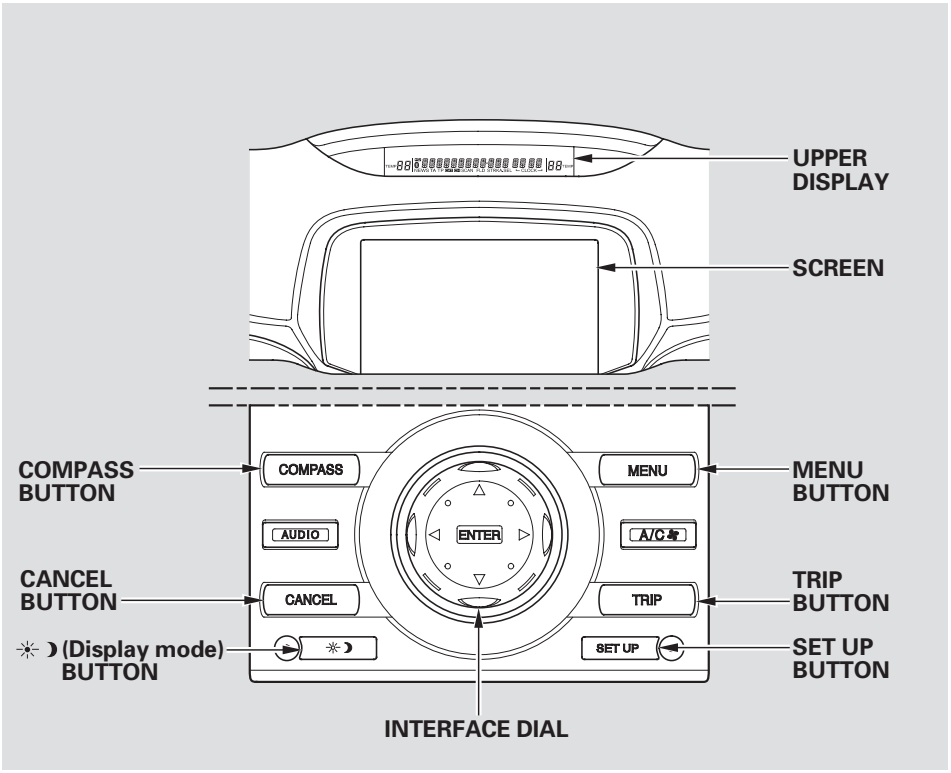
If you make a mistake entering the code, do not start over; complete the five-digit sequence, then enter the correct code. You have 10 tries to enter the correct code.

If the code card is lost, your dealer can access your code with your radio's serial number. To access the serial number, turn the radio on. It must display "ENTER CODE", then turn the radio off. Push and hold the preset 1 and preset 6 buttons, then push the power/volume knob. The serial number will appear in two sets of four digits.

The system will retain your AM and FM presets even if power is disconnected.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Compass System (U.S. model without navigation system)



The compass system in your vehicle contains several convenient features, including a direction and elevation finder, a calendar reminder for important events, a calculator, and a trip computer to help you track your mileage and fuel economy.

System Controls

The controls for the compass system are on the center console panel. These controls are also used to operate the climate control system (see page 204) and the audio system (see page 214).

Compass Button

Press this button to display the **Compass** screen (see page 286).

Menu Button

Press this button to display the **Main Menu** screen (see page 287) for the trip computer, calendar, calculator, and voice command Help.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Compass System (U.S. model without navigation system)

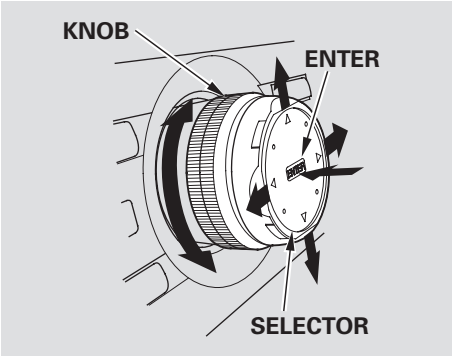
Trip Button
Press this button to display the **Trip Computer** screen (see page 288).

Set Up Button
Press the button to display the set up screen (see page 293) to change and update information in the system.

(Display Mode) Button
This button switches the display between day mode, night mode, and off (see page 298).

Cancel Button
Press this button to cancel the current screen and return to the previous screen.

Interface Dial



Most functions of the compass system can be accessed with the interface dial. The interface dial has two parts: a knob and a selector.

The knob turns left and right. Use it to make selections or adjustments to a list or menu on the screen.

The selector can be pushed left, right, up, down, and in. Use the selector to scroll through lists, to select menus, and to highlight menu items. When you make a selection, push the center of the selector in (ENTER) to go to that selection.

In almost all cases, you can enter a selection into the system by pushing in on the interface selector.

Screen
All selections and instructions are displayed on the screen.

Clean the screen with a soft damp cloth. You may use a mild cleanser intended for use on liquid crystal displays (LCDs). Harsher chemicals may damage the screen.

Upper Display
Shows the radio band, frequency, volume, the climate control status, and the time.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

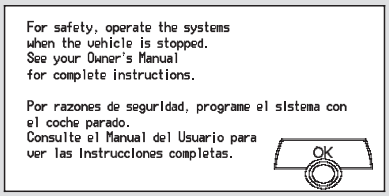
Compass System (U.S. model without navigation system)

System Start-up

Throughout the compass system section, the icon " " is used to indicate features that are dependent on the "Driver number" as displayed on the multi-information display "Welcome" display.

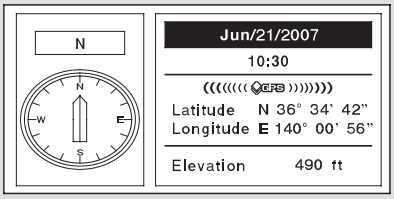
When you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position, the compass system to boots up within a few seconds.

The first screen to appear is the compass system globe screen. The screen then changes to the disclaimer screen:


For safety, operate the systems
when the vehicle is stopped.
See your Owner's Manual
for complete instructions.
Por razones de seguridad, programe el sistema con
el coche parado.
Consulte el Manual del Usuario para
ver las Instrucciones completas.
OK

NOTE:

- The **OK** button does not appear immediately. It appears after the system is loaded. The OK command cannot be activated by voice.



Please read the disclaimer carefully before you continue. To go to the compass screen, select OK by pushing in the interface selector.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Compass System (U.S. model without navigation system)

If you do not push in on the **interface selector**, the screen will go dark after 30 seconds. To return to the disclaimer screen, press any compass or voice control button.

NOTE: If you do not select **OK**, and then enter the Set up or Trip computer screens, some items are not available, and will show up as darkened buttons (grayed out).

If any calendar reminders were previously entered, the calendar reminder screen is displayed next.

The calendar reminder screen remains displayed until you select **OK**, **Remind Later** or press the CANCEL button.

If you select **OK**, the reminder will not show up again. If you wish to have the reminder show up again later in the day, select **Remind Later** and push in on the interface selector.

If you press the CANCEL button, the message will be displayed the next time you start the vehicle.

NOTE: The system will display the current message and any older or previously unread messages, with the newest message listed first.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Compass System (U.S. model without navigation system)

Keyless Memory Settings™
The vehicle "senses" the driver number, based on which keyless remote is used to unlock the vehicle. If two drivers with remotes approach the vehicle at the same time, the welcome display and related settings are based on which remote the vehicle first "senses."

NOTE: If both remotes come within range simultaneously, the "Welcome" display may be unpredictable.

The compass system uses the driver number (as recognized by the multi-information display) to personalize the compass system. For example, if Driver 1 unlocks the vehicle, the "Driver 1" personal address book and other navigation settings are automatically loaded when the vehicle is started. There is no way to change from one driver's settings to another while driving.

When the keyless access remote is deliberately "unlinked," (as when giving the key to a valet) the multi-information display will display "Welcome." Then the following occurs:

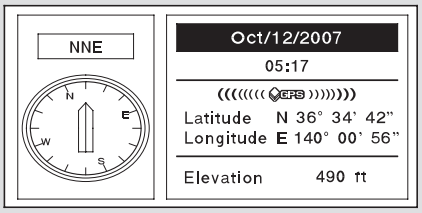
- The calendar feature is not selectable (buttons grayed out).
- Setup values (like volume, brightness, etc.) can be changed but are not remembered the next time you restart the vehicle.

For information on "linking" and "unlinking" the keyless access remotes, see page 173 .

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

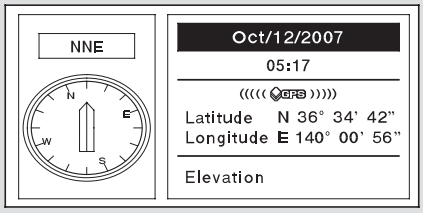
Compass System (U.S. model without navigation system)

The Compass Screen

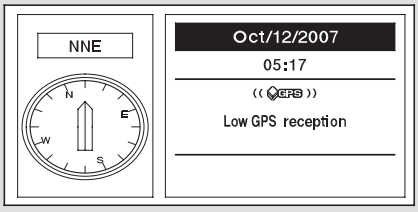


You can see the current latitude, longitude, and elevation at any time when you press the COMPASS button or say "Display map guide." The date and time is also displayed.

NOTE: If the battery is disconnected or the fuse for the compass system is removed, the system may require GPS initialization (see page 299).



If the system does not receive the elevation information, the display shows only current latitude and longitude.

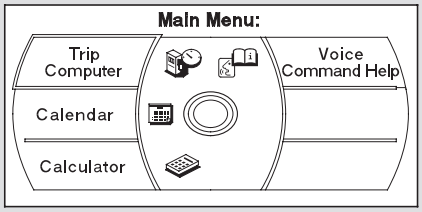


If the GPS reception is low, the display shows a "Low GPS reception" message.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Compass System (U.S. model without navigation system)

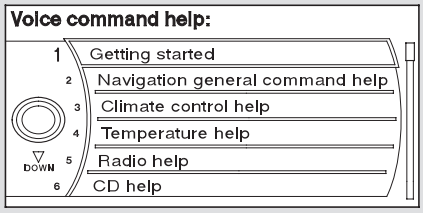
Main Menu



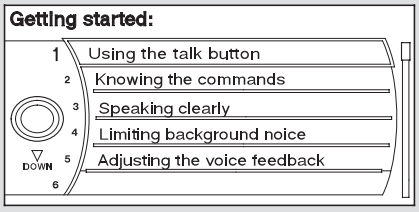
When you say “Display menu” or press the MENU button, the display changes to the **Main menu** screen. To select a menu item, turn the interface knob to highlight the item, then press the interface selector.

NOTE: If some items appear grayed out and cannot be selected, the vehicle does not sense the driver’s ID of the remote (see page 173).

Voice Command Help



The voice command help screen displays several topics that help you to understand your vehicle’s voice control system. To go to the voice command help screen, say or select “Voice command help.” Then select a topic by saying either the topic name or its line number.



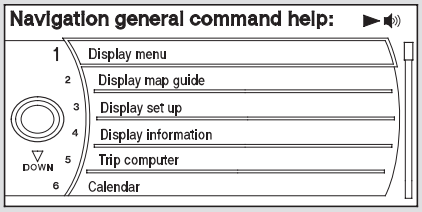
To use the voice command tutorial, say or select “Getting started.” The display changes to the Getting started screen.

Select the line number of the tutorial you want to view, and the tutorial will automatically be read out. To stop the system from reading the tutorial, move the interface knob to the right.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

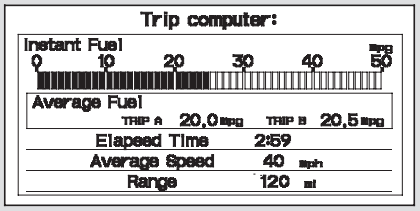
Compass System (U.S. model without navigation system)



When you make a selection (such as Navigation general command help), you will see the help commands that can be used with the voice control. To have the system read the list, say "Read list," or select by moving the interface selector to the right, and the system will read the list to you.

For a listing of all voice commands, see *Voice Command Index* on page 307.

Trip Computer



The **trip computer** screens display the trip information from the multi-information display in the gauge assembly.

To go to the trip computer, say "Trip Computer," select Trip computer from the main menu, or press the TRIP button on the center console panel.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Compass System (U.S. model without navigation system)

MPG
Shows the instantaneous fuel economy in miles per gallon.

Instant Fuel
Shows you the current fuel economy in miles per gallon.

Average Fuel
Shows you the average fuel economy in miles per gallon since the display was last reset.

Elapsed Time
Shows the elapsed time that the ignition has been on since the display was last reset.

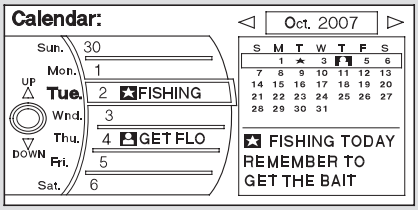
Average Speed
Shows you the average speed in miles per hour since the display was last reset.

Range
Shows the estimated distance you can travel on the fuel remaining in the tank. This distance is estimated from the average fuel economy over the last several miles, so it will vary with changes in speed, traffic, etc.

Resetting the Display
The average fuel, average speed, and elapsed time meters can be reset automatically (see page 75).

NOTE:
- The "Average Fuel" and "MPG" may vary from actual fuel consumed. These values are estimates only.
- The "Range" value is approximate, and may vary from actual range.

Calendar



The calendar feature allows you to enter events and be reminded of them in the future.
When you say "Calendar" or select the **Calendar** on the **Main Menu** screen, the display changes to the **calendar** screen.

Dates with an icon indicate there is a schedule entry for that date.

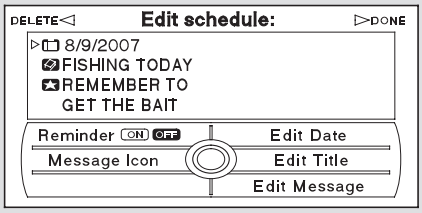
CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Compass System (U.S. model without navigation system)

You can scroll through the calendar day by day by turning the interface knob, or select the day by voice. When you push the interface selector up or down, you can also scroll through the calendar week by week. When you say “Next month” or “Previous month,” or when you push the interface selector to the right or left, the system displays the next or previous month.

Entering Your Schedule



Set your schedule by selecting the day on the calendar, and the display changes to the **Edit schedule** screen.

Reminder
The default for the reminder is **ON**. This allows the system to remind you of the calendar item the next time you start the vehicle. See *System Start-up* on page 283 .

Title
Say or select “**Edit title**,” then enter the name of your title using the interface selector. Once you enter the title, say or select “**Done**.” The title will be displayed on the specified date of the Calendar screen.

Message
Say or select “**Edit message**,” and the system will show the Enter Message screen. You can enter a message on two lines. Use ↵ to change the line. Once you have entered the message, say or select “Done.” The message will be displayed on the specified date of the calendar screen.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Compass System (U.S. model without navigation system)

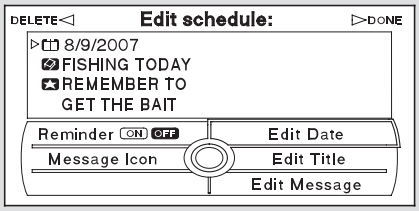
Message Icon
Say or select "**Message icon**," and the system displays a list of icons you can select to help identify the type of message you entered. The message icon you choose will be displayed alongside the specified date on the calendar screen.

Delete
From the **calendar** screen, select the date of the schedule you wish to remove. To remove the schedule, say or select "**Delete**."

Done
Once you have finished entering the schedule, say or select "**Done**." The **calendar** screen is redisplayed and a category icon appears.

NOTE:
- You can only enter one message per day.
- To re-activate a previous message, turn the reminder setting from **OFF** to **ON**. If it is not turned on, the reminder will not be displayed when you start the vehicle.
- For more information, refer to System Start-up on page 283 .

Edit Date



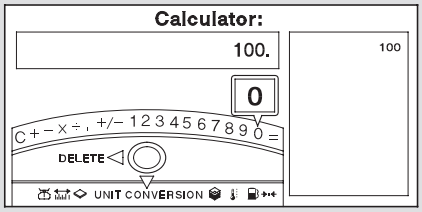
This allows you to move your calendar entry to a different date. If you say or select "**Edit date**," the **calendar** screen is displayed with existing entries grayed out. Select a new day and the **edit schedule** screen is redisplayed with the new date.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Compass System (U.S. model without navigation system)

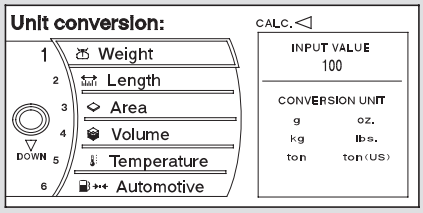
Calculator



When you say or select “Calculator,” the display changes to the **Calculator** screen.

Enter the digits and operation symbols with the interface selector.

Convert



Use the interface selector to control the calculator, and calculator “conversion” feature.
To convert a unit of measurement, do this:

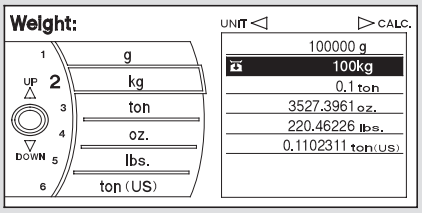
1. Enter a numeric value to be converted (for example, 100).

2. Push the interface selector down to select Unit conversion. The screen above appears.

3. Turn the interface knob until the conversion you want is highlighted (weight, for example), then push the selector in to select it. The screen for that conversion type appears (see illustration in step 4).

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Compass System (U.S. model without navigation system)

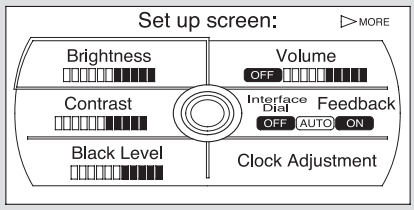


4. Turn the interface knob until the unit you want to convert from is highlighted (kilogram, for example), then push the selector in to select it as it the example above.

System Set-up

The set-up functions consist of three different screens that allow you to change and update information in the system. To display the **set up screen**, say "Set up" or press the SET UP button, and then select an item. To select more setup items, say "More," or select MORE at the top right corner of the screen.

First Set up Screen



The first setup screen allows you to change the system's brightness, contrast, black level, volume, interface dial feedback, and clock adjustment. To select a setup item, turn the interface knob until it is highlighted, then push the interface selector in to select it.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Compass System (U.S. model without navigation system)

Brightness
There are 11 possible brightness settings. To change the brightness, say “Brightness up” or “Brightness down.” You can also select **Brightness** and change the setting by turning the interface knob.

Tip: *If you are having trouble viewing the screen in bright lighting conditions, try increasing the brightness.*

Contrast
There are 11 possible contrast settings. To adjust the contrast, say “Contrast up” or “Contrast down.” You can also select **Contrast** and change the setting by turning the interface knob. Changes to the display are very subtle — this is normal.

Black Level
There are 11 possible black level settings. To change the black level, say “Black level up” or “Black level down.” You can also select **Black Level** and change the setting by turning the Interface knob. Changes to the display are very subtle — this is normal.

NOTE: You can have separate daytime and nighttime settings for brightness, contrast, and black level. Adjust each setting when the display is in either daytime or nighttime mode. Use the Display mode button (see page 282) to select daytime or nighttime mode.

Volume
To adjust the volume of the system voice, do one of these actions:

- Say “Volume up” or “Volume down.”
- Select **Volume**, then change the setting by turning the interface knob.
- Select volume off.

NOTE: If you turn the volume off, you will not hear voice command confirmations.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

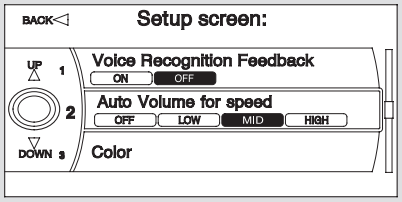
Compass System (U.S. model without navigation system)

Interface Dial Feedback
Changing this setting allows you to control when (and if) the system will read the current selection you choose with the interface dial. This feature can minimize the need to look at the screen while operating the dial. The three settings are explained in the following table. The factory default setting is **AUTO**.

Setting	Feedback Level
On	The system always reads what you select.
Auto (default)	The system reads your selection only while the vehicle is moving.
No	The system does not read your selection.

Clock Adjustment
You can adjust the clock of your system. When the battery is disconnected or the fuse for the compass system is removed, you need to reset the time. See page 313 for more information on setting the clock.

Second Set up Screen



The second setup screen allows you to change the system's voice recognition feedback, auto volume for speed, and clock settings. To select a setup item, turn the interface knob until it is highlighted, then push the interface selector in to select it.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

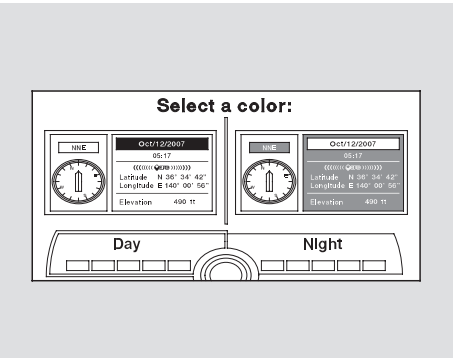
Compass System (U.S. model without navigation system)

To view the second setup screen, say "More," or move the interface selector to the right to select MORE. To go back to the first setup screen, say "Backward," or move the interface selector to the left to select BACK.

Voice Recognition Feedback
Allows you to turn voice control system prompts **ON** or **OFF**. To select ON or OFF, turn the interface knob to the right or left, then press the interface selector. When **OFF**, you will not hear the voice control system confirmations or prompts.

Auto Volume for Speed
This compass system automatically increases the system voice volume according to the vehicle speed. This setting allows you to adjust the rate of the volume increase.
When you select **OFF**, the volume is not increased by the vehicle speed.

Color



To view the Select a color screen, say "Color," or select COLOR on the screen. You can choose from one of five colors for the day and night display modes.

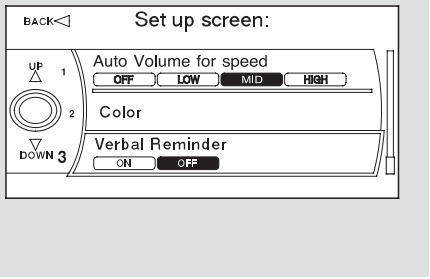
To change the color, select Day or night by turning the interface knob to the right or left. Press the interface selector, then turn the interface knob to select desired color. Press the interface selector to enter your choice.

NOTE:
- Choose silver metal (factory default) as the **Day** color to obtain the best display contrast.
- Choose black metal (factory default) as the **Night** color to obtain the best display contrast.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Compass System (U.S. model without navigation system)

Third Set up Screen



The third setup screen allows you to change the system's screen color and verbal reminders. To select a setup item, turn the interface knob until it is highlighted, then push the interface selector in to select it.

To view the third setup screen, move the interface selector down. To return to the first setup screen, say "Backward," or move the interface selector to the left to select BACK.

Verbal Reminder

This function allows you to turn **ON** or **OFF** verbal reminders. Examples of these reminders include:

- Driving with the parking brake on
- Driving with the trunk or a door open
- A reminder to fasten the driver's and front passenger's seat belts

To select ON or OFF, turn the interface knob to the right or left, then press the interface selector.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Compass System (U.S. model without navigation system)

Setting Display Mode

Pressing the ☼ ☽ (**Display mode**) button allows you to switch display modes.

Each time you turn the ignition switch to the ACCESSORY (I) position, the display mode is in auto. The screen changes between day and night modes when you turn the headlights on and off.

To override the auto mode, select either day or night mode. This can be useful if you want to use the headlights during the day. Be aware that using day mode at night will make the screen extremely bright.

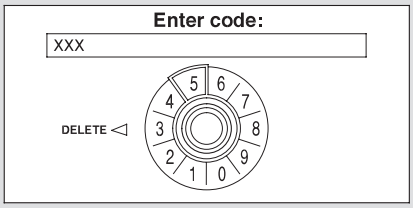
System Initialization

If for any reason, you lose power to the compass system (the battery was disconnected), the system needs to be initialized before you can use it.

Initialization requires this:

- Entry of the compass system 4-digit security code to "unlock" the system.
- GPS initialization. This may not be needed depending on how long the system was without power.

Entering the Security Code



If the battery goes dead or is disconnected for any reason, you will have to enter a security code into both the audio system and the compass system before you can use it again.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Compass System (U.S. model without navigation system)

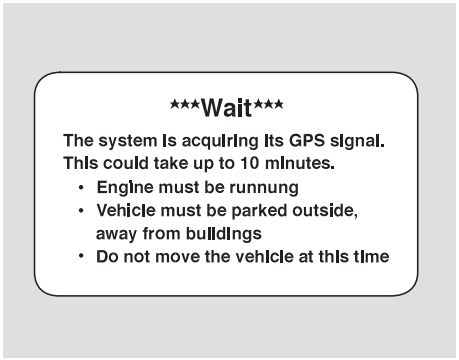
When you purchased the vehicle, you should have received two cards that have the audio and compass system's security codes and serial numbers. Keep these cards in a safe place in case you need the codes. If you lose the cards, you must obtain the security codes from your dealer.

Enter the four-digit compass system security code. If you have entered it correctly, the display changes to the **Disclaimer screen**. You have ten chances to enter the correct code. If all ten are incorrect, turn the ignition to OFF, then back to ON (II) to have ten more chances to enter the correct code.

To enter the code, turn the interface knob to select the number, then press the interface selector to enter it. Keep doing the same procedure to enter all four correct numbers. If you need to delete the number you entered mistakenly, move the interface selector to the right.

Follow the instructions in the audio system section to enter the 5-digit audio code (see page 280). The system voice will not operate if the audio code is not entered

GPS initialization


Wait
The system is acquiring its GPS signal.
This could take up to 10 minutes.
• Engine must be runnung
• Vehicle must be parked outside, away from buildings
• Do not move the vehicle at this time

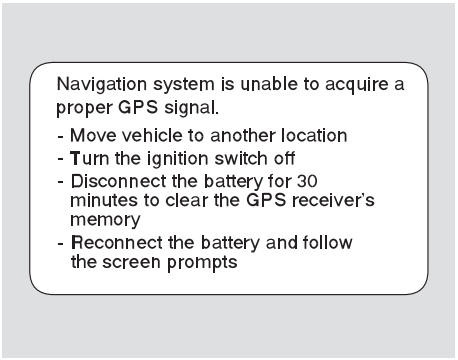
Depending on the length of time the battery was disconnected, your system may require GPS initialization. If it does, the above screen appears. Follow the instructions on the screen.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Compass System (U.S. model without navigation system)

If this procedure is not necessary the system proceeds directly to the **Compass screen** (see page 286). During initialization, the system searches for all available GPS satellites, and obtains their orbital information. During this procedure the vehicle should be out in the open with a clear view of the sky.


Navigation system is unable to acquire a proper GPS signal.
- Move vehicle to another location
- Turn the ignition switch off
- Disconnect the battery for 30 minutes to clear the GPS receiver's memory
- Reconnect the battery and follow the screen prompts

If within ten minutes the system fails to locate a sufficient number of satellites to locate your position, the screen above appears. Follow the instructions on the screen.

After 30 minutes with this screen displayed, turn off the engine and restart the vehicle. If you now see the **Disclaimer screen**, the GPS initialization is complete.

NOTE:

- The average acquiring time is less than 10 minutes, but it can take as long as 45 minutes.
- If the system is still unable to acquire a signal, follow the instructions on the screen, or contact your local dealer for assistance.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Compass System (U.S. model without navigation system)

License notice
You have acquired a device ("DEVICE") that includes software licensed by ALPINE ELECTRONICS, INC., from an affiliate of Microsoft Corporation (collectively "MS"). Those installed software products of MS origin, as well as associated media, printed materials, and "online" or electronic documentation ("SOFTWARE") are protected by international intellectual property laws and treaties. The SOFTWARE is licensed, not sold. All rights reserved.

IF YOU DO NOT AGREE TO THIS END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT ("EULA"), DO NOT USE THE DEVICE OR COPY THE SOFTWARE. INSTEAD, PROMPTLY CONTACT ALPINE ELECTRONICS, INC., FOR INSTRUCTIONS ON RETURN OF THE UNUSED DEVICE(S) FOR A REFUND. ANY USE OF THE SOFTWARE, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO USE ON THE DEVICE, WILL CONSTITUTE YOUR AGREEMENT TO THIS EULA (OR RATIFICATION OF ANY PREVIOUS CONSENT).

GRANT OF SOFTWARE LICENSE. This EULA grants you the following license;

You may use the SOFTWARE only on the DEVICE.

NOT FAULT TOLERANT. THE SOFTWARE IS NOT FAULT TOLERANT. ALPINE ELECTRONICS, INC., HAS INDEPENDENTLY DETERMINED HOW TO USE THE SOFTWARE IN THE DEVICE, AND MS HAS RELIED UPON ALPINE ELECTRONICS, INC., TO CONDUCT SUFFICIENT TESTING TO DETERMINE THAT THE SOFTWARE IS SUITABLE FOR SUCH USE.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Compass System (U.S. model without navigation system)

NO WARRANTIES FOR THE SOFTWARE. THE SOFTWARE is provided “AS IS” and with all faults. THE ENTIRE RISK AS TO SATISFACTORY QUALITY, PERFORMANCE, ACCURACY, AND EFFORT (INCLUDING LACK OF NEGLIGENCE) IS WITH YOU. ALSO, THERE IS NO WARRANTY AGAINST INTERFERENCE WITH YOUR ENJOYMENT OF THE SOFTWARE OR AGAINST INFRINGEMENT. IF YOU HAVE RECEIVED ANY WARRANTIES REGARDING THE DEVICE OR THE SOFTWARE, THOSE WARRANTIES DO NOT ORIGINATE FROM, AND ARE NOT BINDING ON, MS.

No Liability for Certain Damages, EXCEPT AS PROHIBITED BY LAW, MS SHALL HAVE NO LIABILITY FOR ANY INDIRECT, SPECIAL, CONSEQUENTIAL OR INCIDENTAL DAMAGES ARISING FROM OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE USE OR PERFORMANCE OF THE SOFTWARE. THIS LIMITATION SHALL APPLY EVEN IF ANY REMEDY FAILS OF ITS ESSENTIAL PURPOSE. IN NO EVENT SHALL MS BE LIABLE FOR ANY AMOUNT IN EXCESS OF U.S.TWO HUNDRED FIFTY DOLLARS (U.S.$250.00).

Limitations, on Reverse Engineering, Decompilation, and Disassembly. You may not reverse engineer, decompile, or disassemble the SOFTWARE, except and only to the extent that such activity is expressly permitted by applicable law not with standing this limitation.

Additional Software/Services. The SOFTWARE may permit ALPINE ELECTRONICS, INC.,, MS, Microsoft Corporation or their affiliates to provide or make available to you SOFTWARE updates, supplements, add-on components, or Internet- based services components of the SOFTWARE after the date you obtain your initial copy of the SOFTWARE (“Supplemental Components”).

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Compass System (U.S. model without navigation system)

- If ALPINE ELECTRONICS, INC., provides or makes available to you Supplemental Components and no other EULA terms are provided along with the Supplemental Components, then the terms of this EULA shall apply.
- If MS, Microsoft Corporation or their affiliates make available Supplemental Components, and no other EULA terms are provided, then the terms of this EULA shall apply, except that the MS, Microsoft Corporation or affiliate entity providing the Supplemental Component(s) shall be the licensor of the Supplemental Component(s).

ALPINE ELECTRONICS, INC.,, MS, Microsoft Corporation and their affiliates reserve the right to discontinue any Internet-based services provided to you or made available to you through the use of the SOFTWARE.

RECOVERY MEDIA. If SOFTWARE is provided by ALPINE ELECTRONICS, INC., on separate media and labeled "Recovery Media" you may use the Recovery Media solely to restore or reinstall the SOFTWARE originally installed on the DEVICE.

SOFTWARE TRANSFER ALLOWED BUT WITH RESTRICTIONS. You may permanently transfer rights under this EULA only as part of a permanent sale or transfer of the Device, and only if the recipient agrees to this EULA. If the SOFTWARE is an upgrade, any transfer must also include all prior versions of the SOFTWARE.

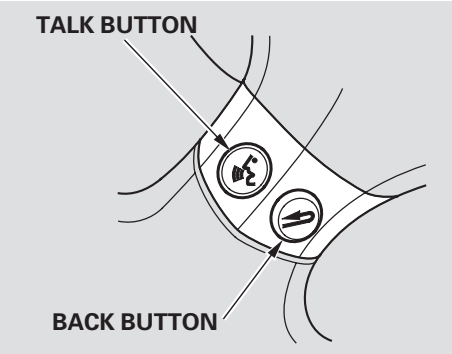
CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Compass System (U.S. model without navigation system)

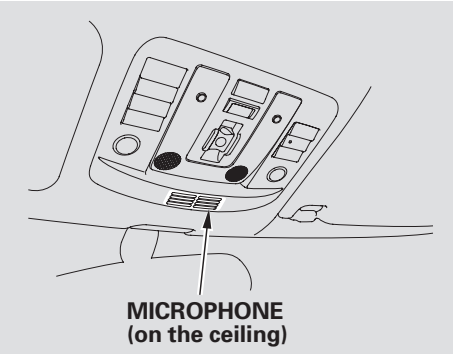
EXPORT RESTRICTIONS. You acknowledge that SOFTWARE is of US-origin. You agree to comply with all applicable international and national laws that apply to the SOFTWARE, including the U.S. Export Administration Regulations, as well as end-user, end-use and country destination restrictions issued by U.S. and other governments.
For additional information on exporting the SOFTWARE, see http://www.microsoft.com/exporting/.

Voice Control Basics



NOTE: For models with navigation system, refer to the navigation system manual.

Your vehicle has a voice control system that allows hands-free operation of the audio system, the climate control system and some functions of the compass system. The voice control system uses the TALK and BACK buttons on the steering wheel and a microphone



near the map light on the ceiling.

NOTE: While using the voice control system, all of the speakers are muted.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Compass System (U.S. model without navigation system)

Talk Button
This button activates the voice control system. Press it when you want to give a voice command. See *Voice Command Index* on page 307 for a list of voice commands.

Back Button
This button has the same function as the CANCEL button on the center console (see page 282). When you press it, the display returns to the previous screen. When the previous screen appears, the system replays the last prompt. This button can be used to cancel an audio, climate control, or compass system voice command up to one second after the command confirmation.

Using the Voice Control System
You should use the voice control system as much as possible, and consider manual entry using the **interface dial** as a "back-up" method of entry.

Most of the system's functions can be controlled by voice commands activated with the **Talk** button. To control your compass system by voice:

- Press and release the **Talk** button.
- Wait for the beep.
- Give a voice command.

Once the microphone picks up your command, the system changes the display in response to the command and prompts you for the next command. Using the **Talk** button, answer the prompts as required.

If the system does not understand a command or you wait too long to give a command, it responds with "Pardon," "Please repeat," or "Would you say again." If the system cannot perform a command or the command is not appropriate for the screen you are on, it sounds a beep.

Anytime you are not sure of what voice commands are available on a screen, you can always say "Help" at any screen. The system can then read the list of commands to you.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Compass System (U.S. model without navigation system)

When you speak a command, the system generally either repeats the command as a confirmation or asks you for further information. If you do not wish to hear this feedback, you can turn it off. See the **Voice Recognition Feedback** setting in Setup (see page 296).

If you hear a prompt such as “Please use the interface dial to...” or “Please choose an area with the interface dial.” the system is asking for input that cannot be done by voice.

Improving Voice Recognition
To achieve optimum voice recognition, the following guidelines should be followed:

NOTE: Make sure the correct screen is displayed for the voice command that you are using. See Voice Command Index on page 307 .

- Close the windows and the moonroof.
- The fan speed will be automatically adjusted to low.
- Make sure the airflow from the A/C vents does not interfere with the system microphone in the ceiling console. Place your hand over the microphone; if you feel any airflow, adjust the vents.
- After pressing the **Talk** button, wait for the beep, then give a voice command.
- Give a voice command in a clear, natural speaking voice without pausing between words.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Compass System (U.S. model without navigation system)

- If the system cannot recognize your command because of background noise, speak louder.
- If the microphone picks up voices other than yours, the system may not interpret your voice commands correctly.
- If you speak a command with something in your mouth, or your voice is either too high or too husky, the system may misinterpret your voice commands.
- If you are still having trouble with the voice control system, refer to **Voice Command Help** on the main menu screen.

Voice Command Index

The voice control system needs appropriate voice commands for controlling the climate control, the audio system, and the compass system.

Global Commands

The system accepts these commands on any screen.

Help (reads list of the commands for the displayed screen)
Set up (displays set up screen)
Display map guide (displays the compass screen)
Display menu (displays the main menu)
Information (displays the *trip computer* screen)
Trip Computer
Backward (to previous screen, same as CANCEL or BACK button)
Cancel (cancels current activity)
What time is it?
Calendar
Calculator
Repeat voice
Voice command help

The voice command help option on the main menu lists many of the following controls. To avoid distraction while you are driving, the system can read the commands for you.

The commands are accessible at any time while driving and can be read to you so that you do not need to memorize all of them.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Compass System (U.S. model without navigation system)

Climate Control Commands
The system accepts these climate control commands on most screens.

Climate control full automatic (controls temperature to 72 degrees F)
Climate control automatic (controls temperature to your selection)
Climate control off
Air conditioner on
Air conditioner off
*Air conditioner**
Climate control defrost on
Climate control defrost off
*Climate control defrost**
Rear defrost on
Rear defrost off
*Rear defrost**
Climate control fresh air
Climate control recirculate
Climate control vent
Climate control bi-level (vent and floor)
Climate control floor
Climate control floor and defrost
Fan speed up
Fan speed down
Fan speed # (#: 1−7) (for best voice control, keep fan speed at 1 or 2)

∗ : Repeating these commands switches (toggles) the function between On and Off.

Temperature Commands
The system accepts these commands on most screens.
Temperature # degrees (#: 57 to 87 degrees F)
Temperature up
Temperature down
Temperature max hot (displays HI)
Temperature max cold (displays LO)
Temperature balance
Drive temperature # degrees (#: 57 to 87 degrees F)
Passenger temperature # degrees (#: 57 to 87 degrees F)
Drive vent temperature adjustment
Passenger vent temperature adjustment
Vent temperature up
Vent temperature down
Vent temperature max
Vent temperature minimum
Vent temperature normal

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

* : Repeating these commands switches (toggles) the function between On and Off.

NOTE: The commands for vent temperature settings are available on the climate control screen.

Audio System Commands
The system accepts these audio system commands on most screens.

There are no voice commands for XM radio.

Radio Commands
To control the radio system, say one of the following commands:
Audio on
Audio off
*Audio**
Radio on (or *Radio play*)
Radio off
*Radio**
Radio select FM1
Radio select FM2
Radio select AM
Radio # FM (#: frequency. Example *Radio 95.5 FM)*
Radio # AM (#: frequency. Example *Radio 1020 AM)*
Radio seek up
Radio seek down
Radio next station (same as Radio seek)
Radio preset # (#: 1−6)
Radio FM preset # (#: 1−6)
Radio FM1 preset # (#: 1−6)
Radio FM2 preset # (#: 1−6)
Radio AM preset # (#: 1−6)
*Radio auto select**
*Radio scan**

* : Repeating these commands switches (toggles) the function between On and Off.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Compass System (U.S. model without navigation system)

CD Commands
The system accepts these commands on most screens.
CD play
CD play disc # (#: 1−6)
CD play track # (#: 1−30)
CD play disc #1 track #2 (#1: 1−6, #2: 1−30)
CD skip forward
CD skip back
CD play next disc
CD play previous disc
*CD track random**
*CD track repeat**
*CD disc repeat**
*CD track scan**
*CD disk scan**
CD normal play (resumes "Play" from these commands: "CD track random," "CD track repeat," and "CD disc repeat")
CD track list
*CD folder random**
*CD folder repeat**
*CD folder scan**
CD folder list

*: Repeating these commands switches (toggles) the function between On and Off.

DVD Commands
The system accepts these commands on most screens.
DVD play
DVD play disc # (#: 1−6)
DVD play track # (#: 1−30)
DVD play disc #1 track #2 (#1: 1−6, #2: 1−30)
DVD skip forward
DVD skip back
DVD play next disc
DVD play previous disc
*DVD track random**
*DVD track repeat**
*DVD disc repeat**
*DVD track scan**
*DVD disc scan**
DVD normal play (resumes "Play" from these commands: "DVD track random," "DVD track repeat," "DVD disc repeat," "DVD folder random," and "DVD folder repeat")
DVD track list
DVD folder random
DVD folder repeat
DVD folder list

*: Repeating these commands switches (toggles) the function between On and Off.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Compass System (U.S. model without navigation system)

MP3/WMA Commands
The system accepts these commands on most screens.
MP3 play
MP3 play disc # (#: 1−6)
MP3 play track # (#: 1−30)
MP3 play disc #1 track #2 (#1: 1−6, #2: 1−30)
MP3 skip forward
MP3 skip back
MP3 play next disc
MP3 play previous disc
*MP3 track random**
*MP3 track repeat**
*MP3 disc repeat**
*MP3 track scan**
*MP3 disc scan**
MP3 normal play (resumes "Play" from these commands: "MP3 track random," "MP3 track repeat," "MP3 disc repeat," "MP3 folder random," and "MP3 folder repeat")
MP3 track list
*MP3 folder random**
*MP3 folder repeat**
MP3 folder list
WMA play
WMA play disc # (#: 1−6)
WMA play track # (#: 1−30)
WMA play disc #1 track #2 (#1: 1−6, #2: 1−30)
WMA skip forward
WMA skip back
WMA play next disc
WMA play previous disc
*WMA track random**
*WMA track repeat**
*WMA disc repeat**
*WMA track scan**
*WMA disc scan**
WMA normal play (resumes "Play" from these commands: "WMA track random," "WMA track repeat," "WMA disc repeat," "WMA folder random," and "WMA folder repeat")
WMA track list
*WMA folder random**
*WMA folder repeat**
WMA folder list

*: Repeating these commands switches (toggles) the function between On and Off.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Compass System (U.S. model without navigation system)

Main Menu Screen Commands
These are additional commands not found on the **Voice Commands Help** screen. Follow the voice prompts.

Voice command help (the system reads and lists all of the commands)
Calendar
Calculator
Trip computer

Set up Screen Commands
The system accepts these commands on the first setup screen. (For the second and third setup screens, simply say what is written on the screen, and follow the voice prompts)

Brightness up
Brightness down
Brightness minimum/min.
Brightness maximum/max.
Contrast up
Contrast down
Contrast minimum/min
Contrast maximum/max
Black level up
Black level down
Black level minimum/min
Black level maximum/max
Volume up
Volume down
Volume minimum/min.
Volume maximum/max.
Volume Off
Interface Dial feedback off
Interface Dial feedback auto
Interface Dial feedback on

On-Screen Commands
The system accepts over 100 on-screen commands. The only commands that must be chosen by the interface dial are listed below.

Next
Previous
Return
OK
Delete

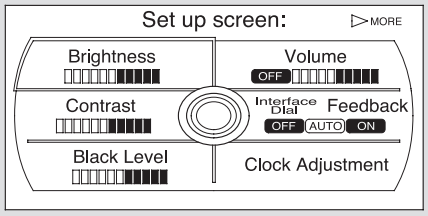
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Compass System (U.S. model without navigation system)

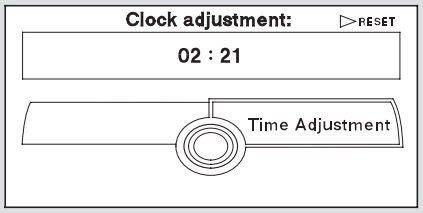
Setting the Clock

To set the clock, the ignition switch must be in the ACCESSORY (I) or ON (II) position, and either or both remotes must be linked.

Say “Set up” or press the SET UP button on the center console to display the Set up screen. Then move the interface dial to the right.



Select the **Clock Adjustment** by turning the interface knob to the right, then press the center of the interface selector.

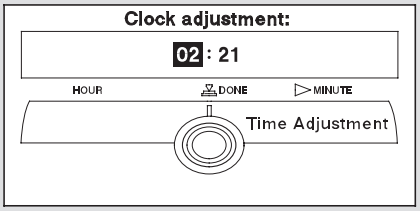


Select the **Time Adjustment**, then press the center of the interface selector. The display changes to the **Time Adjustment** screen for HOUR.

CONTINUED

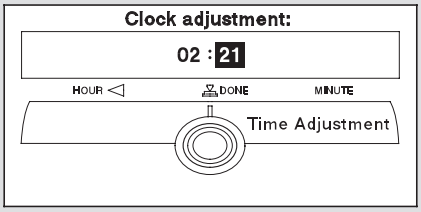
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Compass System (U.S. model without navigation system)



To adjust the hour, turn the interface knob, then press the center of the interface selector.

To adjust the minute, turn the interface knob to the right to display the adjustment screen for MINUTE.



Turn the interface knob to adjust the minute.

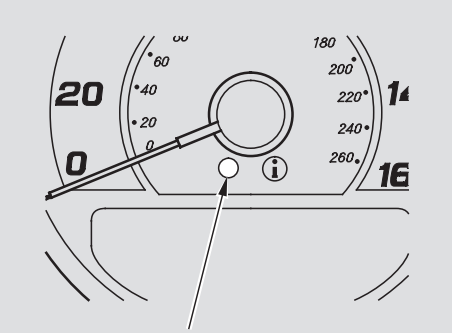
Press the center of the interface selector to enter the time. The screen will return to the **Clock adjustment** screen (see page 313).

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Security System

The security system helps to protect your vehicle and valuables from theft. The horn sounds and a combination of headlights, parking/side marker lights, and taillights flash if someone attempts to break into your vehicle or remove the radio. This alarm continues for 2 minutes, then the system resets. To reset an alarming system before the 2 minutes have elapsed, unlock either front door with the remote or the built-in key.

The security system automatically sets 15 seconds after you lock the doors, close the hood, and close the trunk. For the system to activate, you must lock the doors from the outside with the remote, built-in key, lock tab, or door lock switch. The security system indicator on the instrument panel starts blinking immediately to show you the system is setting itself.



SECURITY SYSTEM INDICATOR

Once the security system is set, opening any door or the hood without using the built-in key or the remote will cause it to sound. It also sounds if the radio is removed from the dashboard or the audio system wiring is cut.

With the system set, you can still open the trunk with the remote without triggering the alarm. The alarm will sound if the trunk lock is forced, or the trunk is opened with the trunk release button on the driver's door or the emergency trunk opener.

The security system will not set if the hood, trunk, or any door is not fully closed. If the system will not set, check the Door and Trunk Open monitor on the instrument panel (see page 13) to see if the doors and trunk are fully closed. Since it is not part of the monitor display, manually check the hood.

Do not attempt to alter this system or add other devices to it.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Cruise Control

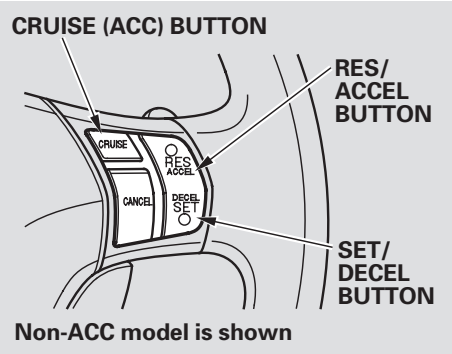
Cruise control allows you to maintain a set speed above 25 mph (40 km/h) without keeping your foot on the accelerator pedal. It should be used for cruising on straight, open highways. It is not recommended for city driving, winding roads, slippery roads, heavy rain, or bad weather.

⚠ WARNING

Improper use of the cruise control can lead to a crash.

Use the cruise control only when traveling on open highways in good weather.

Using Cruise Control



Non-ACC model is shown

1. Push in the CRUISE button or the ACC button (models with adaptive cruise control) on the steering wheel. The CRUISE MAIN or green ACC indicator (models with ACC) indicator on the instrument panel comes on.

   On models with adaptive cruise control
   To switch from ACC to cruise control, press the distance button on the steering wheel, and hold it for 1 second (see page 333).

2. Accelerate to the desired cruising speed above 25 mph (40 km/h).

3. Press and release the SET/ DECEL button on the steering wheel. The CRUISE CONTROL icon appears on the multi-information display to show the system is now activated.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Cruise control may not hold the set speed when you are going up and down hills. If your speed increases going down a hill, use the brakes to slow down. This will cancel cruise control. On models with adaptive cruise control (ACC), this also causes the cruise control icon on the multi-information display to go off and the cruise mode icon to come on. To resume the set speed, press the RES/ACCEL button. The CRUISE CONTROL icon on the multi-information display will come back on.

Changing the Set Speed

You can increase the set cruising speed in any of these ways:

- Press and hold the RES/ACCEL button. When you reach the desired cruising speed, release the button.
- Push on the accelerator pedal. Accelerate to the desired cruising speed, then press the SET/DECEL button.
- To increase your speed in very small amounts, tap the RES/ACCEL button. Each time you do this, the vehicle speeds up about 1 mph (1.6 km/h).

You can decrease the set cruising speed in any of these ways:

- Press and hold the SET/DECEL button. Release the button when you reach the desired speed.
- To slow down in very small amounts, tap the SET/DECEL button. Each time you do this, your vehicle will slow down about 1 mph (1.6 km/h).
- Tap the brake pedal lightly with your foot. The CRUISE CONTROL icon on the multi-information display will go out. When the vehicle slows to the desired speed, press the SET/DECEL button.

CONTINUED

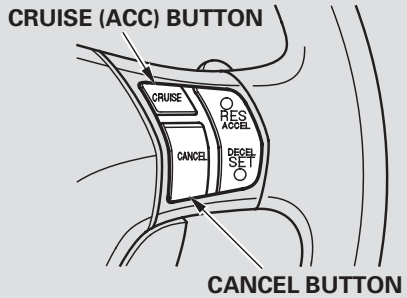
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Cruise Control

Even with cruise control on, you can still use the accelerator pedal to speed up for passing. After completing the pass, take your foot off the accelerator pedal. The vehicle will return to the set cruising speed.

Resting your foot on the brake pedal causes cruise control to cancel.

Canceling Cruise Control



Non-ACC model is shown

You can cancel cruise control in any of these ways:

- Tap the brake pedal.
- Push the CANCEL button on the steering wheel.
- Push the CRUISE (ACC) button.

Resuming the Set Speed

When you push the CANCEL button or tap the brake pedal, the system remembers the previously set speed. To return to that speed, accelerate to above 25 mph (40 km/h), then press and release the RES/ACCEL button. The CRUISE CONTROL [ACC (green)] indicator comes on. The vehicle accelerates to the same speed as before.

Pressing the CRUISE (ACC) button turns the system completely off and erases the previous cruising speed.

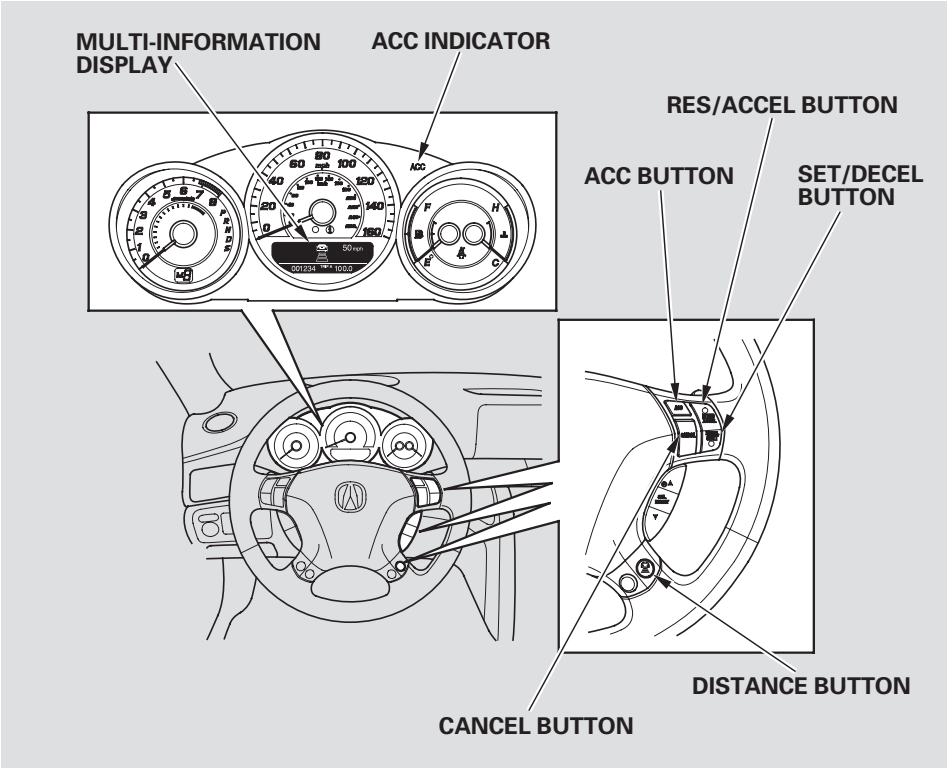
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

ACC Components

If equipped

Adaptive cruise control (ACC) consists of a radar sensor in the front grille, the ACC buttons on the steering wheel, and the ACC functions of the multi-information display.

The radar sensor for ACC is shared with the collision mitigation brake system (CMBS). For more information on the radar sensor, see page 414 . For more information on CMBS, see page 413 .



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)

Overview
Adaptive cruise control (ACC) allows you to maintain a set speed and keep the vehicle ahead of you and your vehicle at a safe distance without having to use the accelerator pedal or the brake pedal.

When the vehicle ahead of you slows down or speeds up, ACC senses the change in distance and compensates by accelerating or braking your vehicle to reach the cruising speed you previously set. The distance between vehicles is based on your speed: the faster you go, the longer the distance will be; the slower you go, the shorter it will be.

If the vehicle ahead of you slows down suddenly or another vehicle cuts in front of your vehicle, ACC alerts you by sounding a beeper and displaying a message on the multi-information display.
The ACC radar sensor in the front grille can detect and monitor the distance of a vehicle up to 328 feet (100 meters) ahead of your vehicle. For more information on the radar sensor, see page 414 .

Important Safety Precautions
As with any system, there are limits to ACC. Inappropriate use of ACC can result in a serious accident. Use the brake pedal whenever necessary, and always keep a safe distance between your vehicle and other vehicles.

Do not use ACC under these conditions:
- In poor visibility.
- In heavy traffic.
- When you must slow down and speed up repeatedly.
- On winding roads.
- When you enter a toll gate, interchange, service area, parking area, etc. In these areas, there is no vehicle ahead of you, and ACC would still try to accelerate to your set speed.
- In bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.)
- On a slippery road (for example a road covered with ice or snow).

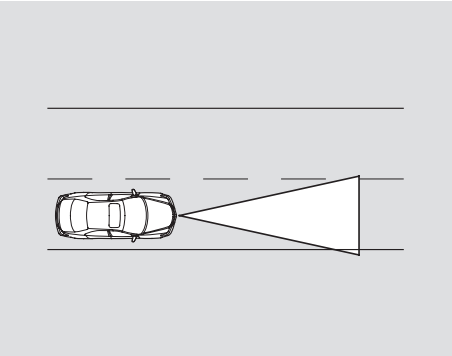
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

⚠WARNING

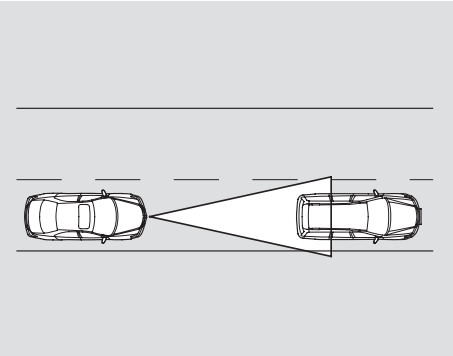
Improper use of ACC can lead to a crash.

Use ACC only when traveling on open highways in good weather.

Operating Characteristics



When there is no vehicle ahead within ACC range
Your vehicle will maintain a set cruising speed.



When a vehicle ahead is within ACC range and going slower than your set speed
If the vehicle ahead of you is going slower than your set speed, your vehicle will slow down to the speed of that vehicle. Your vehicle will then follow at a constant distance until the vehicle ahead changes speed again.

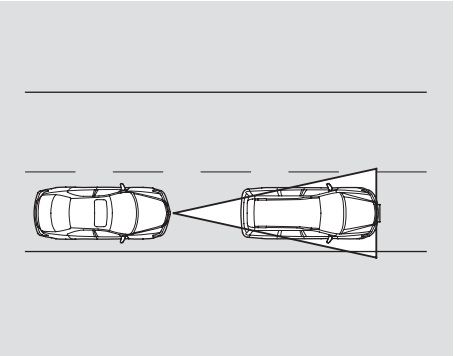
CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

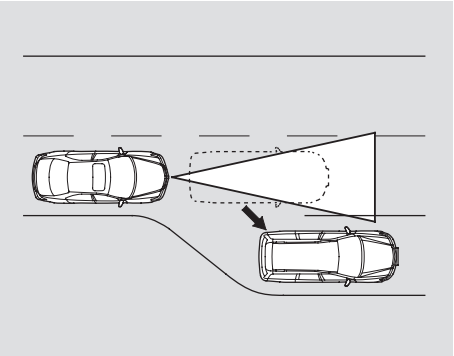
Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)

If the vehicle ahead of you slows down abruptly, or if another vehicle cuts in front of you, a beeper sounds and a message appears on the multi-information display to warn you.

In this case, decelerate your vehicle by pressing the brake pedal, and keep an appropriate distance from the vehicle ahead.



When a vehicle ahead is within ACC range and going at a steady speed
Your vehicle follows the vehicle ahead of it, keeping a constant distance. ACC will not keep your vehicle at a constant distance if the vehicle ahead of you goes out of range of your set speed.



If the vehicle ahead of you slows down and changes lanes, ACC no longer tracks it. Your vehicle will then return to your set speed.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

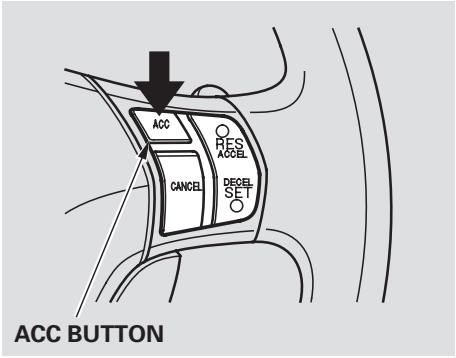
Limitations

- ACC does not work below 25 mph (40 km/h). It cannot bring your vehicle to a complete stop.
- ACC will not sound a beeper or display a message on the multi-information display to warn you of vehicles going slower than 13 mph (20 km/h) or vehicles that are parked. In these cases, it is up to you to maintain a safe distance by using the brake pedal.
- ACC may not recognize motorcycles or other small vehicles ahead of your vehicle.
- ACC may react to vehicles beside you or even a building beside you by momentarily applying the brakes or sounding a beeper under conditions such as a sudden curve or narrowing of the road, an abrupt movement of the steering wheel, or if you are in an unusual position within your lane.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

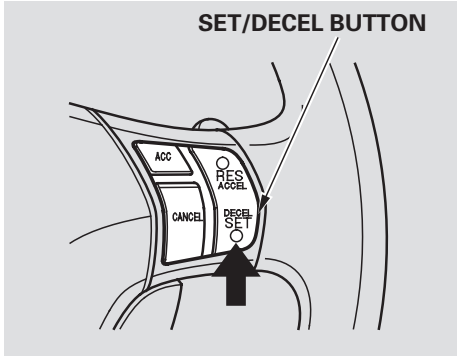
Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)

Using the ACC



1. Push the ACC button on the steering wheel. The ACC indicator on the instrument panel comes on, and "ACC" is shown on the multi-information display.

2. Accelerate to the desired speed above 25 mph (40 km/h).

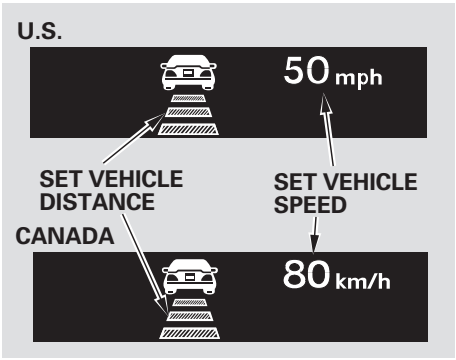


3. Press and release the SET/DECEL button on the steering wheel, then release the accelerator pedal.

If you press the SET/DECEL button when the vehicle speed is below 25 mph (40 km/h), you will hear a beep about 1 second. This means ACC is not activated, and you cannot set your speed.

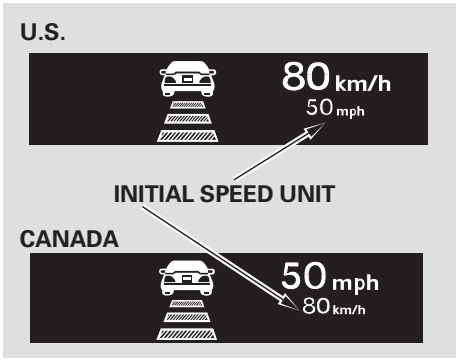
When your speed reaches 25 mph (40 km/h), ACC goes into wait mode, and "ACC" is shown on the multi-information display.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



When the speed is set, it is shown along with a vehicle icon and distance bars on the multi-information display.
Refer to page 328 for how to set and change the set distance between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead of you.

To change the speed unit measurement from mph to km/h, see page 92 .

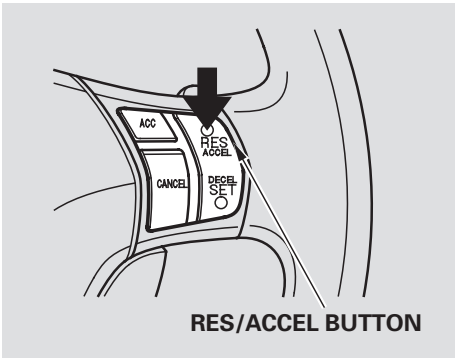


If you change the speed unit measurement from the factory default setting, the initial speed unit measurement is shown under the current unit.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)

Increasing the Set Speed



RES/ACCEL BUTTON

The set speed can be increased by using the RES/ACCEL button or the accelerator pedal.

To increase the set speed with the RES/ACCEL button, do this:

Press and hold the RES/ACCEL button. The vehicle will accelerate. When you reach the speed you want, release the button.

To increase your speed in small amounts, tap the RES/ACCEL button repeatedly. Each time you do this, your vehicle will speed up about 1 mph (1 km/h).

While the vehicle accelerates to the set speed, the set speed on the multi-information display will flash.

If a vehicle ahead of you is driving at a slower speed than the speed you want to set, your vehicle will not accelerate; it will keep some distance between your vehicles.

To increase the set speed with the accelerator pedal, do this:

Press the accelerator pedal to increase to the speed you want, then press the SET/DECEL button. The set speed will be shown on the multi-information display. If you do not press the SET/DECEL button, your vehicle will return to the previously set speed.

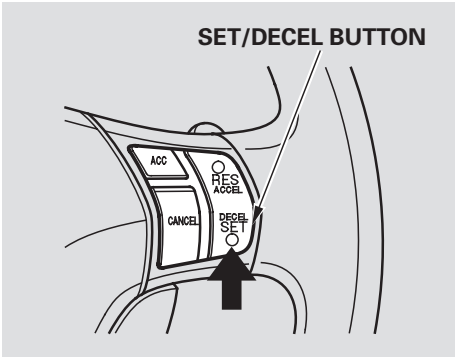
The ACC beeper will not sound while you press the accelerator pedal, no matter how close you get to the vehicle ahead of you.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Decreasing the Set Speed

The set speed can be decreased using the SET/DECEL button or the brake pedal.

To decrease the set speed with the SET/DECEL button, do this:



Press and hold the SET/DECEL button. Release the button when you reach the speed you want.

To slow down in small amounts, tap the SET/DECEL button repeatedly. Each time you do this, your vehicle slows down about 1 mph (1 km/h).

The set cruising speed will be shown on the multi-information display.

On a steep downhill, the vehicle speed may exceed the set cruising speed.

To decrease the set speed with the brake pedal, do this:

Tap the brake pedal. When the vehicle slows down to the speed you want, press the SET/DECEL button. The set speed will be shown on the multi-information display. If you use the brake pedal to decrease speed, and then press the RES/ACCEL button, your vehicle will return to the previously set speed.

Detecting a Vehicle Ahead of You

U.S.

CANADA

When the system detects a vehicle ahead of you, a beeper sounds once and a solid-line vehicle icon appears on the multi-information display.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

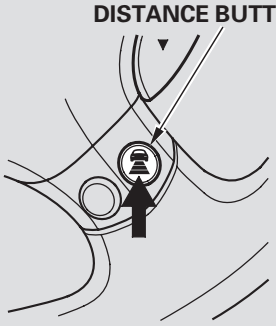
Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)

U.S.

CANADA

When that vehicle changes lanes or goes out of ACC range, a beeper sounds once. If there is no vehicle ahead of you within ACC range, a dotted-line vehicle icon will be on the multi-information display.
To set the ACC beeper on or off, see page 90.

Changing Vehicle Distance



With ACC on, the distance between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead of you is controlled and maintained. You can change this distance to one of three ranges: long, middle, or short.

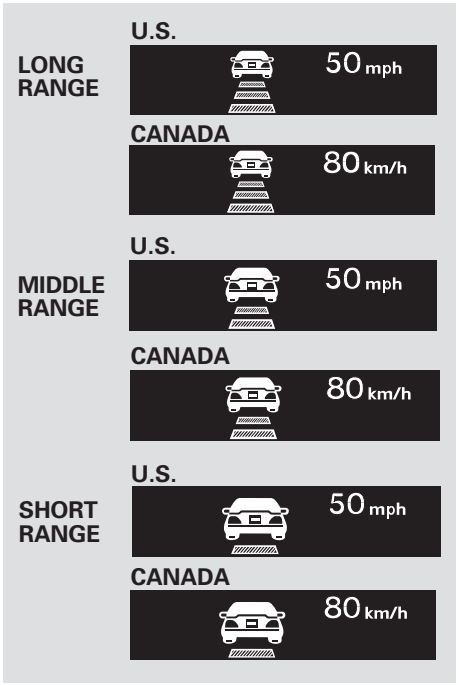
To change the range, press the DISTANCE button. Each time you press the button, the range changes from Long, to Middle, and then to Short.

The higher your vehicle speed is, the longer the distance between the vehicle in front will be set as shown below.

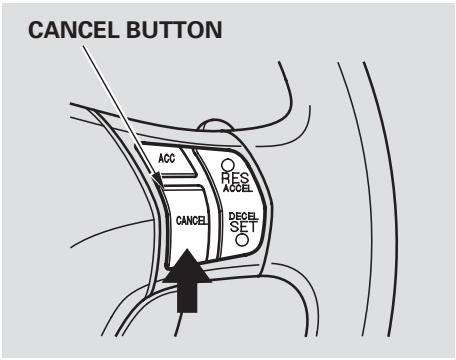
Vehicle Distance \ Speed	50 mph (80 km/h)	65 mph (104 km/h)
Long	154 feet 47 meters	200 feet 61 meters
Middle	111 feet 34 meters	173 feet 42 meters
Short	85 feet 26 meters	101 feet 31 meters

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

The distance you select is also shown on the multi-information display.



Canceling the ACC



ACC is canceled whenever you do any of these actions:

- Push the CANCEL button on the steering wheel.
- Tap the brake pedal.
- Press the ACC button. The ACC indicator in the instrument panel goes off.

When you push the CANCEL button or tap the brake pedal to cancel ACC, the set cruising speed stays in memory. When you turn on ACC again, the speed is shown on the multi-information display. To return to that speed, accelerate to over 25 mph (40 km/h), then press the RES/ACCEL button.

If you cancel ACC by pressing the ACC button, the previously set cruising speed is erased from memory.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)

Automatic ACC Cancellation
When ACC is automatically canceled, the beeper sounds about 1 second, and an ACC OFF message appears on the multi-information display for 3 seconds.

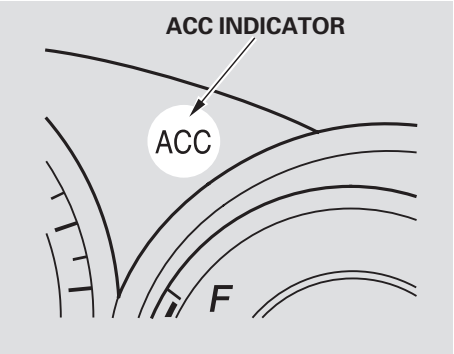
Any of these conditions may cause ACC to cancel:

- The vehicle speed decreases below 22 mph (35 km/h).
- Poor weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.)
- When the radar sensor in the front grille gets dirty.
- The vehicle ahead of you cannot be detected.
- An abnormal tire condition is detected, or the tires are skidding.
- Driving on a mountainous road, or driving off road for extended periods.
- Abrupt steering wheel movement.
- When the ABS or VSA is activated.
- When the VSA indicator comes on.

If ACC is cancelled by any these conditions, wait until the condition improves, then press the RES/ ACCEL button to restore ACC. When you do this, the vehicle will resume its set cruising speed.

If you turn the ignition switch to the ACCESSORY (I) or LOCK (0) position after ACC was automatically cancelled, the set speed is erased, and you must enter it again (see page 324).

ACC Indicator



This indicator normally comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position. If it comes on at any other time, there is a problem in the ACC system. If this happens, take the vehicle to your dealer to have it checked.

The ACC system cannot be used while this indicator is on.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Messages on the Multi-Information Display

The multi-information display shows various messages related to ACC. For a description of each ACC message you may see, refer to the chart on this and the following page.

Message	Description
	ACC is on.
U.S. **CANADA** 	ACC detects a vehicle ahead of you. You will hear a beep when the vehicle moves out of the ACC radar sensor's range.
U.S. **CANADA** 	ACC does not detect a vehicle ahead of you. You will hear a beep when ACC detects a vehicle ahead of you.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

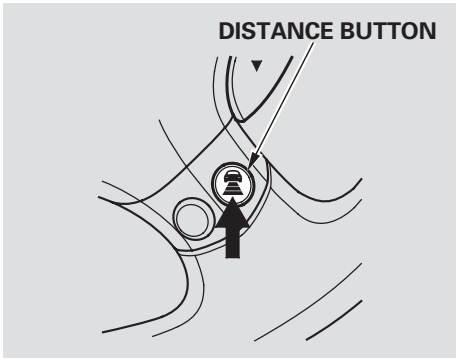
Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)

Message	Description
	ACC has automatically cancelled because its radar sensor in the front grill is dirty. You will hear a beep about 1 second.
	ACC has automatically cancelled because of bad weather or other conditions. You will hear a beep about 1 second.

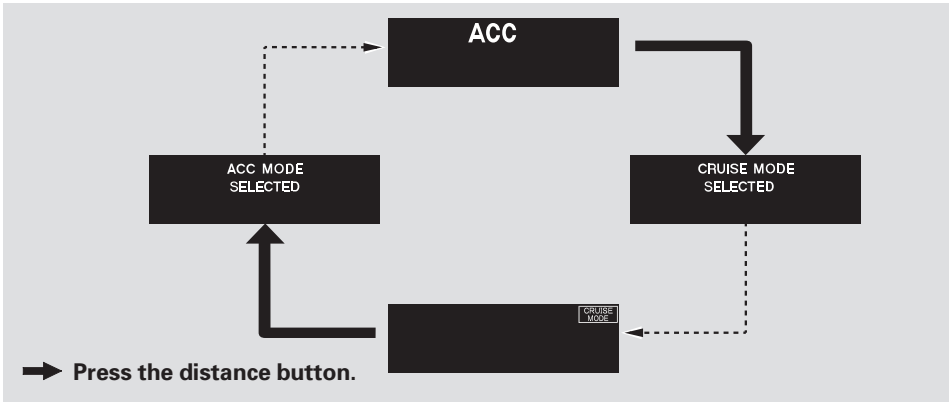
Message	Description
	Apply the brakes immediately. Your vehicle is too close to the vehicle ahead of it. You will hear a continuous beep.
	ACC needs to be checked. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Switching to Cruise Control



To switch from ACC to cruise control, press the distance button on the steering wheel, and hold it for 1 second.



When you press the button, you will see CRUISE MODE SELECTED on the multi-information display for 2 seconds. To switch back to ACC, press and hold the distance button again for 1 second.

When the cruise control is selected, ACC does not sound a beeper or display a message on the multi-information display. Make sure to keep a safe distance from the vehicle ahead of you.

Always be aware which mode is selected.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

HomeLink® Universal Transceiver

The HomeLink® Universal Transceiver built into your vehicle can be programmed to operate up to three remote controlled devices around your home, such as garage doors, lighting, or home security systems.

General Safety Information
Before programming your HomeLink to operate a garage door opener, confirm that the opener has an external entrapment protection system, such as an "electronic eye," or other safety and reverse stop features.

If your garage door was manufactured before April 1, 1982, you may not be able to program HomeLink to operate it. These units do not have safety features that cause the motor to stop and reverse it if an obstacle is detected during closing, increasing the risk of injury. Do not use HomeLink with any garage door opener that lacks safety stop and reverse features.

Units manufactured between April 1, 1982 and January 1, 1993 may be equipped with safety stop and reverse features. If your unit does not have an external entrapment protection system, an easy test to confirm the function and performance of the safety stop and reverse feature is to lay a 2 × 4 under the closing door. The door should stop and reverse upon contacting the piece of wood.
As an additional safety feature, garage door openers manufactured after January 1, 1993 are required to have external entrapment protection systems, such as an electronic eye, which detect an object obstructing the door.

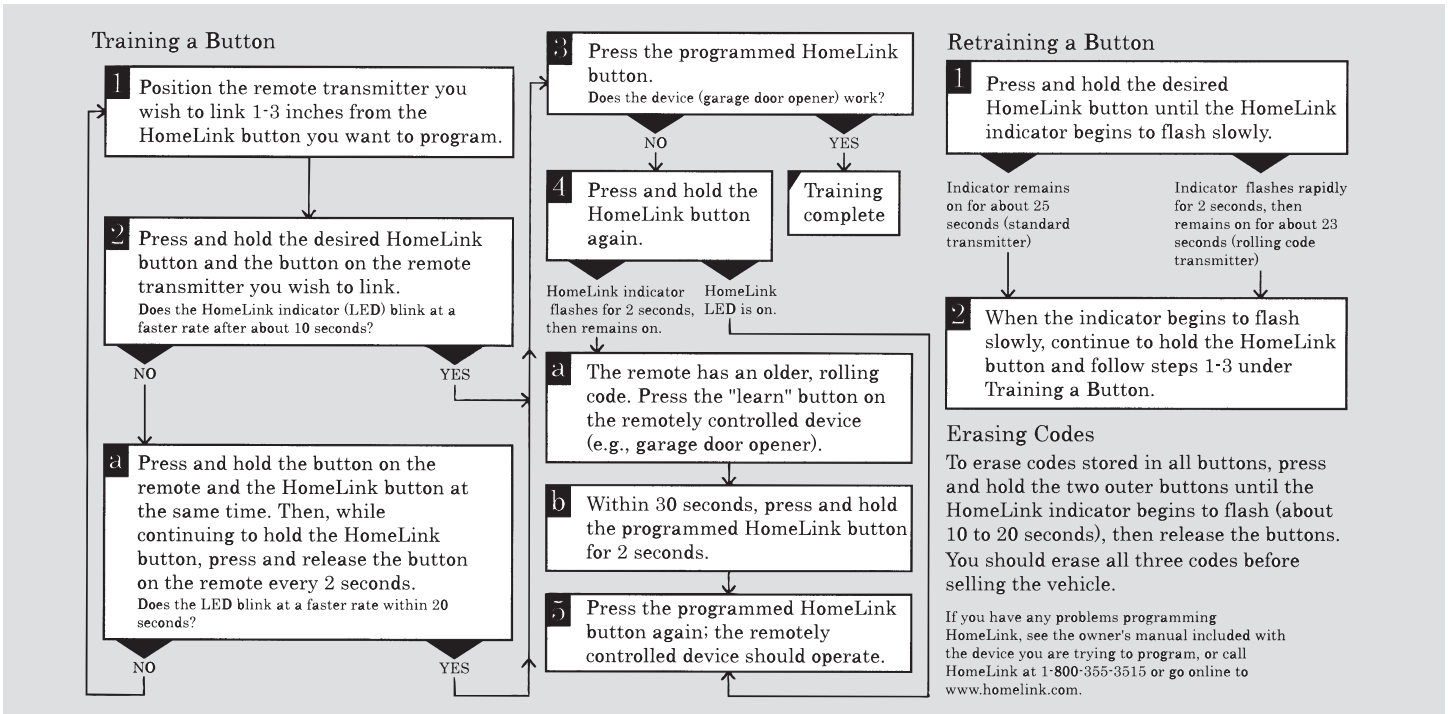
Important Safety Precautions
Refer to the safety information that came with your garage door opener to test that the safety features are functioning properly. If you do not have this information, contact the manufacturer of the equipment.
Before programming HomeLink to a garage door or gate opener, make sure that people and objects are out of the way of the device to prevent potential injury or damage.
When programming a garage door opener, park just outside the garage.

Training HomeLink
Before you begin — If you just received your vehicle and have not trained any of the buttons in HomeLink before, you should erase any previously learned codes before training the first button. To do this, press and hold the two outside buttons on the HomeLink transceiver for about 10—20 seconds, until the red indicator flashes. Release the buttons, then proceed to step 1.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

HomeLink® Universal Transceiver

If you are training the second or third buttons, go directly to step 1.


Training a Button
1 Position the remote transmitter you wish to link 1-3 inches from the HomeLink button you want to program.
2 Press and hold the desired HomeLink button and the button on the remote transmitter you wish to link.
Does the HomeLink indicator (LED) blink at a faster rate after about 10 seconds?
NO
YES
a Press and hold the button on the remote and the HomeLink button at the same time. Then, while continuing to hold the HomeLink button, press and release the button on the remote every 2 seconds.
Does the LED blink at a faster rate within 20 seconds?
NO
YES
3 Press the programmed HomeLink button.
Does the device (garage door opener) work?
NO
YES
4 Press and hold the HomeLink button again.
Training complete
HomeLink indicator flashes for 2 seconds, then remains on.
HomeLink LED is on.
a The remote has an older, rolling code. Press the "learn" button on the remotely controlled device (e.g., garage door opener).
b Within 30 seconds, press and hold the programmed HomeLink button for 2 seconds.
5 Press the programmed HomeLink button again; the remotely controlled device should operate.
Retraining a Button
1 Press and hold the desired HomeLink button until the HomeLink indicator begins to flash slowly.
Indicator remains on for about 25 seconds (standard transmitter)
Indicator flashes rapidly for 2 seconds, then remains on for about 23 seconds (rolling code transmitter)
2 When the indicator begins to flash slowly, continue to hold the HomeLink button and follow steps 1-3 under Training a Button.
Erasing Codes
To erase codes stored in all buttons, press and hold the two outer buttons until the HomeLink indicator begins to flash (about 10 to 20 seconds), then release the buttons. You should erase all three codes before selling the vehicle.
If you have any problems programming HomeLink, see the owner's manual included with the device you are trying to program, or call HomeLink at 1-800-355-3515 or go online to www.homelink.com.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

HomeLink® Universal Transceiver

HomeLink® is a registered trademark of Johnson Controls, Inc.

As required by the FCC:
This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

This device complies with Industry Canada Standard RSS-210.
Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

AcuraLink® (U.S. models only)

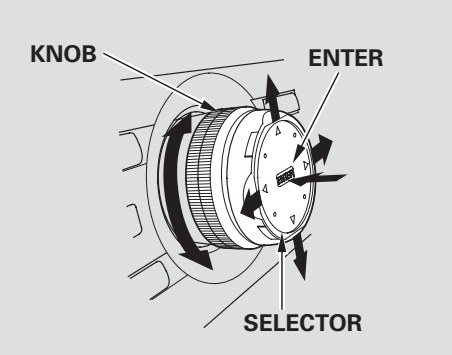
RL Technology Package models

AcuraLink® enhances your ownership experience by providing a direct communication link between your vehicle and the Acura Server. Working through the XM radio satellite, AcuraLink works in conjunction with the navigation system, *Bluetooth*® HandsFreeLink® (HFL), and audio system in your vehicle. It displays and receives several kinds of messages, including:

- Operating tips and information on your vehicle's features.
- Maintenance information to keep your vehicle in top condition.
- Diagnostic information to provide information about any problems with your vehicle.
- Important recall and safety information.

Interface Dial

Most AcuraLink functions are controlled by the interface dial. The interface dial has two parts, a knob and a selector.



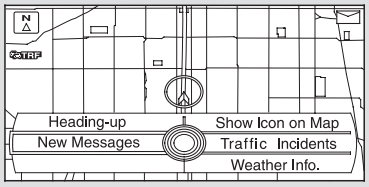
The knob turns left and right. Use it to make selections or adjustments to a list or menu on the screen.

The selector can be pushed left, right, up, down, and in. Use the selector to scroll through lists, to select menus, and to highlight menu items. When you make a selection, push the center of the selector (ENTER) to go to that selection.

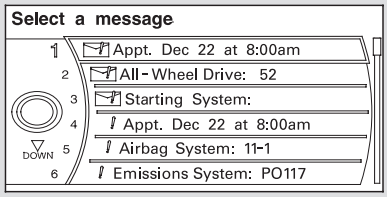
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

AcuraLink® (U.S. models only)

Reading Messages
If you have new messages, an envelope icon appears in the top right corner of the navigation screen.



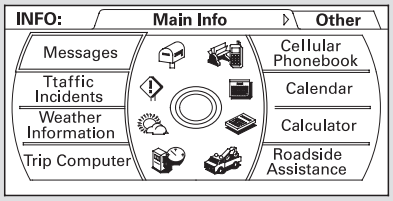
To open a message:
Press ENTER on the interface selector, then select New Message from the navigation system map menu.



A list of all messages will be shown. New messages will be at the top. Select the message you want to read by pressing ENTER.

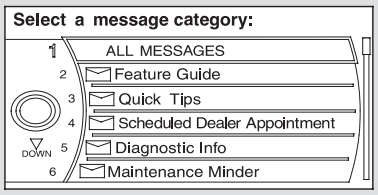
A red exclamation will be marked on an envelope icon with an important message.

To view previously read messages:



Press the INFO button. The information screen will be shown.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



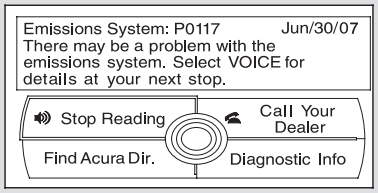
Select “Messages”, then select a message category. Select the message you want to read and press ENTER.

Unread messages have a closed envelope icon next to them. The icon disappears when it has already been read.

NOTE: Only Diagnostic appear on messages screen while driving. They indicate your vehicle has a problem that may need immediate attention (see page 341).

After purchasing your vehicle, messages may not appear immediately.
Your dealer has to register the vehicle identification before you can receive messages. This can take several days to process.

Message Options


Emissions System: P0117 Jun/30/07
There may be a problem with the emissions system. Select VOICE for details at your next stop.
Stop Reading
Call Your Dealer
Find Acura Dir.
Diagnostic Info

When you open a message, you can read a summary of it, and then choose one of several options. If an option is not available for a message, that option will not be highlighted.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

AcuraLink® (U.S. models only)

Delete — Select this option to delete the current message.

Voice — Select this option to hear a voice read the entire message. This gives you more information than the screen can display at one time. When you select the Voice option, it changes to a Stop Reading option. Select the option again to stop the voice.

Call — Select this option to call a phone number embedded in the message. When you select **Call**, the *Bluetooth*® HandsFreeLink® (HFL) dials the number for you.

To make a call, your *Bluetooth*® compatible phone must be paired to the vehicle's HandsFreeLink system, powered on, and located within the vehicle (see page 360).

Find Nearest Dealer — Select this option to find the nearest Acura dealer using the navigation system.

Call Your Dealer — Select this option to call the Acura dealer you purchased your vehicle from. AcuraLink also directs you to this dealer so you can schedule a maintenance appointment or receive information about a message. If your assigned servicing dealer changes, AcuraLink will reset to call that dealer.

Diagnostic Info — Select this option to get more information about the current diagnostic message. To use this option, your cellphone must be paired with the HFL. In addition, the paired phone must have a compatible data service and be set up with the AcuraLink system to make a data connection. Access the handsfreelink.com website to find out which data services are currently compatible with AcuraLink.

Message Preferences

To set your AcuraLink preferences (the types of messages you want to receive, if any), visit the My Acura website at *www.owners.acura.com*, and choose what you would like to receive. If you do not have internet access, call Acura Client Services at (800) 382-2238; they can set your message preferences for you.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Deleting Messages

NOTE: Diagnostic info and recall/campaign messages can only be deleted by your dealer.

To delete a single message:

- Press the INFO button to bring up the Information screen.
- Scroll to the Messages option, then select it by pressing ENTER on the interface selector.
- Select the message category that contains the message you want to delete.
- Use the interface knob to scroll up or down to the message title you want to delete, and select it by pressing ENTER on the interface selector.
- Scroll to Delete with the interface knob, and select it by pressing ENTER on the interface selector.

To delete all messages:

NOTE: The Delete All Messages command does not apply to Diagnostic Info and Recall messages. They can only be deleted by your dealer.

- Press the SETUP button to view the setup screen.
- Select Other by pushing the interface selector to the right.
- Use the interface knob to scroll to the AcuraLink/Messages option, and select it by pressing ENTER on the interface selector.
- Scroll to the Delete Messages option, and select it by pressing ENTER on the interface selector.
- Scroll to the category with the messages you want to delete, and select the category by pressing ENTER on the interface selector.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

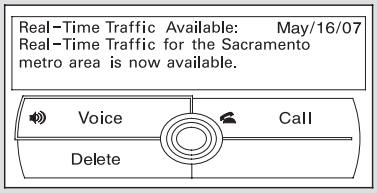
AcuraLink® (U.S. models only)

Message Categories

There are six message categories in AcuraLink: Quick Tips, Feature Guide, Maintenance Minder, Recalls/Campaigns, Diagnostic Info, and Scheduled Dealer Appointment. The system can store up to 255 messages.

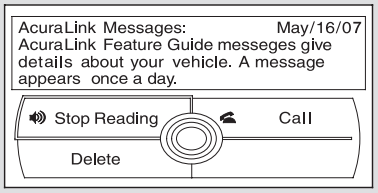
Message categories can be added, revised, or deleted through broadcast messages from Acura.

Quick Tips



These messages, based on updated vehicle information and comments from other RL owners, supplement your Owner's Manual. They provide you with relevant information for a safe and enjoyable ownership experience. For additional information, call Acura Client Services directly through the HFL.

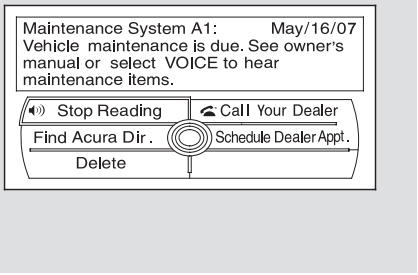
Feature Guide


AcuraLink Messages: May/16/07
AcuraLink Feature Guide messeges give details about your vehicle. A message appears once a day.
Stop Reading
Call
Delete

During the first 90 days of ownership, a number of messages appears each day. These messages help you to use and understand the features of your vehicle.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Maintenance Minder


Maintenance System A1: May/16/07
Vehicle maintenance is due. See owner's manual or select VOICE to hear maintenance items.
Stop Reading
Call Your Dealer
Find Acura Dir.
Schedule Dealer Appt.
Delete

These messages provide detailed information about the service needed for your vehicle. When a maintenance message appears on the multi-information display, a list of needed maintenance items is provided through an AcuraLink message. These messages tell you the exact maintenance needed, helping you to avoid unnecessary maintenance costs.

You can use the following message options:

- Make an appointment from the schedule at the dealer.
- Reschedule the appointment with the dealer.
- Call your dealer for an appointment.
- Find the nearest dealer.

Automated Appointment

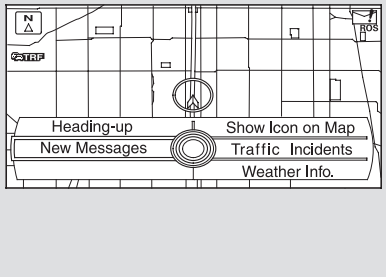
You can make an appointment with your dealer through the AcuraLink when you receive a maintenance minder message.

To use the automated appointment function, you should visit the My Acura website at *www.owners.acura.com*, register some required settings, and complete the Phone-Data Connection set-up (see page 352). Your *Bluetooth*® compatible phone should also be paired and linked to your vehicle's *Bluetooth*® HFL (see page 354).

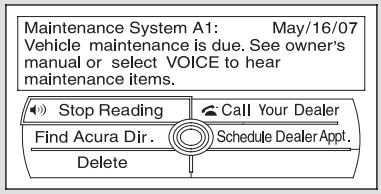
CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

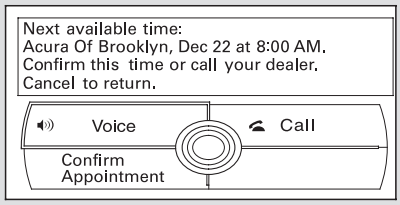
AcuraLink® (U.S. models only)



When you see the maintenance minder message on the multi-information display, you will also receive a message in the navigation screen. To open the message, press ENTER. Select “New Messages,” then press ENTER. You will see the list of all messages. The most recent message is listed at the top.

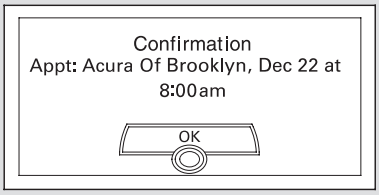

Maintenance System A1: May/16/07
Vehicle maintenance is due. See owner's manual or select VOICE to hear maintenance items.
Stop Reading
Call Your Dealer
Find Acura Dir.
Schedule Dealer Appt.
Delete

Select the received message, then press ENTER. You will see the message as shown. To make an appointment, select “Schedule Dealer Appt.” then press ENTER.



The system will automatically connect to the Acura server, then show you an appropriate appointment date and time on the navigation screen. If you accept this appointment, select “Confirm Appointment,” then press ENTER.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

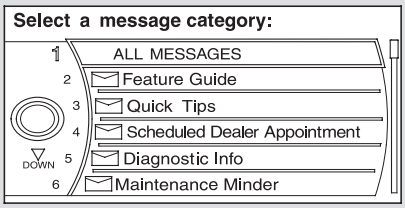


The confirmation message will be displayed on the screen. Make sure to confirm the appointment date, time and dealer. If it is OK, press ENTER.

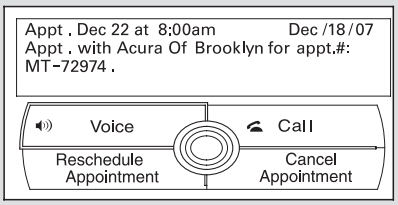
If you want to change or reschedule the appointment date, select "Cancel," then press ENTER.

Scheduled Dealer Appointment

To reschedule the appointment:



Press the INFO button to go to the information screen. Select "Messages," then select "Scheduled Dealer Appointment" from the message category list. Then press ENTER.



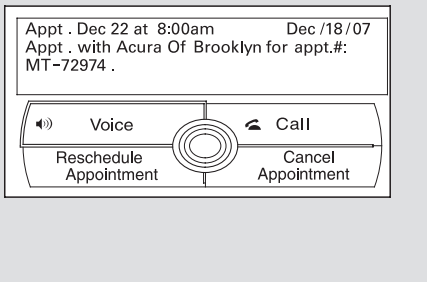
You will see the screen to reschedule as shown. To make an appointment, select "Reschedule Appointment," then press ENTER.
The system will automatically connect to the Acura server, then show you a new appointment date and time on the navigation screen. If you accept this appointment, select "Confirm Appointment," then press ENTER.

CONTINUED

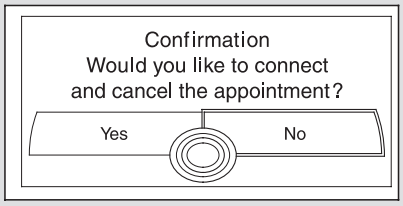
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

AcuraLink® (U.S. models only)

To cancel the appointment:



Select “Messages” on the information screen, then press ENTER. Select “Scheduled Dealer Appointment” from the message category list. Then press ENTER. To cancel the appointment, select “Cancel Appointment,” then press ENTER.



The system will request you to confirm the cancel on the navigation screen. To cancel the appointment, select “YES,” then press ENTER. If you select “NO,” the screen goes back to the previous message display.

The system will automatically connect to the Acura server, then show you the confirmation on the navigation screen. If you accept the cancel, press ENTER.

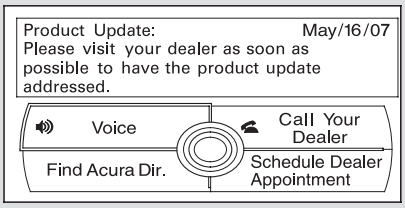
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

If you select the cancel appointment, you cannot try to reschedule the appointment. If you want to change or reschedule the appointment date, call your dealer directly with HFL.

Using automated appointment, your registered dealer through My Acura is automatically selected. If you want to select another dealer, such as in case of an emergency, find the nearest dealer and call the dealer directly with HFL.

When a maintenance appointment is due soon, you will also receive an appointment reminder message.

Recall/Campaigns


Product Update: May/16/07
Please visit your dealer as soon as possible to have the product update addressed.
Voice
Call Your Dealer
Find Acura Dir.
Schedule Dealer Appointment

If your vehicle is affected by a recall or other important safety information, a letter will be mailed to you about the issue and how to fix it. If you don't get your vehicle fixed, you will also receive a reminder message through AcuraLink. You can then use the message options to call your dealer for an appointment or to find the nearest dealer.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

AcuraLink® (U.S. models only)

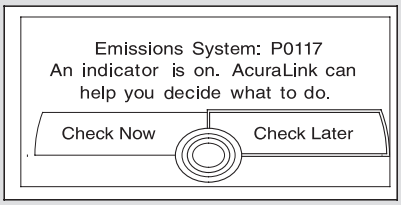
For this reason, it is important that we retain your current phone number. Please update your information using My Acura at *www.owners.acura.com.*

Diagnostic Info

When an indicator comes on or a message is displayed on the Multi-Information Display (MID), AcuraLink can provide information about the cause of the indicator or message and the recommended action to address it. This helps you handle the problem as it occurs, preventing or limiting costly repairs.

The AcuraLink system cannot determine some mechanical problems (such as squeaks or rattles) that are not triggered by the diagnostic indicator monitors.

For more information on the instrument panel indicators, see page 61.



When any indicator comes on or a message is displayed on the MID, AcuraLink immediately notifies you with the message, “An indicator is on. AcuraLink can help you decide what to do.”

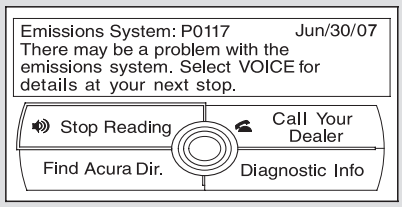
If you do not want the information right away, select the Check Later option.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

If you want the information now, select the Check Now option. (If the navigation screen is not active, you must select OK from the navigation disclaimer screen before you can check the information.)

Depending on the severity of the problem, the message will let you know if you should see your dealer immediately or if you can wait until a later date.

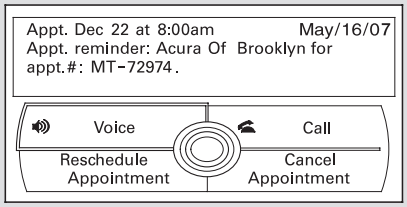
You can then use the message options to call your dealer for an appointment or to find the nearest dealer.


Emissions System: P0117 Jun/30/07
There may be a problem with the emissions system. Select VOICE for details at your next stop.
Stop Reading
Call Your Dealer
Find Acura Dir.
Diagnostic Info

When viewing a diagnostic info message through the INFO menu, you can use the Diagnostic Info option to connect to the Acura server and retrieve the latest information regarding the problem.

NOTE: There may not be any additional information, depending on the time elapsed since the previous time you retrieved the information from the Acura server.

Reminder Message



When you make an appointment through My Acura's online Schedule Service Appointment, you can be reminded in advance about that appointment through AcuraLink.

If you need to reschedule or cancel the appointment, see page 345.

CONTINUED

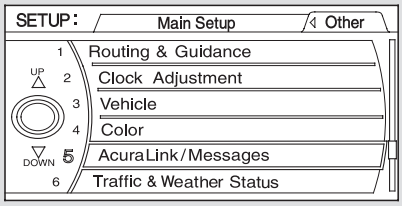
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

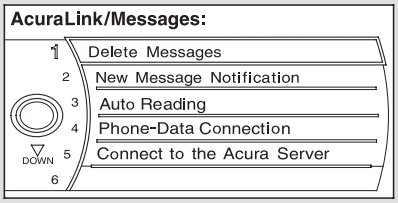
AcuraLink® (U.S. models only)

Turning the Automated Appointment preference off will disable appointment notifications in the vehicle based on appointments created or changed at My Acura's online scheduling website.

Appointments can still be created, rescheduled, and canceled from the vehicle; however the appointment information stored in the vehicle will not be updated. Any changes to those appointments should be made from the My Acura website.

AcuraLink/Message Screen





Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

To access the following functions, press the SETUP option, push the interface selector to the right to select Other, then rotate the interface knob to select AcuraLink/ Messages.

Delete Messages – Select this option to delete all stored messages within a category, except for diagnostic info and recall campaign messages. These messages can only be deleted by a certified technician after the recall is done or the problem is corrected, or through a broadcast message from Acura.

New Message Notification – Select ON if you want to be notified of new messages (envelope icon appears on the navigation screen). Select OFF if you do not want to be notified of new messages (envelope icon does not appear on the screen). Messages can still be accessed using the INFO menu. If you would like to stop receiving messages, visit the My Acura website at *www.owners.acura.com* to change your messaging preferences.

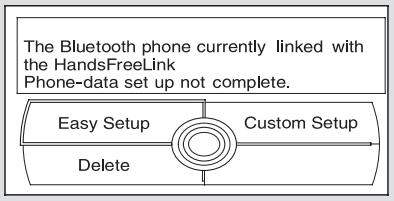
CONTINUED

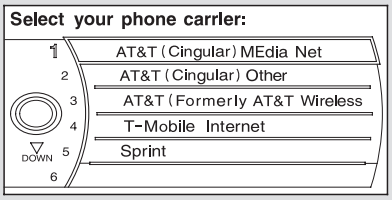
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

AcuraLink® (U.S. models only)

Auto Reading — Select ON to have the system automatically read each message to you. Select OFF to manually select the Voice option when you want a message read to you.

Phone-Data Connection — Select this option to begin the process required to connect to Acura. This is used to access the most recent diagnostic information when a problem occurs.





NOTE: For the Phone Data Connection button to be active, you need a *Bluetooth*® compatible and enabled cell phone paired to the *Bluetooth*® HandsFreeLink® (HFL). To complete the data connection setup, the paired phone must have a compatible data service.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

To find more information on *Bluetooth*® compatible and enabled cell phones, visit *www.acura.com/handsfreelink* or call the HandsFreeLink® consumer support at 1-888-528-7876. In Canada, visit *www.acura.ca*, or call 1-866-78-ACURA.

Connect to the Acura Server – The default setting is prompt. When a diagnostic info message appears, and you select the Check Now option, the system will prompt you before connecting to the Acura server. If you do not wish to connect at that time, select No at the prompt, and you will see the information from the onboard database. The "Auto" setting will remove the prompt when you select the Check Now option and will automatically connect to the Acura server. This setting only applies when you have a *Bluetooth*® enabled phone that is paired with HFL and you have completed the Phone-Data Connection setup.

As required by the FCC:
This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Bluetooth® HandsFreeLink®

Bluetooth® HandsFreeLink® (HFL) allows you to place and receive phone calls using voice commands, without handling your cell phone.

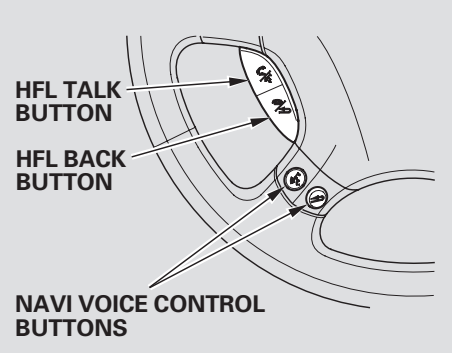
To use HFL, you need a Bluetooth-compatible cell phone. For a list of compatible phones, pairing procedures, and special feature capabilities:

In the U.S., visit *www.acura.com/handsfreelink*, or call (888) 528-7876.

In Canada, visit *www.acura.ca*, or call (866) 78-ACURA.

Using HFL

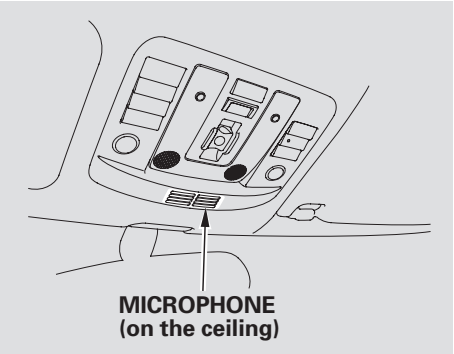
HFL Buttons



HFL Talk button – Press and release to give a command or answer a call.

HFL Back button – Press and release to end a call, go back to the previous command, or cancel the command.

Voice Control Tips



- Air or wind noise from the dashboard and side vents and windows may interfere with the microphone. Adjust or close them as necessary.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

- Press and release the HFL Talk button each time you want to make a command. After the beep, speak in a clear, natural tone.
- Try to reduce all background noise. If the microphone picks up voices other than yours, commands may be misinterpreted.
- Many commands can be spoken together. For example, you can say "Call 123-456-7890" or "Dial Peter."
- When HFL is in use, navigation voice commands cannot be recognized.
- To change the volume level of HFL, use the audio system volume knob or the steering wheel volume controls.

Help Features

- To hear general HFL information, including help on pairing a phone or setting up the system, say "Tutorial."
- For help at any time, including a list of available commands, say "Hands free help."

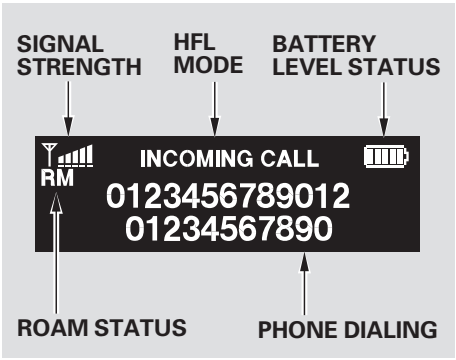
CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

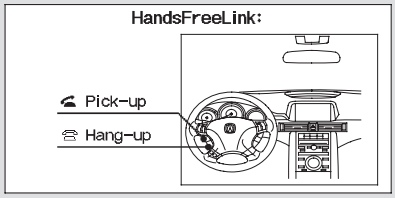
Bluetooth® HandsFreeLink®

Information Display

As an incoming call notification, you will see the following display:



Some phones may send battery, signal strength, and roaming status information to HFL.



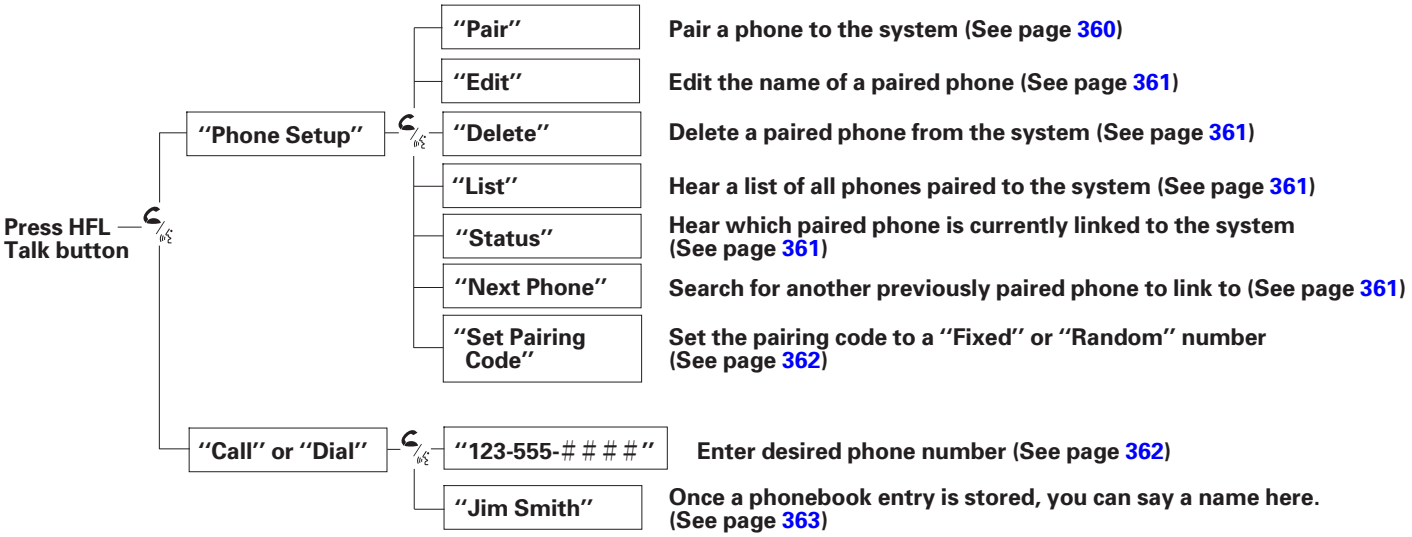
A notification that there is an incoming call, or HFL is in use, will appear on the navigation screen when the audio system is on.

With the HFL system activated, you will also see “HF LINK” on the upper display.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

How to Use HFL

The ignition switch must be in the ACCESSORY (I) or ON (II) position.

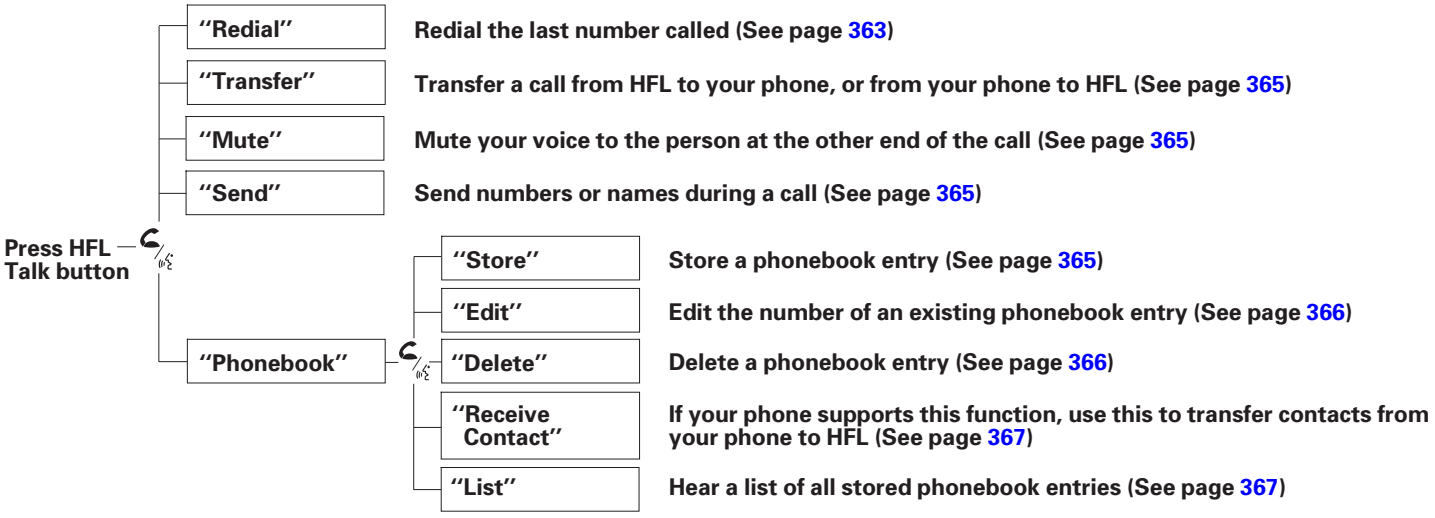

Press HFL Talk button
"Phone Setup"
"Pair"
Pair a phone to the system (See page 360)
"Edit"
Edit the name of a paired phone (See page 361)
"Delete"
Delete a paired phone from the system (See page 361)
"List"
Hear a list of all phones paired to the system (See page 361)
"Status"
Hear which paired phone is currently linked to the system (See page 361)
"Next Phone"
Search for another previously paired phone to link to (See page 361)
"Set Pairing Code"
Set the pairing code to a "Fixed" or "Random" number (See page 362)
"Call" or "Dial"
"123-555-####"
Enter desired phone number (See page 362)
"Jim Smith"
Once a phonebook entry is stored, you can say a name here. (See page 363)

Press and release the HFL Talk button each time you give a command.

CONTINUED

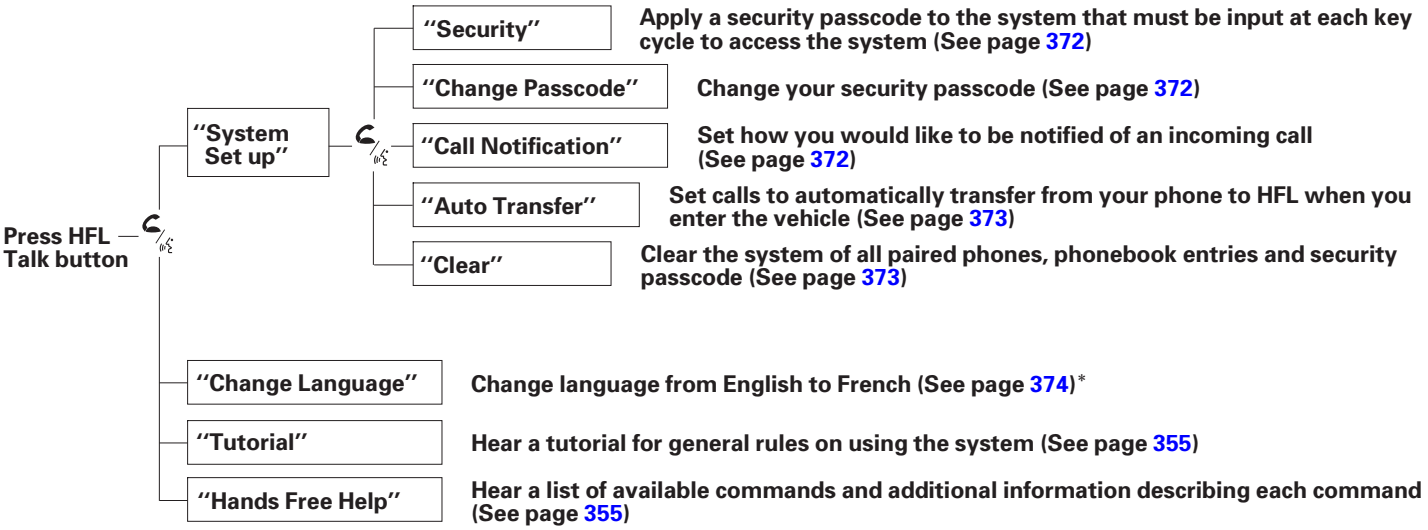
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Bluetooth® HandsFreeLink®


Press HFL Talk button
"Redial"
Redial the last number called (See page 363)
"Transfer"
Transfer a call from HFL to your phone, or from your phone to HFL (See page 365)
"Mute"
Mute your voice to the person at the other end of the call (See page 365)
"Send"
Send numbers or names during a call (See page 365)
"Phonebook"
"Store"
Store a phonebook entry (See page 365)
"Edit"
Edit the number of an existing phonebook entry (See page 366)
"Delete"
Delete a phonebook entry (See page 366)
"Receive Contact"
If your phone supports this function, use this to transfer contacts from your phone to HFL (See page 367)
"List"
Hear a list of all stored phonebook entries (See page 367)

Press and release the HFL Talk button each time you give a command.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine


Press HFL Talk button
"System Set up"
"Security"
Apply a security passcode to the system that must be input at each key cycle to access the system (See page 372)
"Change Passcode"
Change your security passcode (See page 372)
"Call Notification"
Set how you would like to be notified of an incoming call (See page 372)
"Auto Transfer"
Set calls to automatically transfer from your phone to HFL when you enter the vehicle (See page 373)
"Clear"
Clear the system of all paired phones, phonebook entries and security passcode (See page 373)
"Change Language"
Change language from English to French (See page 374)*
"Tutorial"
Hear a tutorial for general rules on using the system (See page 355)
"Hands Free Help"
Hear a list of available commands and additional information describing each command (See page 355)

Press and release the HFL Talk button each time you give a command.

* : Canadian models

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

To use HFL, you need to pair your Bluetooth-compatible cell phone to the system.

Phone Setup
This command group is available for paired cell phones.

Phone pairing tips

- You cannot pair your phone while the vehicle is moving.
- Your phone must be in discovery or search mode to pair. Refer to your phone's manual.
- Up to six phones can be paired.
- Your phone's battery may drain faster when it is paired to HFL.
- If after three minutes your phone is not ready to pair or a phone is not found, the system will time out and return to idle.

To pair a cell phone:

1. Press and release the HFL Talk button. If you are pairing a phone for the first time, HFL will give you information about the pairing process. If it is not the first phone you are pairing, say "**Phone setup**" and say "**Pair**."
2. Follow the HFL prompts and put your phone in discovery or search mode. HFL will give you a 4-digit pairing code and begin searching for your phone.
3. When your phone finds a Bluetooth device, select HFL from the options and enter the 4-digit code from the previous step.
4. Follow the HFL prompts and name the newly paired phone.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

To rename a paired phone:
Press and release the HFL Talk button before a command.

1. Say "**Phone setup**."
2. Say "**Edit**" after the prompts.
3. If there is more than one phone paired to the system, HFL will ask you which phone's name you want to change. Follow the HFL prompts and rename the phone.

To delete a paired phone:
Press and release the HFL Talk button before a command.

1. Say "**Phone setup**."
2. Say "**Delete**" after the prompts.
3. HFL will ask you which phone you want to delete. Follow the HFL prompts to continue with the deletion.

To hear the names of all paired phones:
Press and release the HFL Talk button before a command.

1. Say "**Phone setup**."
2. Say "**List**" after the prompts.
3. HFL will read out all the paired phone's names.

To hear which paired phone is currently linked:
Press and release the HFL Talk button before a command.

1. Say "**Phone setup**."
2. Say "**Status**" after the prompts.
3. HFL will tell you which phone is linked to the system.

To change from the currently linked phone to another paired phone:
Press and release the HFL Talk button before a command.

1. Say "**Phone setup**."
2. Say "**Next phone**" after the prompts.
3. HFL disconnects the linked phone and searches for another paired phone.
4. Once another phone is found, it is linked to the system. HFL will inform you which phone is now linked.

If no other phones are found or paired, HFL will inform you that the original phone is linked again.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Bluetooth® HandsFreeLink®

To change the pairing code setting:
Press and release the HFL Talk button before a command.

1. Say "**Phone setup**."
2. Say "**Set pairing code**" after the prompts.
3. If you want HFL to create a random code each time you pair a phone, say "**Random**." If you want to choose your own 4-digit code to be used each time, say "**Fixed**" and follow the HFL prompts.

Making a Call

You can make calls using any phone number or a name in the HFL phonebook. You can also redial the last number called.

HFL uses a Class 2 Bluetooth, which means, the maximum range between your phone and vehicle is 30 feet (10 meters).

During a call, HFL allows you to talk up to 30 minutes after you remove the key from the ignition switch. However, this may weaken the vehicle's battery.

To make a call using a phone number:
Press and release the HFL Talk button before a command.

1. Say "**Call**" or "**Dial**."
2. Follow the HFL prompts and say the phone number you want to dial.
3. Follow the HFL prompts to confirm the number and say "**Call**" or "**Dial**."

Once connected, you will hear the person you called through the audio speakers.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

To make a call using a name in the HFL phonebook:
Press and release the HFL Talk button before a command.

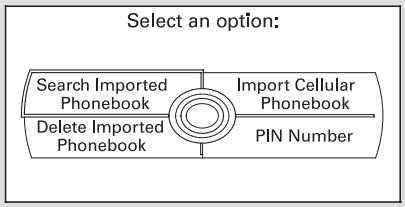
1. Say "**Call**" or "**Dial**."

2. Follow the HFL prompts and say the name stored in the HFL phonebook that you want to call.

3. Follow the HFL prompts to confirm the name and make the call.

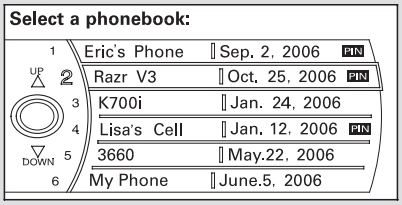
To redial the last number called by HFL:
Press and release the HFL Talk button and say "**Redial**."

To make a call from an imported phonebook:



1. Press the INFO button, then select "**Cellular Phonebook**."

2. Select "**Search Imported Phonebook**."


Select a phonebook:
1 Eric's Phone Sep. 2, 2006 PIN
UP 2 Razr V3 Oct. 25, 2006 PIN
3 K700i Jan. 24, 2006
4 Lisa's Cell Jan. 12, 2006 PIN
DOWN 5 3660 May.22, 2006
6 My Phone June.5, 2006

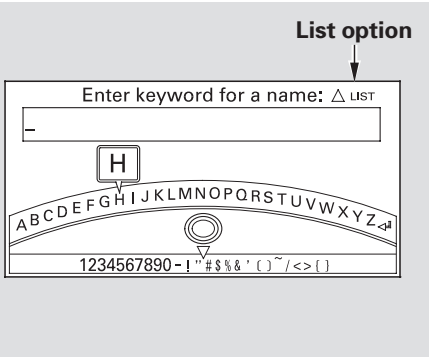
3. Select a phonebook you want to choose a phone number from.

If the phonebook you select is PIN-protected, you will need to enter the PIN to access it. See page 368 for more information.

CONTINUED

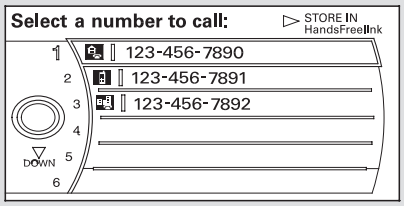
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Bluetooth® HandsFreeLink®



To search for a specific name in the phonebook, enter the keyword for either the first or last name.

To display all names in the phonebook, select the "**List**" option.



4. Select the name. All the phone numbers stored for that name will be listed.
5. Select the phone number, and HFL begins dialing.

If you choose "**Store in HandsFreeLink**," the phone number will be stored in HFL, so that you can call it using HFL's name tag by voice.

Receiving a Call

When you receive a call, an incoming call notification (if activated) will play and interrupt the audio system if it is on.

Press the HFL Talk button to answer the call, or the HFL Back button to hang up.

Call Waiting

If your phone has Call Waiting, press and release the HFL Talk button to put the original call on hold and answer the incoming call.

To return to the original call, press the HFL Talk button again. If you don't want to answer the incoming call, disregard it and continue with your original call. If you want to hang up the original call and answer the new call, press the HFL Back button.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Transferring a Call
You can transfer a call from HFL to your phone, or from your phone to HFL.

Press and release the HFL Talk button and say "**Transfer**."

Muting a Call
You can mute your voice to the person you are talking to during a call.

To mute your voice during a call, press and release the HFL Talk button and say "**Mute**."

To unmute your voice, press and release the HFL Talk button and say "**Mute**" again.

Send Numbers or Names During a Call
HFL allows you to send numbers or names during a call. This is useful when you call a menu-driven phone system.

To send a name or number during a call:
Press and release the HFL Talk button before a command.

1. Say "**Send**."
2. Follow the HFL prompts and say the name or number you want to send.
3. Follow the HFL prompts to send the tones and continue the call.

NOTE: To send a pound (#), say "pound." To send a star (*), say "star."

Phonebook
You can store up to 50 names with their associated numbers in HFL. The numbers you store cannot only be phone numbers but other types, such as account numbers or passwords, which can be sent during a menu-driven call.

To store a phonebook entry:
Press and release the HFL Talk button before a command.

1. Say "**Phonebook**."
2. Say "**Store**" after the prompts.
3. Say a name you want to list as your phonebook entry.
4. Say the number you want to store for the name entry.
5. Follow the HFL prompts and say "**Enter**" to store the entry.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Bluetooth® HandsFreeLink®

NOTE:
- Avoid using duplicate name entries.
- Avoid using "home" as a name entry.
- It is easier for HFL to recognize a multisyllabic or longer name. For example, use "Peter" instead of "Pete," or "John Smith" instead of "John."

To edit the number stored in a name:
Press and release the HFL Talk button before a command.

1. Say "**Phonebook**."
2. Say "**Edit**" after the prompts.
3. Follow the HFL prompts and say the name entry you want to edit.
4. When asked, say the new number for that name.
5. Follow the HFL prompts to complete the edit.

To delete a name:
Press and release the HFL Talk button before a command.

1. Say "**Phonebook**."
2. Say "**Delete**" after the prompts.
3. Say the name you want to delete and follow the HFL prompts to complete the deletion.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

To list all names in the phonebook:
Press and release the HFL Talk button before a command.

1. Say "**Phonebook**."
2. Say "**List**" after the prompts.
3. HFL begins reading the names in the order they were stored.
4. If you hear a name you want to call, immediately press the HFL Talk button and say "**Call**."

To store a specific phone number from your cell phone directly to the HFL phonebook (available on some phones):
Press and release the HFL Talk button before a command.

1. Say "**Phonebook**."
2. Say "**Receive contact**" after the prompts.
3. Follow the HFL prompts, select a number from your cell phone, and send it to HFL.
4. Follow the HFL prompts and name the number, or say "**Discard**" if it is not the number you want to store.
5. Follow the HFL prompts if you want to store another number.

Cellular Phonebook
(available on some phones)

If you select **Cellular Phonebook** from the Information screen menu, you will see four HFL options.

For a list of cell phones that are compatible with this feature:

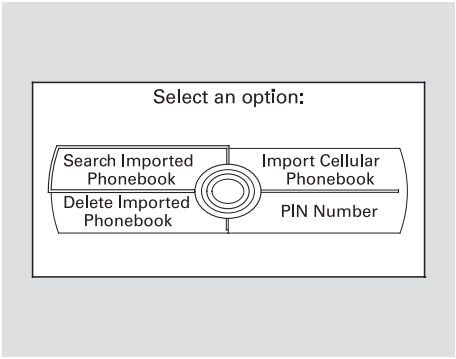
In the U.S., visit *www.acura.com/handsfreelink*, or call (888) 528-7876.

In Canada, visit *www.acura.ca*, or call (866) 78-ACURA.

CONTINUED

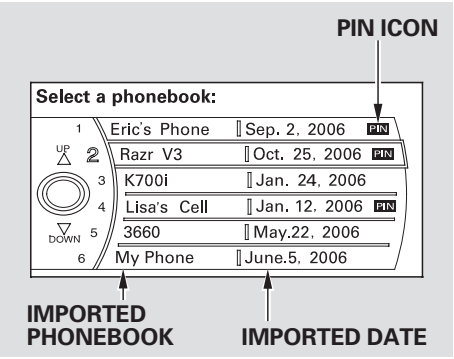
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Import Cellular Phonebook:
The entire phonebook data of the cell phone that is linked to HFL can be imported to the navigation system.



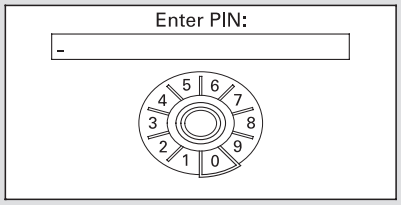
Select "**Import Cellular Phonebook**," and HFL will begin importing the phonebook. Select "**OK**" after the import is completed.

Search Imported Phonebook:
Once a phonebook has been imported, you can search the phone numbers by the person's name.



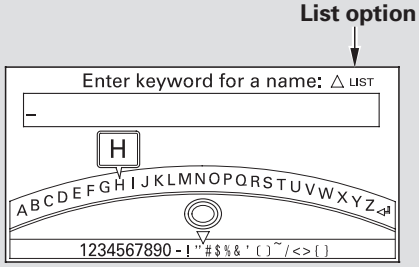
Select "**Search Cellular Phonebook**," and a list of imported phonebooks will be displayed.

Select a phonebook from the list.



If the phonebook is PIN-protected, you will need to enter the 4-digit PIN.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



To search for a specific name in the phonebook, enter the keyword for either the first or last name.

To display all names in the phonebook, select the "**List**" option.

Select a person from the list. Up to three category icons are displayed in the left side of the list:

	Preference		**Fax**
	Home		**Car**
	Mobile		**Voice**
	Work		**Other**
	Pager		

These category icons indicate how many numbers are stored for the name. If a name has more than three category icons, "…" is displayed.

Select the person's number you want to call, and press the HFL Talk button.

Delete Imported Phonebook:
You can delete any imported phonebook.

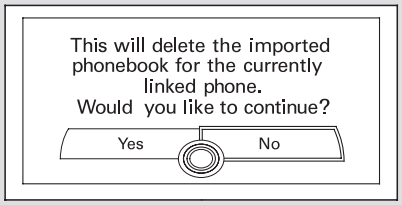
Select "**Delete Imported Phonebook**," and a list of imported phonebooks will be displayed.

Select a phonebook you want to delete. If the phonebook is PIN-protected, you will need to enter the 4-digit PIN number.

CONTINUED

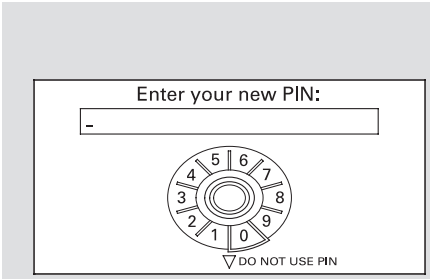
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

After making a selection, the following screen will appear.



Select "**Yes**," then "**OK**" to complete the deletion.

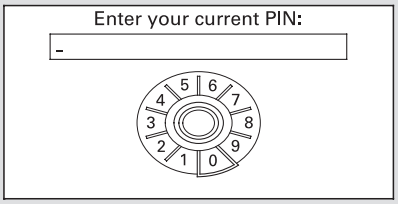
PIN Number
You can add, change, or remove a PIN number from any phonebook.



To add a PIN:
If you have selected a phonebook without a PIN, you will see the above display.

Enter the new 4-digit PIN. You will have to re-enter the PIN for confirmation.

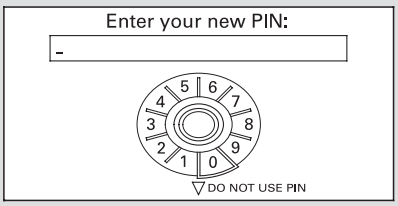
To change the PIN to a new number:



Select the phonebook you want. The display will change as shown above.

Enter the current PIN for this phonebook.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



The display will change as shown above.

Enter the new 4-digit PIN number. You will be asked to re-enter the PIN for verification.

To remove a PIN:
Select "**PIN number**," then select "**Do not use PIN**" after you enter the current PIN.

System Setup
This command group allows you to change or customize HFL basic settings.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Bluetooth® HandsFreeLink®

To set a 4-digit passcode to lock the HFL system for security purposes:
Press and release the HFL Talk button before a command.

1. Say "**System setup**."
2. Say "**Security**"after the prompts.
3. Follow the HFL prompts and say the 4-digit passcode you want to set.
4. Follow the HFL prompts to confirm the number.

NOTE: Once a passcode is set, you will need to enter it to use HFL each time you start the vehicle. If you forget the code, your dealer will have to reset it for you, or you will have to clear the entire system (see page 373).

To change your security pass code:
Press and release the HFL Talk button before a command.

1. Say "**System setup**."
2. Say "**Change passcode**" after the prompts.
3. Follow the HFL prompts and say the new 4-digit passcode.
4. Follow the HFL prompts to confirm the number.

To select either a ring tone or a prompt as the incoming call notification*:
Press and release the HFL Talk button before a command.

1. Say "**System setup**."
2. Say "**Call notification**" after the prompts.
3. Follow the HFL prompts and say "**Ring tone**" or "**Prompt**." You can also say "**Off**" for no audible incoming call notification.

*: The default setting is a ring tone.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

To activate or deactivate the auto transfer function:
If you get into the vehicle while you are on the phone, the call can be automatically transferred to HFL with the ignition switch in the ACCESSORY (I) position.

Press and release the HFL Talk button before a command.

1. Say "**System setup**."
2. Say "**Auto transfer**" after the prompts.
3. HFL will let you know if auto transfer is on or off, depending on the previous setting. Follow the HFL prompts to change the setting.

To clear the system:
This operation clears the passcodes, paired phones, all names in the HFL phonebook, and all imported phonebook data.

Press and release the HFL Talk button before a command.

1. Say "**System setup**."
2. Say "**Clear**" after the prompts.
3. Follow the HFL prompts to continue to complete the clearing procedure.

You can also clear the system when you have forgotten the passcode and cannot access HFL. When HFL asks you for the passcode, say "**System clear**." Paired phones, all names in the HFL phonebook and all imported phonebook data will be lost.

Quick Language Selection
Canadian models only
To quickly change the language:
Press and release the HFL Talk button before a command.

1. Say the language you want to change to in that language.
2. Follow the HFL prompts.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Bluetooth® HandsFreeLink®

Change Language

Canadian models only

To change the system language between English and French:

Press and release the HFL Talk button before a command.

1. Say "**Change language**."
2. Follow the HFL prompts to change the language to English or French.

If you have not named your paired phone in the language you just selected, HFL will ask you to name it in the current language.

When French is your currently selected language, you can give voice commands in French.

Bluetooth® Wireless Technology

The *Bluetooth*® name and logos are registered trademarks owned by Bluetooth SIG, Inc. and any use of such marks by Honda Motor Co., Ltd. is under license. Other trademarks and trade names are those of their respective owners.

As required by the FCC:
This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

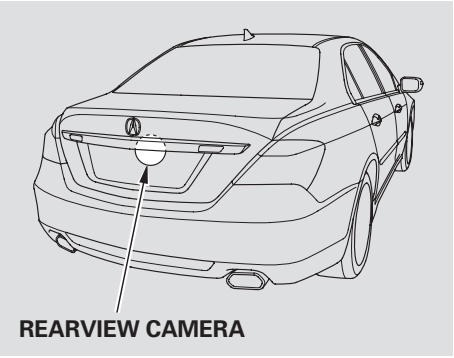
Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

This device complies with Industry Canada Standard RSS-210.
Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Rearview Camera and Monitor

On models with navigation system



Whenever you shift to reverse (R) with the ignition switch in the ON (II) position, the rearview is shown on the navigation system screen.

For the best picture, always keep the rearview camera clean, and do not cover the camera lens. To avoid scratching the lens when you clean it, use a moist, soft cloth.

Since the rearview camera display area is limited, you should always back up slowly and carefully, and look behind you for obstacles.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

09/04/02 19:27:17 31SJA650 0381

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Before Driving

Before you begin driving your vehicle, you should know what gasoline to use and how to check the levels of important fluids. You also need to know how to properly store luggage or packages. The information in this section will help you. If you plan to add any accessories to your vehicle, please read the information in this section first.

Break-in Period 378
Fuel Recommendation 378
Service Station Procedures 379
  Refueling 379
  Tighten Fuel Cap Message 381
  Opening and Closing the Hood 381
  Oil Check 383
  Engine Coolant Check 383
Fuel Economy 384
Accessories and Modifications 387
Carrying Cargo 389

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Break-in Period, Fuel Recommendation

Break-in Period
Help assure your vehicle's future reliability and performance by paying extra attention to how you drive during the first 600 miles (1,000 km). During this period:

- Avoid full-throttle starts and rapid acceleration.
- Avoid hard braking for the first 200 miles (300 km).
- Do not change the oil until the scheduled maintenance time.
- Do not tow a trailer.

You should also follow these recommendations with an overhauled or exchanged engine, or when the brakes are replaced.

Fuel Recommendation
Your vehicle is designed to operate on premium unleaded gasoline with a pump octane of 91 or higher. If this octane grade is unavailable, regular unleaded gasoline with a pump octane of 87 or higher may be used temporarily. The use of regular unleaded gasoline can cause metallic knocking noises in the engine and will result in decreased engine performance. The long-term use of regular-grade gasoline can lead to engine damage.

We recommend quality gasolines containing detergent additives that help prevent fuel system and engine deposits.

In addition, in order to maintain good performance, fuel economy, and emissions control, we strongly recommend, in areas where it is available, the use of gasoline that does NOT contain manganese-based fuel additives such as MMT.
Use of gasoline with these additives may adversely affect performance, and cause the malfunction indicator lamp on your instrument panel to come on. If this happens, contact your authorized dealer for service.

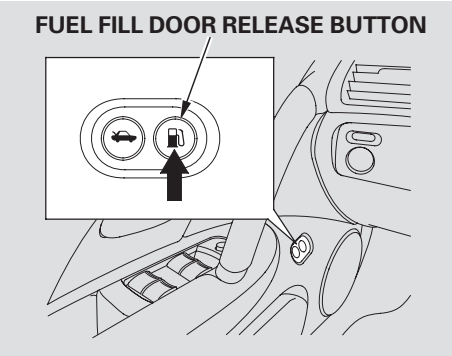
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Some gasoline today is blended with oxygenates such as ethanol or MTBE. Your vehicle is designed to operate on oxygenated gasoline containing up to 10% ethanol by volume and up to 15% MTBE by volume. Do not use gasoline containing methanol.

If you notice any undesirable operating symptoms, try another service station or switch to another brand of gasoline.

For further important fuel-related information for your vehicle, or information on gasoline that does not contain MMT, contact your dealer or visit My Acura at *owners.acura.com* (In Canada, visit *www.myacura.ca).*

Refueling



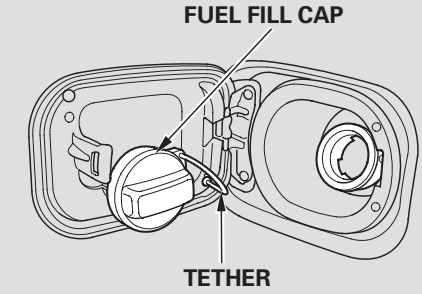
1. Park with the driver's side closest to the service station pump.

2. Open the fuel fill door by pressing the button in the driver's door (to open the fuel fill door manually, see page 503).

⚠ WARNING

Gasoline is highly flammable and explosive. You can be burned or seriously injured when handling fuel.

- Stop the engine, and keep heat, sparks, and flames away.
- Handle fuel only outdoors.
- Wipe up spills immediately.



CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Service Station Procedures

3. Remove the fuel fill cap slowly. You may hear a hissing sound as pressure inside the tank equalizes. Place the cap in the holder on the fuel fill door.

4. Stop filling the tank after the fuel nozzle automatically clicks off. Do not try to "top off" the tank. This leaves some room in the fuel tank for the fuel to expand with temperature changes.

If the fuel nozzle keeps clicking off even though the tank is not full, there may be a problem with your vehicle's fuel vapor recovery system. The system helps keep fuel vapor from going into the atmosphere. Try filling at another pump. If this does not fix the problem, consult your dealer.

5. Screw the fuel fill cap back on until it clicks at least once. If you do not properly tighten the cap, you will see a "TIGHTEN FUEL CAP" message on the multi-information display, and the malfunction indicator lamp may also come on (see page 501).

6. Push the fuel fill door closed until it latches.

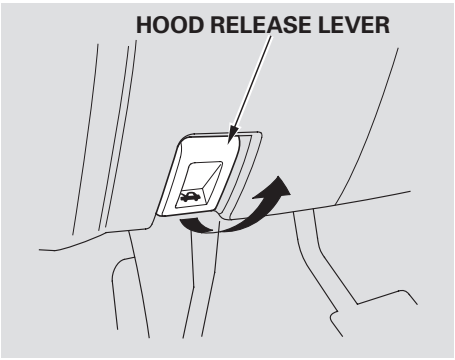
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Tighten Fuel Cap Message

Your vehicle's on board diagnostic system will detect a loose or missing fuel fill cap as an evaporative system leak. The first time a leak is detected a "TIGHTEN FUEL CAP" message appears on the multi-information display. Turn the engine off, and confirm the fuel fill cap is installed. If it is, loosen it, then retighten it until it clicks at least once. The message should go off after several days of normal driving once you tighten or replace the fuel fill cap. To scroll to another message, press the INFO button. The "TIGHTEN FUEL CAP" message will appear each time you restart the engine until the system turns the message off.

If the system still detects a leak in the vehicle's evaporative emissions system, the malfunction indicator lamp (MIL) comes on. If the fuel fill cap was not already tightened, turn the engine off, and check or retighten the fuel fill cap until it clicks at least once. The MIL should go off after several days of normal driving once the cap is tightened or replaced. If the MIL does not go off, have your vehicle inspected by a dealer. For more information, see page 501 .

Opening and Closing the Hood

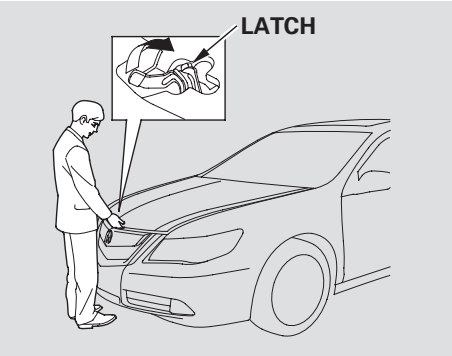


1. Park the vehicle, and set the parking brake. Pull the hood release lever located under the lower left corner of the dashboard. The hood will pop up slightly.

CONTINUED

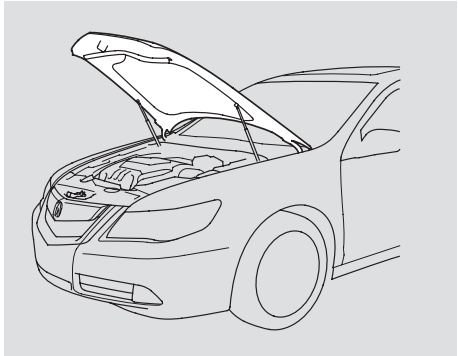
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Service Station Procedures

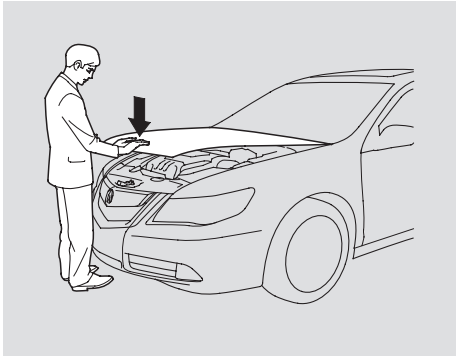


2. Reach between the hood and the front bumper with your finger. Slide the latch handle up.

   If the hood latch handle moves stiffly, or if you can open the hood without lifting the handle, the mechanism should be cleaned and lubricated.



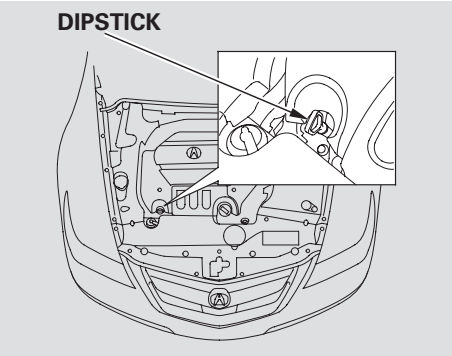
3. Lift the hood up most of the way. The hydraulic supports will lift it up the rest of the way and hold it up.



To close the hood, lower the hood to about a foot (30 cm) above the fender, then firmly press down on the front edge of the hood. Make sure it is securely latched.

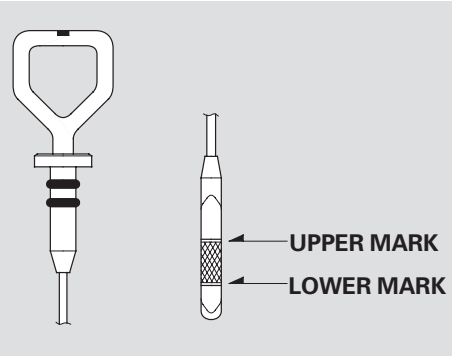
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Oil Check



Wait a few minutes after turning the engine off before you check the oil.

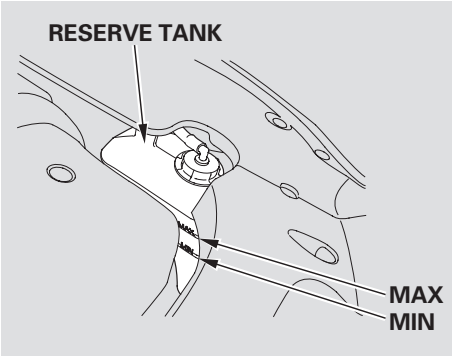
1. Remove the dipstick (orange loop).
2. Wipe the dipstick with a clean cloth or paper towel.
3. Insert the dipstick all the way back into its hole.



4. Remove the dipstick again, and check the level. It should be between the upper and lower marks.

   If it is near or below the lower mark, see **Adding Engine Oil** on page 452 .

Engine Coolant Check



Look at the coolant level in the radiator reserve tank. Make sure it is between the MAX and MIN lines. If it is below the MIN line, see **Adding Engine Coolant** on page 455 .

Refer to **Owner's Maintenance Checks** on page 446 for information about checking other items on your vehicle.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

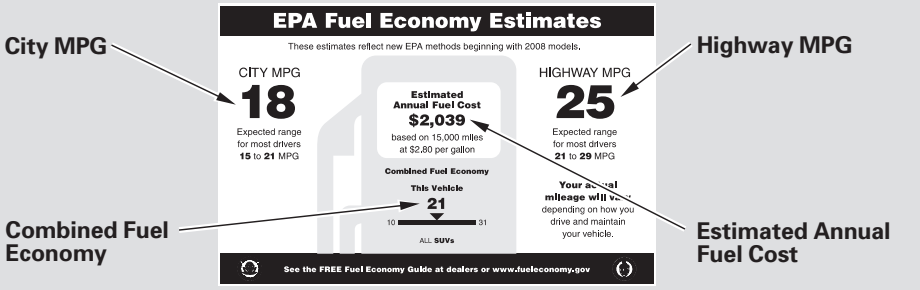
Fuel Economy

Actual Mileage and EPA Fuel Economy Estimates Comparison. Fuel economy is not a fixed number. It varies based on driving conditions, driving habits and vehicle condition. Therefore, it is not possible for one set of estimates to predict fuel economy precisely for all drivers in all environments.

The EPA fuel economy estimates shown in the example to the right are a useful tool for comparison when buying a vehicle. EPA estimates include:

City MPG – Represents urban driving in light traffic. A range of miles per gallon achieved is also provided.

Highway MPG – Represents a mixture of rural and interstate driving, in a warmed-up vehicle, typical of longer trips in free-flowing traffic. A range of miles per gallon achieved is also provided.


City MPG
Highway MPG
Combined Fuel Economy
Estimated Annual Fuel Cost
EPA Fuel Economy Estimates
These estimates reflect new EPA methods beginning with 2008 models.
CITY MPG
18
Expected range for most drivers 15 to 21 MPG
Estimated Annual Fuel Cost
$2,039
based on 15,000 miles at $2.80 per gallon
Combined Fuel Economy
This Vehicle
21
10
31
ALL SUVs
HIGHWAY MPG
25
Expected range for most drivers 21 to 29 MPG
depending on how you drive and maintain your vehicle.
See the FREE Fuel Economy Guide at dealers or www.fueleconomy.gov

(Sample U.S. EPA label shown)

Combined Fuel Economy – Represents a combination of city and highway driving. The scale represents the range of combined fuel economy for other vehicles in the class.

Estimated Annual Fuel Cost – Provides an estimated annual fuel cost, based on 15,000 miles in the U.S. or 20,000 km in Canada per year multiplied by the cost per gallon (based on EPA fuel cost data) divided by the combined fuel economy.

For more information on fuel economy ratings and factors that affect fuel economy, visit *www.fueleconomy.gov* (Canada: Visit *www.vehicles.gc.ca*)

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Fuel Economy Factors

The following factors can lower your vehicle's fuel economy:

- Aggressive driving (hard acceleration and braking)
- Excessive idling, accelerating and braking in stop-and-go traffic
- Cold engine operation (engines are more efficient when warmed up)
- Driving with a heavy load or the air conditioner running
- Improperly inflated tires

Improving Fuel Economy

Vehicle Maintenance

A properly maintained vehicle maximizes fuel economy. Poor maintenance can significantly reduce fuel economy. Always maintain your vehicle according to the maintenance messages displayed on the multi-information display (see **Owner's Maintenance Checks** on page 446). For example:

- **Use the recommended viscosity motor oil, displaying the API Certification Seal (see page 452).**
- **Maintain proper tire inflation** — An underinflated tire increases "rolling resistance," which reduces fuel economy.
- **Avoid carrying excess weight in your vehicle** — It puts a heavier load on the engine, increasing fuel consumption.
- **Keep your vehicle clean** — In particular, a build-up of snow or mud on your vehicle's underside adds weight and rolling resistance. Frequent cleaning helps your fuel economy.

Drive Efficiently

- **Drive moderately** — Rapid acceleration, abrupt cornering, and hard braking increase fuel consumption.
- **Observe the speed limit** — Aerodynamic drag has a big effect on fuel economy at speeds above 45 mph (75 km/h). Reduce your speed and you reduce the drag. Trailers, car top carriers, roof racks and bike racks are also big contributors to increased drag.
- **Always drive in the highest gear possible** — If your vehicle has a manual transmission, you can boost your fuel economy by up shifting as early as possible.
- **Avoid excessive idling** — Idling results in 0 miles per gallon (0 kms per liter).

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Fuel Economy

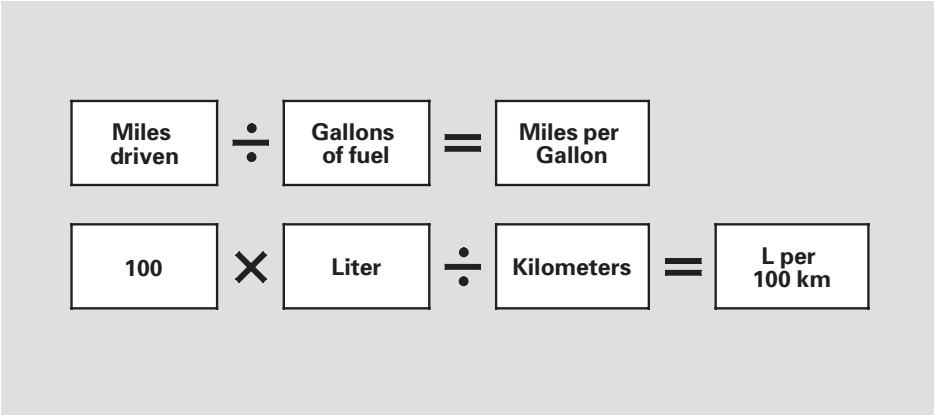
- **Minimize the use of the air conditioning system** — The A/C puts an extra load on the engine which makes it use more fuel. Use the fresh-air ventilation when possible.
- **Plan and combine trips** — Combine several short trips into one. A warmed-up engine is more fuel efficient than a cold one.

Calculating Fuel Economy

Measuring Techniques

Direct calculation is the recommended source of information about your actual fuel economy. Using frequency of fill-ups or taking fuel gauge readings are NOT accurate measures of fuel economy. Fuel economy may improve over the first several thousand miles (kilometers).

Checking Your Fuel Economy



1) Fill the fuel tank until the nozzle automatically clicks off.
2) Reset trip counter to zero.
3) Record the total gallons (liters) needed to refill.
4) Follow one of the simple calculations above.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Accessories and Modifications

Modifying your vehicle, or installing some non-Acura accessories, can make your vehicle unsafe. Before you make any modifications or add any accessories, be sure to read the following information.

Accessories
Your dealer has Acura accessories that allow you to personalize your vehicle. These accessories have been designed and approved for your vehicle, and are covered by warranty.

Although non-Acura accessories may fit on your vehicle, they may not meet factory specifications, and could adversely affect your vehicle's handling and stability.

⚠WARNING

Improper accessories or modifications can affect your vehicle's handling, stability, and performance, and cause a crash in which you can be hurt or killed.

Follow all instructions in this owner's manual regarding accessories and modifications.

When properly installed, cellular phones, alarms, two-way radios, and low-powered audio systems should not interfere with your vehicle's computer controlled systems, such as your airbags, anti-lock brakes, and tire pressure monitoring system.

Before installing any accessory:

- Make sure the accessory does not obscure any lights, or interfere with proper vehicle operation or performance.
- Be sure electronic accessories do not overload electrical circuits (see page 504) or interfere with the proper operation of your vehicle.
- Before installing any electronic accessory, have the installer contact your dealer. If possible, have your dealer inspect the final installation.
- Do not install accessories on the side pillars or across the rear windows. Accessories installed in these areas may interfere with proper operation of the side curtain airbags.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Accessories and Modifications

Modifying Your Vehicle
Removing parts from your vehicle, or replacing components with non-Acura components could seriously affect your vehicle's handling, stability, and reliability.

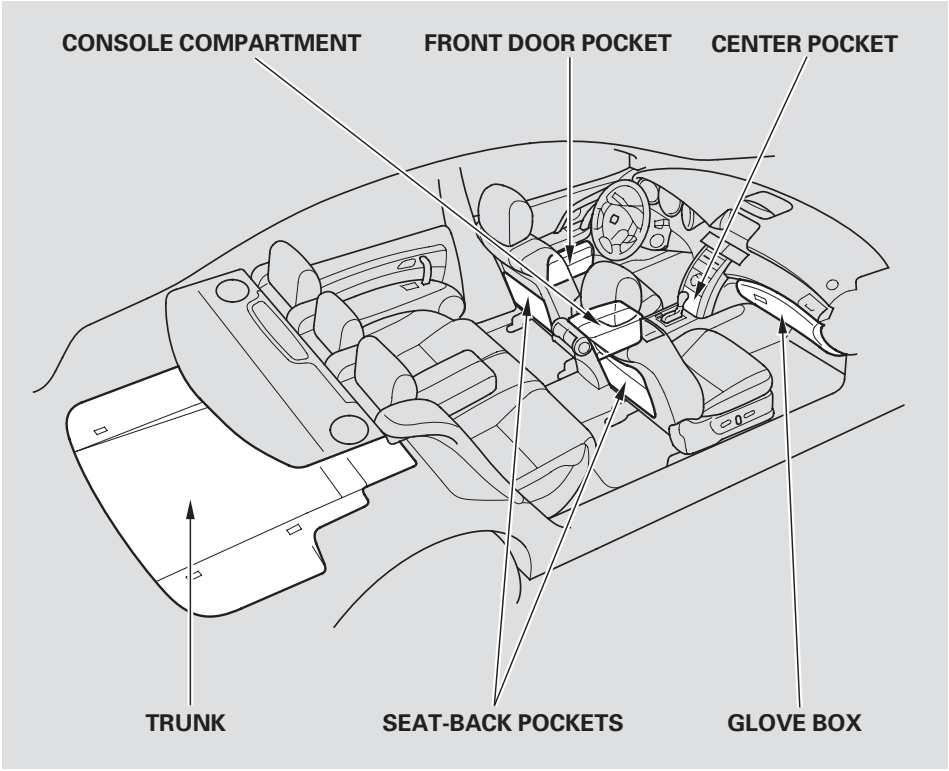
Here are some examples:

- Lowering the vehicle with a non-Acura suspension kit that significantly reduces ground clearance can allow the undercarriage to hit speed bumps or other raised objects, which could cause the airbags to deploy.
- Raising your vehicle with a non-Acura suspension kit can affect the handling and stability.
- Non-Acura wheels, because they are a universal design, can cause excessive stress on suspension components and will not be compatible with the tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS).
- Larger or smaller wheels and tires can interfere with the operation of your vehicle's anti-lock brakes and other systems.
- Modifying your steering wheel or any other part of your vehicle's safety systems could make the systems ineffective.

If you plan to modify your vehicle, consult your dealer.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Carrying Cargo



Your vehicle has several convenient storage areas:

- Glove box
- Front door and seat-back pockets
- Console compartment
- Center pocket
- Trunk

In addition, the trunk pass-through allows you to carry longer items.

However, carrying too much cargo, or improperly storing it, can affect your vehicle's handling, stability, stopping distance, and tires, and make it unsafe. Before carrying any type of cargo, be sure to read the following pages.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

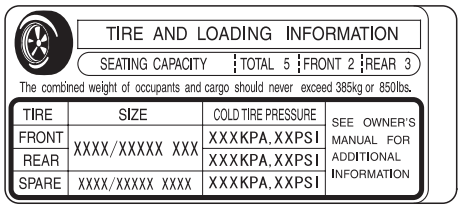
Carrying Cargo

Load Limits

The maximum load for your vehicle is 850 lbs (385 kg).

See Tire And Loading Information label attached to the driver's doorjamb.

Label Example



This figure includes the total weight of all occupants, cargo, and accessories, and the tongue load if you are towing a trailer.

⚠WARNING

Overloading or improper loading can affect handling and stability and cause a crash in which you can be hurt or killed.

Follow all load limits and other loading guidelines in this manual.

Steps for Determining Correct Load Limit —

(1) Locate the statement "The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed XXX kg or XXX lbs." on your vehicle's placard.

(2) Determine the combined weight of the driver and passengers that will be riding in your vehicle.

(3) Subtract the combined weight of the driver and passengers from XXX kg or XXX lbs.

(4) The resulting figure equals the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity. For example, if the "XXX" amount equals 1,400 lbs. and there will be five 150 lb. passengers in your vehicle, the amount of available cargo and luggage load capacity is 650 lbs.
(1,400 − 750 (5 × 150) = 650 lbs.)

(5) Determine the combined weight of luggage and cargo being loaded on the vehicle. That weight may not safely exceed the available cargo and luggage load capacity calculated in Step 4.

(6) If your vehicle will be towing a trailer, load from your trailer will be transferred to your vehicle. Consult this manual to determine how this reduces the available cargo and luggage load capacity of your vehicle.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Example 1		≧		+		
	Max Load (850 lbs)		Passenger Weight (150 lbs x 2 = 300 lbs)		Cargo Weight (550 lbs)	
Example 2		≧		+		
	Max Load (850 lbs)		Passenger Weight (150 lbs x 4 = 600 lbs)		Cargo Weight (250 lbs)	
Example 3		≧		+		
	Max Load (850 lbs)		Passenger Weight (150 lbs x 5 = 750 lbs)		Cargo Weight (100 lbs)	

In addition, the total weight of the vehicle, all occupants, accessories, cargo, and trailer tongue load must not exceed the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR) or the Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR). Both are on a label on the driver's doorjamb.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Carrying Cargo

Carrying Items in the Passenger Compartment

- Store or secure all items that could be thrown around and hurt someone during a crash.
- Do not put any items on top of the rear shelf. They can block your view and be thrown around the vehicle during a crash.
- Be sure items placed on the floor behind the front seats cannot roll under the seats and interfere with the pedals or seat operation.
- Keep the glove box closed while driving. If it is open, a passenger could injure their knees during a crash or sudden stop.

Carrying Cargo in the Trunk or on a Roof Rack

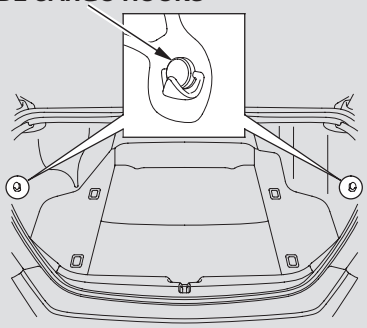
- Distribute cargo evenly on the floor of the trunk, placing the heaviest items on the bottom and as far forward as possible.
- If you carry large items that prevent you from closing the trunk lid, exhaust gas can enter the passenger area. To avoid the possibility of **carbon monoxide poisoning**, follow the instructions on page 56.
- If you carry any items on a roof rack, be sure the total weight of the rack and the items does not exceed 121 lbs (55 kg).

  If you use an accessory roof rack, the roof rack weight limit may be lower. Refer to the information that came with your roof rack.
- If you carry any items extending through the trunk pass-through, tie down or secure all items that could be thrown around the vehicle and hurt someone during a crash or sudden stop.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

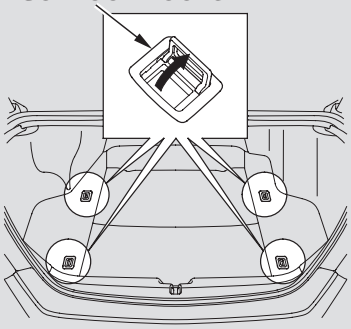
Cargo Hooks

SIDE CARGO HOOKS



There are hooks on the floor and both sides of the trunk. They can be used to install the cargo net for securing items. The side cargo hooks are designed to hold light items (maximum load: 6 lbs or 3 kgs for each hook). Heavy objects may damage the side hooks.

CARGO FLOOR HOOKS



The cargo floor hooks can also be used to tie down and secure items on the floor.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

09/04/02 19:29:38 31SJA650 0399

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

This section gives you tips on starting the engine under various conditions, and how to operate the automatic transmission. It also includes important information on parking your vehicle, the braking system, the Super Handling-All Wheel Drive™ (SH-AWD®) system, the vehicle stability assist (VSA) system, the tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS), the collision mitigation brake system (CMBS), and facts you need if you are planning to tow a trailer.

Preparing to Drive 396
Starting the Engine..... 397
  Check Starting System Message..... 398
Automatic Transmission..... 399
Driving with the Paddle Shifters..... 403
  D-Paddle Shift Mode 403
  Sequential Shift Mode..... 405
Super Handling-All Wheel Drive™ (SH-AWD®) System 407
Parking..... 409
Braking System..... 410
Anti-lock Brakes (ABS) 411
Collision Mitigation Brake System (CMBS) 413
Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) 423
Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA®), aka Electronic Stability Control (ESC), System 429
Towing a Trailer 431
Towing Your Vehicle 436

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Preparing to Drive

You should do the following checks and adjustments before you drive your vehicle.

1. Make sure all windows, mirrors, and outside lights are clean and unobstructed. Remove frost, snow, or ice.
2. Check that the hood is fully closed.
3. Visually check the tires. If a tire looks low, use a gauge to check its pressure (see page 475).
4. Check that any items you may be carrying are stored properly or fastened down securely.
5. Check the seat adjustment (see page 156).
6. Check the adjustment of the inside and outside mirrors (see page 161).
7. Check the steering wheel adjustment (see page 148).
8. Make sure the doors and the trunk are securely closed and locked.
9. Fasten your seat belt. Check that your passengers have fastened their seat belts (see page 17).
10. When you start the engine, check the gauges and indicators in the instrument panel, and the messages on the multi-information display (see pages 61 , 70 and 78).

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Starting the Engine

Your vehicle's starting system has an auto control mode. When you turn the ignition switch to the START (III) position, this feature keeps the engine's starter motor running until the engine starts. Follow these instructions to start the engine:

1. Apply the parking brake.
2. In cold weather, turn off all electrical accessories to reduce the drain on the battery.
3. Make sure the shift lever is in Park. Press on the brake pedal.
4. Without touching the accelerator pedal, turn the ignition switch to the START (III) position, then release the ignition switch. You do not need to hold the ignition switch in the START (III) position to start the engine. Depending on the outside temperature, the starter motor runs for about 6 to 9 seconds until the engine starts.

   If you hold the ignition switch in the START (III) position for more than 7 seconds, the starter motor, depending on the outside temperature, runs for about 10 to 25 seconds until the engine starts.

   If the engine does not start, wait at least 10 seconds before trying again.

NOTICE

The immobilizer system protects your vehicle from theft. If an improperly coded key (or other device) is used, the engine's fuel system is disabled. For more information, see page 151 .

5. If the engine does not start within 15 seconds, or starts but stalls right away, repeat step 4 with the accelerator pedal pressed halfway down. If the engine starts, release pressure on the accelerator pedal so the engine does not race.
6. If the engine fails to start, press the accelerator pedal all the way down, and hold it there while starting to clear flooding. If the engine still does not start, return to step 5.

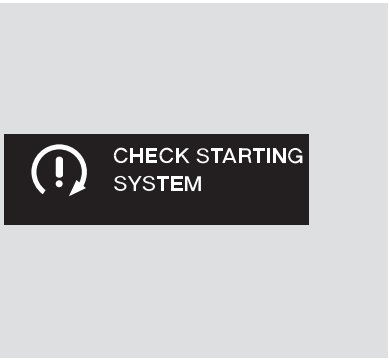
NOTICE

The engine is harder to start in cold weather. Also, the thinner air found at altitudes above 8,000 feet (2,400 meters) adds to this problem.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Starting the Engine

Check Starting System Message



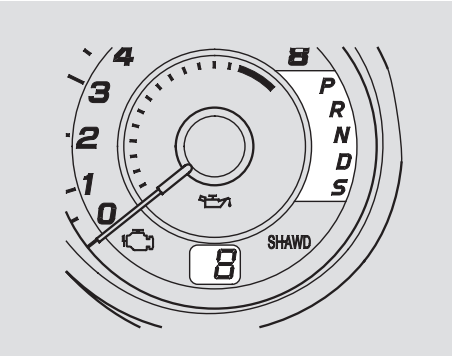
If there is a problem with the starting system, you will see a "CHECK STARTING SYSTEM" message on the multi-information display when the ignition switch is turned to the ON (II) position. You will also see this message when the auto control mode of the starting system has a problem.

If this message is on, the ignition switch has to be held in the START (III) position manually until the engine starts. The ignition switch can be held in that position up to 15 seconds.

Even though you may be able to start the engine manually without the auto control mode of the starting system, have your dealer inspect your vehicle.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Shift Lever Position Indicators



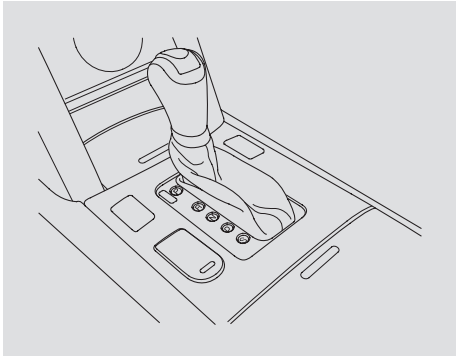
These indicators between the tachometer and speedometer show which position the shift lever is in.

The "D" indicator comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position. If it flashes while driving (in any shift position), it indicates a possible problem in the transmission.

If the malfunction indicator lamp comes on along with the "D" indicator, there is a problem with the automatic transmission control system. Avoid rapid acceleration, and have the transmission checked by your dealer as soon as possible.

When the "D" indicator warns of a possible problem with the transmission, you will see a "CHECK TRANSMISSION" message on the multi-information display (see page 79).

Shifting



To shift from Park to any position, press firmly on the brake pedal, and press the release button on the top of the shift lever, then move the lever. You cannot shift out of Park when the ignition switch is in the LOCK (0) or ACCESSORY (I) position.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Automatic Transmission

To shift from:	Do this:
P to R	Press the brake pedal, and press the shift lever release button.
R to P N to R D to S	Press the shift lever release button.
S to D D to N N to D R to N	Move the shift lever.

Park (P) — This position mechanically locks the transmission. Use Park whenever you are turning off or starting the engine. To shift out of Park, you must press on the brake pedal and have your foot off the accelerator pedal. Press the release button on the top of the shift lever to move it.

If you have done all of the above and still cannot move the lever out of Park, see **Shift Lock Release** on page 401 .

To avoid transmission damage, come to a complete stop before shifting into Park. You must also press the release button to shift into Park. The shift lever must be in Park before you can turn the ignition switch to the LOCK (0) position, or remove the built-in key from the ignition switch.

Reverse (R) — Press the brake pedal and press the release button to shift from Park to reverse. To shift from reverse to neutral, come to a complete stop and then shift. Press the release button before shifting into reverse from neutral.

Neutral (N) — Use neutral if you need to restart a stalled engine, or if it is necessary to stop briefly with the engine idling. Shift to the Park position if you need to leave your vehicle for any reason. Press on the brake pedal when you are moving the shift lever from neutral to another gear.

Drive (D) — Use this position for your normal driving. The transmission automatically adjusts to keep the engine at the best speed for the driving conditions.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

S Position (S) — To shift into the S position, press the release button on the front of the shift lever, and move the lever to S. This position is similar to D, except only gears from first to fourth are selected. The S position keeps the transmission from cycling between fourth and fifth gears in stop-and-go driving.

With the shift lever in D or S, you can also use the paddle shifters to shift the transmission up or down. Once you begin to use the paddle shifters in S, the transmission will no longer upshift or downshift automatically. For more information of driving with the paddle shifters, see page 403 .

Engine Speed Limiter
If you exceed the maximum speed for the gear you are in, the engine speed will enter into the tachometer's red zone. If this occurs, you may feel the engine cut in and out. This is caused by a limiter in the engine's computer controls. The engine will run normally when you reduce the rpm below the red zone.

Shift Lock Release
This allows you to move the shift lever out of Park if the normal method of pushing on the brake pedal does not work.

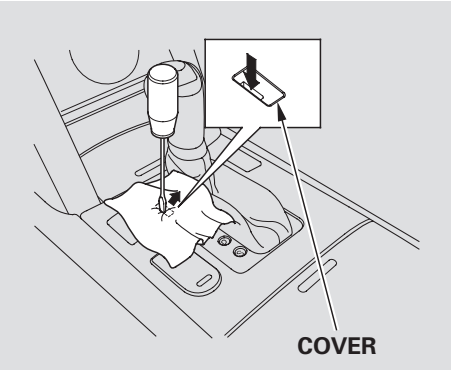
1. Set the parking brake.

2. Make sure the ignition switch is in the LOCK (0) position.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Automatic Transmission



3. Put a cloth on the edge of the shift lock release slot cover next to the shift lever. Use a small flat-tip screwdriver or a metal fingernail file to remove the cover. Carefully pry on the edge of the cover.

4. Insert the built-in key into the shift lock release slot.

5. Push down on the built-in key while you press the release button and move the shift lever out of Park to neutral.

6. Remove the built-in key from the shift lock release slot, then reinstall the cover. Make sure the notch on the cover is on the driver's side. Press the brake pedal, and restart the engine.

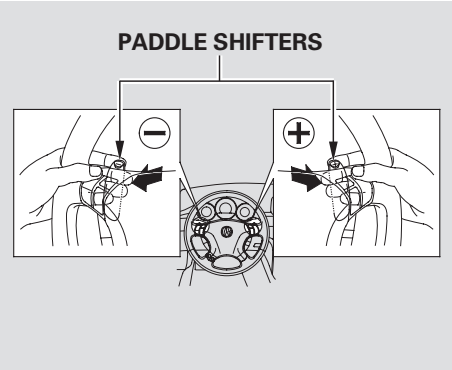
If you need to use the shift lock release, it means your vehicle is developing a problem. Have the vehicle checked by a dealer.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Driving with the Paddle Shifters

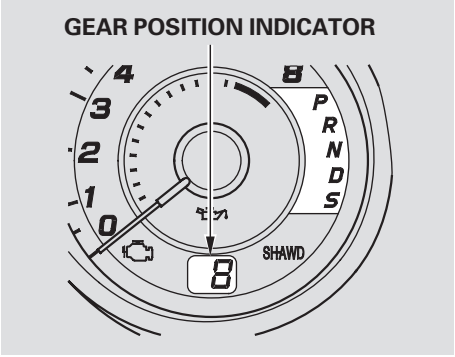
Using the Paddle Shifters in the D position (D-Paddle Shift Mode)
When you are driving in the D position, pulling either paddle shifter switches from the ordinary automatic transmission [drive mode (D)] to the D-paddle shift mode. You can shift the transmission up or down manually with the paddle shifters.

Downshifting gives you more power when climbing, and provides engine braking when going down a steep hill.



To shift up or down, use the + (right) or − (left) paddle shifter on either side of the steering wheel.

Each time you pull + (right), the transmission shifts to a higher gear. Pull − (left) to downshift. You will see the selected gear number on the instrument panel.



When you pull either paddle shifter, the gear position indicator shows you the selected gear number.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Driving with the Paddle Shifters

The transmission control system monitors the accelerator pedal use and your driving conditions. When you press the accelerator pedal as in normal driving, the system judges that you are driving at a constant cruising speed without using the paddle shifters. Under these conditions, D-paddle shift mode is canceled, and the transmission automatically returns to drive mode (D).

When the transmission returns to drive mode (D), the displayed gear number disappears.

The transmission remains in the selected gear if you do not accelerate.

Each time you pull either paddle shifter, the transmission shifts one gear up or down. If you want to shift up or down more than two gears, pull the paddle shifter twice, pause, and then pull it again.

The automatic transmission will not allow you to shift up or down if:

- You downshift before the engine speed reaches the highest threshold of the lower gear.

  If you try to do this, the gear position indicator will flash the number of the lower gear several times, then return to a higher gear.

- You upshift before the engine speed reaches the lowest threshold of the higher gear.

- You pull both paddle shifters at the same time.

- You pull one of the two paddle shifters with another paddle shifter being pressed.

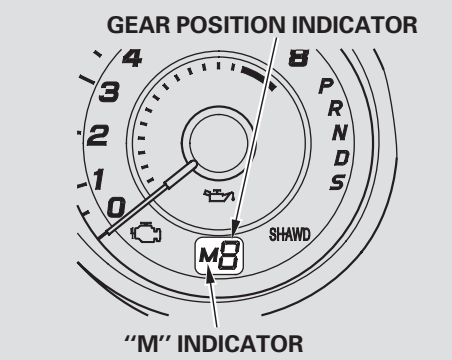
The transmission downshifts to first gear and returns to drive mode (D) when the vehicle comes to a complete stop and the vehicle speed is about 9 mph (15 km/h).

If there is a problem in the transmission while you are driving with the paddle shifters, the D indicator flashes, the D-paddle shift mode is canceled, and the transmission returns to drive mode (D).

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Using the Paddle Shifters in the S position (Sequential Shift Mode)
With the shift lever in the S position, you can select the sequential shift mode to shift gears; much like a manual transmission using the paddle shifters, but without a clutch pedal.

To enter the sequential shift mode, press the release button on the front of the shift lever, move the lever to the S position, then pull either paddle shifter. To cancel the sequential shift mode and return to the ordinary automatic transmission, move the shift lever from the S position. When moving the shift lever, be careful not to operate incorrectly. While you are driving in the sequential shift mode, the transmission will not automatically return to ordinary automatic transmission.



When you move the shift lever from "D" to "S" position and pull either paddle shifter, the gear position indicator displays "M" along with the selected gear number.

To upshift, pull the + (right) paddle shifter. To downshift, pull the − (left) paddle shifter.

When you accelerate from a stop, the transmission starts in first gear, and you must manually upshift between first and fifth gears. Make sure you upshift before the engine speed reaches the tachometer's red zone.

The transmission remains in the selected gear (5, 4, 3, 2, or 1). There is no automatic downshift when you push the accelerator pedal to the floor.

When you are driving in 4th or 5th gear, the transmission downshifts to the lower gear under the following conditions:

- The vehicle slows down to a certain speed.
- You press the brake pedal.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Driving with the Paddle Shifters

Downshifting with the paddle shifter allows you to increase the engine braking when going down steep or long hills, and provides more power when climbing uphills. You can upshift the transmission manually to reduce the rpm.

The transmission also shifts automatically as the vehicle comes to a complete stop. It downshifts to first gear when the vehicle speed reaches 9 mph (15 km/h) or less.

The automatic transmission will not allow you to shift up or down if:

- You downshift before the engine speed reaches the highest threshold of the lower gear.

  If you try to do this, the gear position indicator will flash the number of the lower gear several times, then return to a higher gear.

- Also, you cannot upshift with the paddle shifter before the engine speed reaches the lower limit of the higher gear.

- You try to shift to third or a higher gear when the vehicle is stationary.

- You pull both paddle shifters at the same time.

- You pull one of the two paddle shifters with another paddle shifter being pressed.

Here are the speed ranges for upshifting and downshifting.

To Shift from	Speed range
1 → 2	over 0 mph (0 km/h)
2 → 3	over 9 mph (15 km/h)
3 → 4	over 17 mph (27 km/h)
4 → 5	over 38 mph (60 km/h)

To Shift from	Speed range
5 → 4	under 131 mph (210 km/h)
4 → 3	under 94 mph (150 km/h)
3 → 2	under 63 mph (100 km/h)
2 → 1	under 31 mph (50 km/h)

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

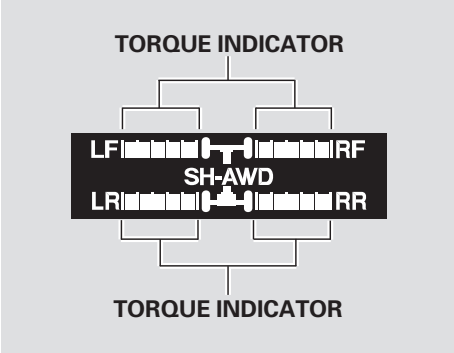
Starting in Second Gear

When you are in sequential shift mode, and the vehicle is stopped, pull the + (right) paddle shifter to shift to second gear. You will see "M2" in the display. Starting in second gear helps to reduce wheelspin in deep snow or on a slippery surface.

The super handling-all wheel drive (SH-AWD) system is a full time all-wheel-drive system that automatically controls and transfers varying amounts of engine torque to all wheels independently, according to the driving conditions.

While the SH-AWD system helps to enhance the vehicle's driving stability in all situations, it is still your responsibility to drive and corner at reasonable speeds and to leave a sufficient margin of safety.

SH-AWD Torque Distribution Monitor



The SH-AWD torque distribution monitor on the multi-information display shows you the amount of torque being sent to the wheels. Each wheel — right front (RF), left front (LF), right rear (RR), and left rear (LR) — has its own torque indicator.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Super Handling-All Wheel Drive™ (SH-AWD®) System

Each torque indicator is displayed as a bar graph divided into 5 segments. The number of segments represents the amount of torque distributed to each wheel.

When there is only a slight change in torque distribution while driving, such as cruising on level roads at the same speed, the torque distribution monitor may stop displaying the amount of torque. This is not a system problem. The monitor will show the amount if the system senses any change in torque distribution.

If the SH-AWD indicator blinks while driving, it indicates the differential temperature is too high. You will also see an "SH-AWD DIFF TEMP. HIGH" message on the multi-information display. If this happens, pull to the side of the road when it is safe, shift to Park, and let the engine idle until the indicator goes out. If the indicator does not go out, take your vehicle to a dealer to have it checked.

If the SH-AWD indicator on the instrument panel stays on, and the "CHECK SH-AWD SYSTEM" message also appears on the multi-information display, there is problem with the SH-AWD system.

Your vehicle still has normal front-wheel drive with vehicle stability assist (VSA), but does not have the advantages of SH-AWD. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer as soon as possible.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Parking

Always use the parking brake when you park your vehicle. Make sure the parking brake is set firmly or your vehicle may roll if it is on an incline.

Set the parking brake before you put the transmission in Park. This keeps the vehicle from moving and putting pressure on the parking mechanism in the transmission.

Parking Tips

- Make sure the moonroof and the windows are closed.
- Turn off the lights.
- Place any packages, valuables, etc., in the trunk or take them with you.
- Lock the doors.
- Never park over dry leaves, tall grass, or other flammable materials. The hot three way catalytic converter could cause these materials to catch on fire.
- If the vehicle is facing uphill, turn the front wheels away from the curb.
- If the vehicle is facing downhill, turn the front wheels toward the curb.
- Check the indicator on the instrument panel to verify that the security system is set.
- Make sure the parking brake is fully released before driving away. Driving with the parking brake partially set can overheat or damage the rear brakes.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Braking System

Your vehicle is equipped with disc brakes at all four wheels. A power assist helps reduce the effort needed on the brake pedal. The brake pedal assist function increases the force you apply to the brake pedal during an emergency stop. When the brake pedal assist is activated, the e-pretensioners (if equipped) tighten front seat belts (see page 24). The anti-lock brake system (ABS) helps you retain steering control when braking very hard (see page 411).

Resting your foot on the pedal keeps the brakes applied lightly, builds up heat, reduces their effectiveness and reduces brake pad life. In addition, fuel economy can be reduced. It also keeps your brake lights on all the time, confusing drivers behind you.

Constant application of the brakes when going down a long hill builds up heat and reduces their effectiveness. Use the engine to assist the brakes by taking your foot off the accelerator and downshifting to a lower gear.

Check the brakes after driving through deep water. Apply the brakes moderately to see if they feel normal. If not, apply them gently and frequently until they do. Be extra cautious in your driving.

Braking System Design
The hydraulic system that operates the brakes has two separate circuits. Each circuit works diagonally across the vehicle (the left-front brake is connected with the right-rear brake, etc.). If one circuit should develop a problem, you will still have braking at two wheels.

Brake Pad Wear Indicators
If the brake pads need replacing, you will hear a distinctive, metallic screeching sound when you apply the brake pedal. If you do not have the brake pads replaced, they will screech all the time. It is normal for the brakes to occasionally squeal or squeak when you apply them.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Anti-lock Brakes (ABS)

The anti-lock brake system (ABS) helps prevent the wheels from locking up, and helps you retain steering control by pumping the brakes rapidly, much faster than a person can do it.

The electronic brake distribution (EBD) system, which is part of the ABS, also balances the front-to-rear braking distribution according to vehicle loading.

You should never pump the brake pedal. Let the ABS work for you by always keeping firm, steady pressure on the brake pedal. This is sometimes referred to as "stomp and steer."

You will feel a pulsation in the brake pedal when the ABS activates, and you may hear some noise. This is normal: it is the ABS rapidly pumping the brakes. On dry pavement, you will need to press on the brake pedal very hard before the ABS activates. However, you may feel the ABS activate immediately if you are trying to stop on snow or ice.

ABS Indicator

If this indicator comes on, the anti-lock function of the braking system has shut down. The brakes still work like a conventional system, but without anti-lock. You should have your dealer inspect your vehicle as soon as possible.

When the ABS indicator comes on, you will also see a "CHECK ABS SYSTEM" message on the multi-information display.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Anti-lock Brakes (ABS)

If the ABS indicator and the brake system indicator come on together, and the parking brake is fully released, the EBD system may also be shut down.

Test your brakes as instructed on page 502 . If the brakes feel normal, drive slowly and have your vehicle repaired by your dealer as soon as possible. Avoid sudden hard braking which could cause the rear wheels to lock up and possibly lead to a loss of control.

The VSA indicator will come on along with the ABS indicator.

Important Safety Reminders

ABS does not reduce the time or distance it takes to stop the vehicle. It only helps with steering control during braking.

ABS will not prevent a skid that results from changing direction abruptly, such as trying to take a corner too fast or making a sudden lane change. Always drive at a safe speed for the road and weather conditions.

ABS cannot prevent the loss of stability. Always steer moderately when you are braking hard. Severe or sharp steering wheel movement can still cause your vehicle to veer into oncoming traffic or off the road.

A vehicle with ABS may require a longer distance to stop on loose or uneven surfaces, such as gravel or snow, than a vehicle without anti-lock.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Collision Mitigation Brake System (CMBS)

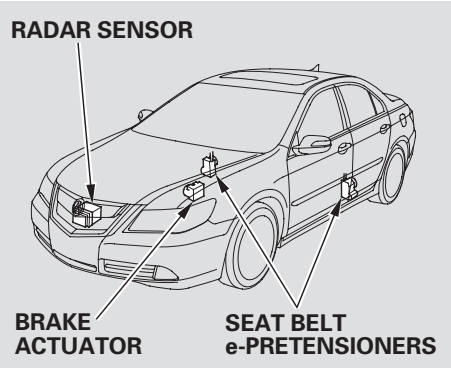
Overview

If equipped

The collision mitigation brake system (CMBS) can assist you when there is a possibility of your vehicle hitting the vehicle in front of you. It is designed to reduce the speed of your vehicle before an unavoidable collision occurs and, if possible, to alert you to a potential collision while there is time to prevent it. Here is a brief description of what the CMBS can do:

- When your speed is above 10 mph (15 km/h), the CMBS radar sensor in the front grille can sense a vehicle ahead of you. When your vehicle gets too close to the vehicle ahead of you, the system may activate a warning beep, causing automatic application of the brakes, and causing the e-pretensioners to tighten the front seat belts (see page 24).
- The CMBS does not activate if the speed difference between the two vehicles is less than 10 mph (15 km/h). CMBS may also not activate if you turn the steering wheel to avoid the collision.

When the CMBS activates, the brake lights also come on.

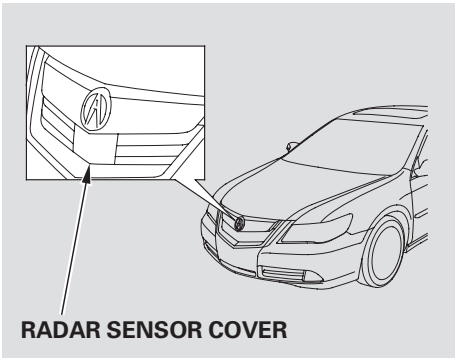


The CMBS consists of a radar sensor in the front grille, a brake actuator in the engine compartment, an indicator on the instrument panel, seat belt e-pretensioners on the front seats, and an on/off switch on the dashboard.

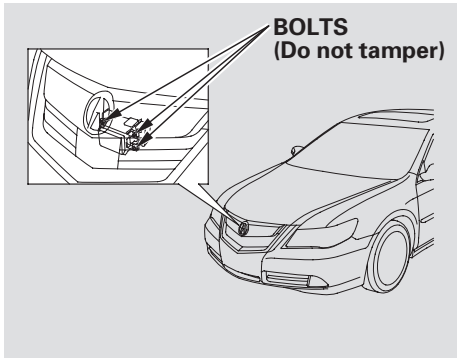
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Collision Mitigation Brake System (CMBS)

Radar Sensor



The radar sensor is located under the Acura emblem in the front grille. If the radar sensor cover is covered with mud, dirt, dead leaves, wet snow, etc., or if you put a sticker on it, the CMBS will automatically shut off, and the CMBS indicator on the instrument panel will come on. You will also see a “CHECK CMBS RADAR SENSOR” message on the multi-information display for about 5 seconds.



Always keep the radar sensor cover clean. If it gets dirty, clean it with water or a mild detergent. Never use chemical solvents or polishing powder.

There are three bolts on the sides of the radar sensor. Do not tamper with these bolts, or you may cause the system to malfunction.

Do not allow anything to impact the radar sensor or the radar sensor cover. If either of these parts receives a strong impact, turn off the system by pressing the CMBS off switch, and have your vehicle checked by a dealer. If the front grille ever needs to be repaired, consult a dealer first.

If the radar sensor cover or the radar sensor ever needs to be removed, take your vehicle to a dealer.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

NOTICE

When the CMBS is on, the radar sensor constantly scans for vehicles ahead of you. This means that driving on a road with a few or no vehicles could cause a CHECK CMBS RADAR SENSOR message to appear on the multi-information display. This is normal and not a cause for concern.

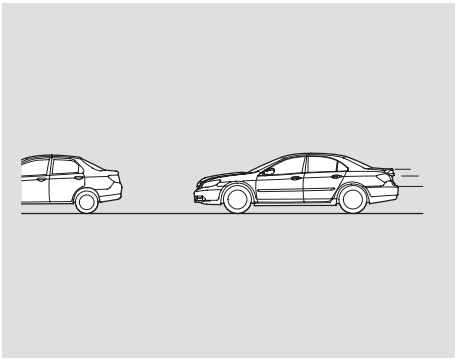
The radar sensor may not always scan as intended. Here are two examples:

- Your vehicle is tilted because of a heavy load in the rear or from modifications to the suspension. Do not overload your vehicle (see Carrying Cargo on page 389), and do not make any modifications to the suspension (see Accessories and Modifications on page 387).
- The tires are not correctly maintained. Always make sure the tire pressures are correct (see page 474), and that the tires are the correct size and in good condition (see Tires on page 474).

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Collision Mitigation Brake System (CMBS)

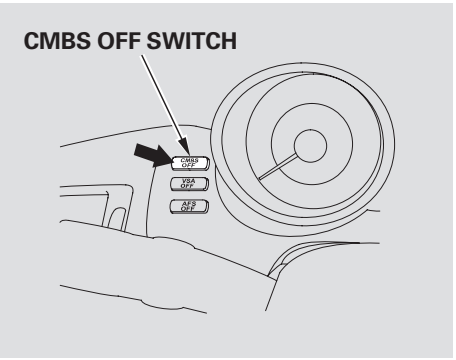
Collision Alarm



If the system senses a likely collision with a vehicle or object ahead of you, it alerts you with an audible and a visual alarm.

The audible alarm is a constant beeping sound; the visual alert is an amber colored BRAKE message that flashes on the multi-information display. If these alarms come on, take the appropriate means to prevent a collision (apply the brakes, change lanes, etc.).

CMBS OFF Switch



To turn the CMBS off, press the CMBS OFF switch on the dashboard for about 1 second. When you do this, a beeper sounds, a CMBS indicator on the instrument panel comes on, and a CMBS OFF message appears on the multi-information display. To turn the system back on, press the switch again for about 1 second.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

When you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position, the CMBS is turned on if it was on previously.

Automatic Shut Off

Any of the conditions below can cause the CMBS to shut off. When the system shuts off, the CMBS indicator in the instrument panel comes on, and a CHECK CMBS SYSTEM message appears on the multi-information display for about 5 seconds.

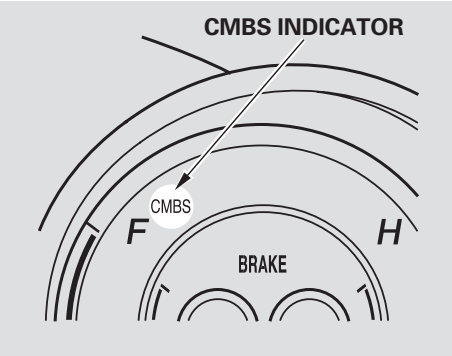
- An abnormal tire condition is detected (wrong tire size, flat tire, etc.).
- Extended off-road or mountainous driving.
- Driving your vehicle with the parking brake applied.
- Driving your vehicle in bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).
- A dirty emblem on the front grille.

The CMBS will automatically recover when these conditions are improved.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Collision Mitigation Brake System (CMBS)

CMBS Indicator



This indicator comes on for several seconds when you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position. It also comes on and stays on when you turn the CMBS off by pressing the CMBS OFF switch.

To turn the CMBS back on, make sure the vehicle is stopped and the ignition switch is in the ON (II) position, then press the CMBS OFF switch for about 1 second.

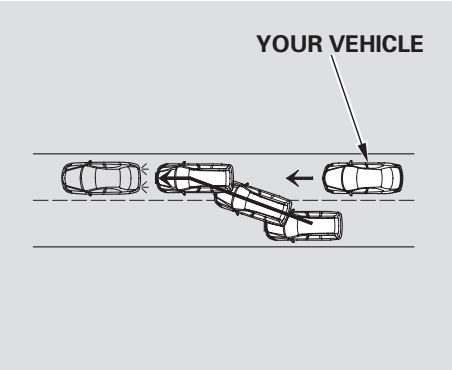
The CMBS indicator normally comes on under these conditions:

- When you manually turn off the system.
- When the system shuts off automatically.
- When you drive in bad weather (rain, snow, fog, etc.).
- If anything covers the front grille (dirt, mud, dry leaves, wet snow, etc.).
- When the VSA system indicator comes on (see page 429).
- When you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position, the CMBS indicator should come on for a few seconds, then go off. If the indicator comes on at any other time and a CHECK CMBS SYSTEM message appears on the multi-information display, there is a problem with the CMBS. You can still drive your vehicle, but CMBS will not be operating. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

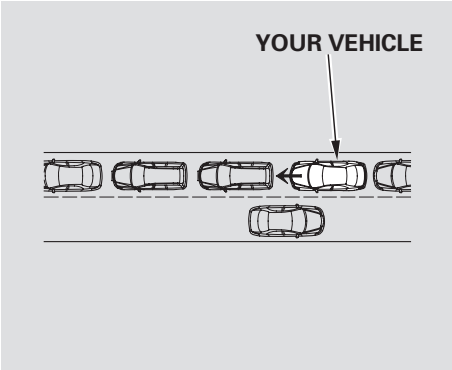
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Limitations
The CMBS may not activate under some conditions. Here are a few examples:

- The distance between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead of you is too short.
- A vehicle cuts in front of you at a slow speed.



- A vehicle cuts in front of you and brakes suddenly.
- When you accelerate rapidly and approach the vehicle ahead of you at high speed.
- Immediately after you drive off.

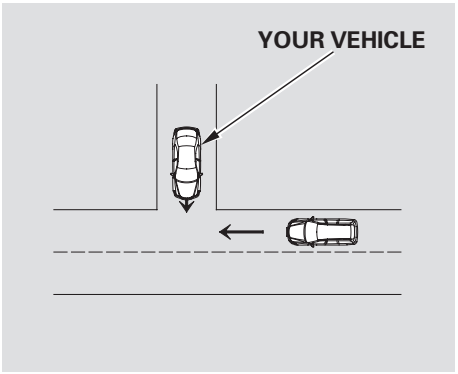


- Driving in heavy, stop-and-go traffic.
- The vehicle ahead of you is a motorcycle or other small vehicle.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Collision Mitigation Brake System (CMBS)



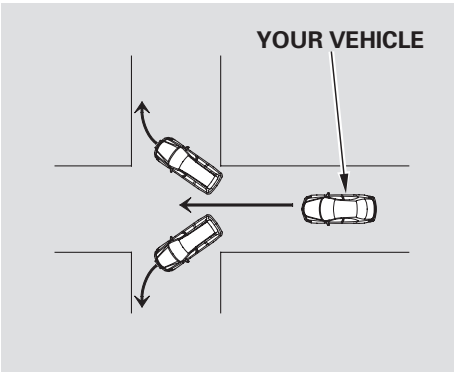
- A vehicle suddenly crosses in front of you.

NOTICE

The CMBS is not designed to detect pedestrians.

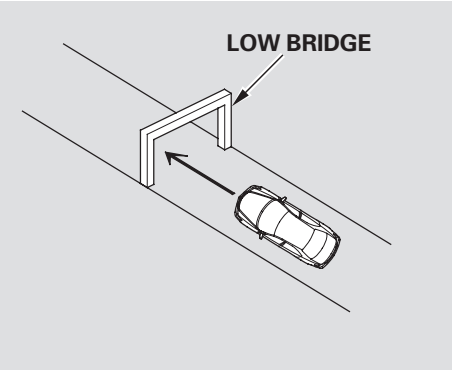
Even with little or no chance of a collision, the CMBS may activate under these conditions:

- When you change lanes quickly, then overtake the vehicle ahead of you.

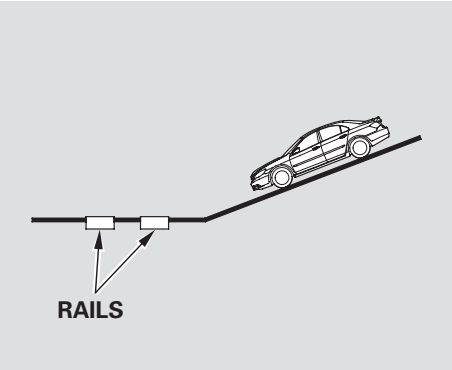


- When you approach or pass a vehicle ahead of you that is turning left or right in an intersection.

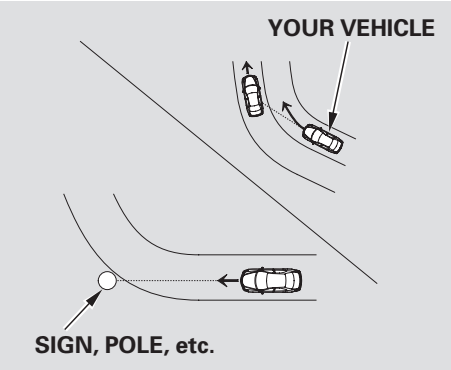
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



- When you pass a low bridge at high speed.
- When you go over a sharp-edged speed bump at high speed.
- When you go over areas of construction on the road surface.



- When you approach train tracks at the bottom of a hill and you do not apply the brakes.



Because of the road condition (curved, winding, etc.) or the state of your vehicle (turning angle, lane position, etc.), CMBS can sometimes mistake a stationary object (light pole, traffic sign, etc.) as a vehicle ahead of you and temporarily operate. This is normal.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Collision Mitigation Brake System (CMBS)

Important Safety Reminder
The main purpose of the CMBS is to reduce the severity of injuries caused by an unavoidable collision. While the CMBS may help to alert you and minimize the severity of a collision, it may not activate in every dangerous situation.

Even with the CMBS, it is still your responsibility to operate the brake pedal and steering wheel appropriately, according to the driving conditions.

As required by the FCC:
This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

This device complies with Industry Canada Standard RSS-210.
Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)

Your vehicle is equipped with a tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS) that turns on every time you start the engine and monitors the pressure in your tires while driving.

Each tire has its own pressure sensor. If the air pressure of a tire becomes significantly low, the sensor in that tire immediately sends a signal that causes the low tire pressure/TPMS indicator in the instrumental panel and the appropriate tire position indicator on the tire pressure monitor on the multi-information display (see page 425) to come on.

Low Tire Pressure/ TPMS Indicator

When the low tire pressure/TPMS indicator is on, one or more of your tires is significantly underinflated. The multi-information display also shows a “CHECK TIRE PRESSURE” message (see page 425). You should stop and check your tires as soon as possible, and inflate them to the proper pressure as indicated on the vehicle’s tire information placard.

Driving on a significantly under inflated tire causes the tire to overheat and can lead to tire failure. Underinflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tire tread life, and may affect the vehicle’s handling and stopping ability.

Because tire pressure varies by temperature and other conditions, the low tire pressure/TPMS indicator may come on unexpectedly. For example, if you check and fill your tires in a warm area, then drive in extremely cold weather, the tire pressure will be lower than measured and could be underinflated and cause the low tire pressure/ TPMS indicator to come on. Or, if you check and adjust your tire pressure in cooler conditions, and drive into extremely hot conditions, the tire may become overinflated. However, the low tire pressure/ TPMS indicator will not come on if the tires are overinflated.

Refer to page 474 for tire inflation guidelines.

If there is a problem with the TPMS, this indicator begins to flash. It stops flashing after approximately 1 minute, then stays on. You will also see a “CHECK TPMS SYSTEM” message on the multi-information display (see page 427).

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)

Although your tire pressure is monitored, you must manually check the tire pressures monthly.

Each tire, including the spare, should be checked monthly when the vehicle is cold, and set to the recommended inflation pressure as specified on the vehicle placard and in the owner's manual (see page 474).

If you think you can safely drive a short distance to a service station, proceed slowly to the station, then inflate the tire to the recommended pressure.

If the tire is flat, or if the tire pressure is too low to continue driving, replace the tire with the compact spare tire (see page 488).

Changing a Tire with TPMS

If you have a flat tire, the low tire pressure/TPMS and tire monitor indicators will come on. Replace the indicated flat tire with the compact spare tire (see page 489).

After the flat tire is replaced with the spare tire, the low tire pressure/ TPMS indicator stays on while driving. After several miles (kilometers) driving, this indicator begins to flash, then stays on again. You will also see a "CHECK TPMS SYSTEM" message on the multi-information display. This is normal; the system cannot monitor the spare tire pressure. Manually check the spare tire pressure to be sure it is correct.

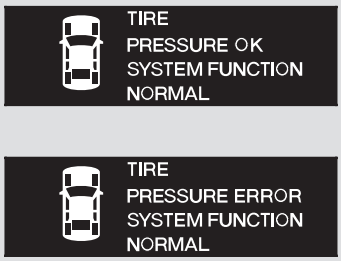
This indicator and the warning message on the multi-information display will go off, after several miles (kilometers) driving, when the spare tire is replaced with the specified regular tire equipped with the tire pressure monitor sensor.

Never use a puncture-repairing agent in a flat tire. If used, you will have to replace the tire pressure sensor. Have the flat tire repaired by your dealer as soon as possible.

Each wheel is equipped with a tire pressure sensor mounted inside the tire behind the valve stem. You must use TPMS specific wheels. It is recommended that you always have your tires serviced by your dealer or a qualified technician.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

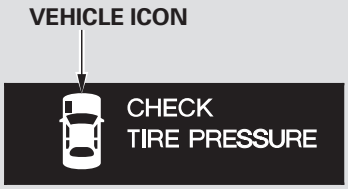
Tire Pressure Monitor



When all tire pressures are normal, the multi-information display will show "TIRE PRESSURE OK SYSTEM FUNCTION NORMAL."

When any of the tires has low pressure, the multi-information display shows a "TIRE PRESSURE ERROR SYSTEM FUNCTION NORMAL" message (see page 76).

If there is a system error with the TPMS, the multi-information display shows a "SYSTEM FUNCTION ERROR" message (see page 79), and the tire pressure readings will not be displayed. You will also see a "CHECK TPMS SYSTEM" message on the multi-information display (see page 427).



If any of the tires have low pressure, the multi-information display will show a "CHECK TIRE PRESSURE" message. You will also see one or more low pressure tire positions blinking in the display (see page 79).

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)

If the low tire pressure/TPMS indicator and the low tire position on the low tire pressure monitor do not go out after inflating the tires to the specified values, have your dealer check the system as soon as possible.

Tire Pressure Readings

U.S.

When the TPMS is functioning normally, you can see the tire pressure readings of each tire in psi (U.S. models) or kPa (Canadian models) by pressing the SEL/RESET button while the multi-information display shows the tire pressure monitor.

CANADA

If one or more tires have low pressure, the low tire pressure/TPMS indicator on the instrument panel also comes on (see page 423).

When cruise control is on while driving, the pressure reading cannot be checked by the tire pressure monitor on the multi-information display.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

It is possible that the pressures shown on the multi-information display and the pressures you manually measure are slightly different.

If the difference is significant or you cannot make the low tire pressure/TPMS indicator and message on the multi-information display go out after inflating the tires to the specified values, have your dealer check the system as soon as possible.

Check TPMS System Message

If there is a problem with the TPMS, the multi-information display shows a “CHECK TPMS SYSTEM” message.

Also, the low tire pressure/TPMS indicator begins to flash (see page 67).

If you see this message, the tire pressure monitor shows a “SYSTEM FUNCTION ERROR” message. The system may not be able to detect or signal low tire pressure as intended. Also, the tire pressure readings will not be displayed. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer as soon as possible.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)

If the low tire pressure/TPMS indicator comes on, or the multi-information display shows a "CHECK TPMS SYSTEM" message, the VSA system automatically turns on even when the VSA system is turned off by pressing the VSA OFF switch (see page 430). If this happens, you cannot turn the VSA system off by pressing the VSA OFF switch again.

When you restart the vehicle with the compact spare tire, the TPMS system message will also be displayed on the multi-information display after several miles (kilometers) driving.

As required by the FCC:
This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

This device complies with Industry Canada Standard RSS-210.
Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA®), aka Electronic Stability Control (ESC), System

The vehicle stability assist (VSA) system helps to stabilize the vehicle during cornering if the vehicle turns more or less than desired. It also assists you in maintaining traction while accelerating on loose or slippery road surfaces. It does this by regulating the engine's output and by selectively applying the brakes.

When VSA activates, you may notice that the engine does not respond to the accelerator in the same way it does at other times. There may also be some noise from the VSA hydraulic system. You will also see the VSA activation indicator blink.

The VSA system cannot enhance the vehicle's driving stability in all situations and does not control your vehicle's entire braking system. It is still your responsibility to drive and corner at reasonable speeds and to leave a sufficient margin of safety.

VSA Activation Indicator

When VSA activates, you will see the VSA activation indicator blink (see page 65).

VSA System Indicator

If this indicator comes on while driving, pull to the side of the road when it is safe, and turn off the engine. Reset the system by restarting the engine. If the VSA system indicator stays on or comes back on while driving, have the VSA system inspected by your dealer.

NOTE: The main function of the VSA system is generally known as Electronic Stability Control (ESC). The system also includes a traction control function.

If the indicator does not come on when the ignition switch is turned to the ON (II) position, there may be a problem with the VSA system. Have your dealer inspect your vehicle as soon as possible (see page 65).

When the VSA system indicator comes on, you will also see a "CHECK VSA SYSTEM" message on the multi-information display.

Without VSA, your vehicle still has normal braking and cornering ability, but it does not have VSA traction and stability enhancement.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

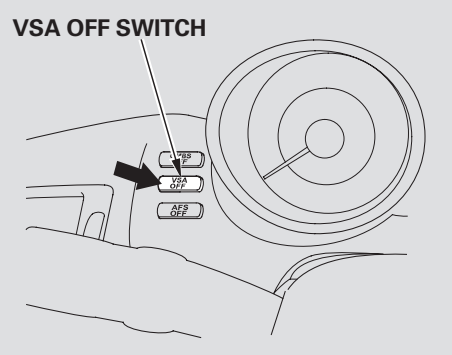
Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA®), aka Electronic Stability Control (ESC), System

If the low tire pressure/TPMS indicator comes on (see page 423), or the multi-information display shows a "CHECK TPMS SYSTEM" message with the indicator flashing (see page 427), the VSA system automatically turns on even if the VSA system is turned off with the VSA OFF switch. In this case, you cannot turn the VSA system off by pressing the VSA OFF switch again.

VSA OFF Switch

In certain unusual conditions when your vehicle gets stuck in shallow mud or fresh snow, it may be easier to free it with the VSA temporarily switched off. When the VSA system is off, the traction control system is also off. You should only attempt to free your vehicle with the VSA off if you are not able to free it when the VSA is on.

Immediately after freeing your vehicle, be sure to switch the VSA on again. We do not recommend driving your vehicle with the VSA and traction control systems switched off.



This switch is at the right side of the left vent. Press and hold it until you hear a beep.

When VSA is off, the VSA activation indicator comes on as a reminder. Press and hold the switch again. It turns the system back on.

VSA is turned on every time you start the engine, even if you turned it off the last time you drove the vehicle.

VSA and Tire Sizes

Driving with varying tire or wheel sizes may cause the VSA to malfunction. When replacing tires, make sure they are of the same size and type as your original tires (see page 479).

If you install winter tires, make sure they are the same size as those that were originally supplied with your vehicle. Exercise the same caution during winter driving as you would if your vehicle was not equipped with VSA.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Towing a Trailer

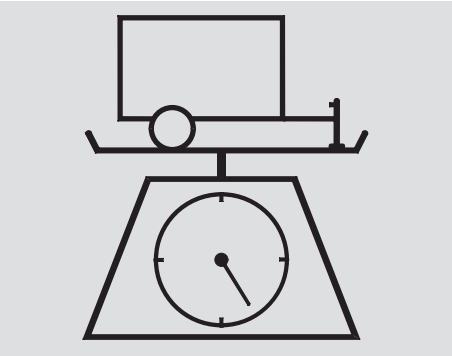
Your vehicle has been designed primarily to carry passengers and their cargo. You can also use it to tow a trailer if you carefully observe the load limits, use the proper equipment, and follow the guidelines in this section.

⚠ WARNING

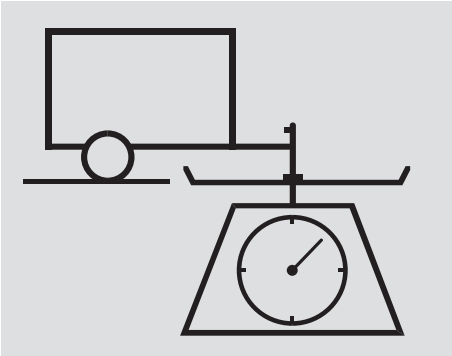
Exceeding any load limit or improperly loading your vehicle and trailer can cause a crash in which you can be seriously hurt or killed.

Check the loading of your vehicle and trailer carefully before starting to drive.

Load Limits



- **Total Trailer Weight:** The maximum allowable weight of the trailer and everything in or on it must not exceed 1,000 lbs (450 kg). Towing a load that is too heavy can seriously affect your vehicle's handling and performance. It can also damage the engine and drivetrain.



- **Tongue Load:** The weight that the tongue of a fully-loaded trailer puts on the hitch should be approximately 10 percent of the trailer weight. Too much tongue load reduces front-tire traction and steering control. Too little tongue load can make the trailer unstable and cause it to sway.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Towing a Trailer

To achieve a proper tongue load, start by loading 60% of the load toward the front of the trailer and 40% toward the rear, then re-adjust the load as needed.

- **Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR):**
  The maximum allowable weight of the vehicle, all occupants, all accessories, all cargo, and the tongue load is: 4,980 lbs (2,260 kg)

- **Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR):**
  The maximum allowable weight of the vehicle axles are: 2,680 lbs (1,215 kg) on the front axle, and 2,380 lbs (1,080 kg) on the rear axle.

Checking Loads
The best way to confirm that all loads are within limits is to check them at a public scale. For public scales in your area, check your local phone book, or contact your trailer dealer or rental agency for assistance.

If you cannot get to a public scale, you can estimate the total trailer weight by adding the weight of your trailer (as quoted by the manufacturer) with everything in or on the trailer.

If you normally pull the same load each time you tow a trailer, you can use a suitable scale or a special tongue load gauge to check the tongue load the first time you set up a towing combination (a fully loaded vehicle and trailer), then recheck the tongue load whenever the conditions change.

Towing Equipment and Accessories
Towing generally requires a variety of supplemental equipment, depending on the size of your trailer, how much load you are towing, and where you tow. To ensure the best quality, we recommend that you purchase Acura equipment whenever possible.

Discuss your needs with your trailer sales or rental agency, and follow the guidelines in the rest of this section. Also make sure that all equipment is properly installed and maintained, and that it meets federal, state, province, and local regulations.

Hitches
Any hitch used on your vehicle must be properly bolted to the underbody.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Safety Chains

Always use safety chains when you tow a trailer. Make sure the chains are secured to the trailer and hitch, and that they cross under the tongue and can catch the trailer if it becomes unhitched. Leave enough slack to allow the trailer to turn corners easily, but do not let the chains drag on the ground.

Trailer Brakes

There are two common types of trailer brakes: surge and electric. Surge brakes are common for boat trailers, since the brakes will get wet.

If you choose electric brakes, be sure they are electronically actuated. Do not attempt to tap into your vehicle's hydraulic system. No matter how successful it may seem, any attempt to attach trailer brakes to your vehicle's hydraulic system will lower braking effectiveness and create a potential hazard.

See your trailer dealer or rental agency for more information on installing electric brakes.

Trailer Lights

Trailer lights and equipment must comply with federal, state/province, and local regulations. Check with your local trailer sales or rental agencies for the requirements in the area where you plan to tow, and use only equipment designed for your vehicle.

Since lighting and wiring vary by trailer type and brand, you should have a qualified technician install a suitable connector between the vehicle and the trailer. Improper equipment or installation can cause damage to your vehicle's electrical system and affect your vehicle warranty.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Towing a Trailer

Additional Towing Equipment

Many states and Canadian provinces/territories require special outside mirrors when towing a trailer. Even if they don't, you should install special mirrors if you cannot clearly see behind you, or if the trailer creates a blind spot.

Ask your trailer sales or rental agency if any other items are recommended or required for your towing situation.

Pre-Tow Checklist

When preparing to tow, and before driving away, be sure to check the following:

- The vehicle has been properly serviced, and the suspension and the cooling system are in good operating condition.
- The trailer has been properly serviced and is in good condition, and the lights and brakes on the trailer are working properly.
- All weights and loads are within limits.
- The hitch, safety chains, and any other attachments are secure.
- All items in or on the trailer are properly secured and cannot shift while you drive.
- Your vehicle tires and spare are properly inflated, and the trailer tires and spare are inflated as recommended by the trailer maker.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Towing a Trailer

Driving Safely With a Trailer

The added weight, length, and height of a trailer will affect your vehicle's handling and performance, so driving with a trailer requires some special driving skills and techniques.

For your safety and the safety of others, take time to practice driving maneuvers before heading for the open road, and follow the guidelines below.

Towing Speeds and Gears

Drive slower than normal in all driving situations, and obey posted speed limits for vehicles with trailers. Use the D position when towing a trailer on level roads. See "***Driving on Hills***" in the next column for additional gear information. Do not exceed 55 mph (88 km/h). At higher speeds, the trailer may sway or affect vehicle handling.

Making Turns and Braking

Make turns more slowly and wider than normal. The trailer tracks a smaller arc than your vehicle, and it can hit or run over something the vehicle misses. Allow more time and distance for braking. Do not brake or turn suddenly as this could cause the trailer to jackknife or turn over.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Towing a Trailer, Towing Your Vehicle

Driving on Hills
When climbing hills, closely watch your temperature gauge. If it nears the red (Hot) mark, turn the air conditioning off, reduce speed and, if necessary, pull to the side of the road to let the engine cool.

If you must stop when facing uphill, use the foot brake or parking brake. Do not try to hold the vehicle in place by pressing on the accelerator, as this can cause the automatic transmission to overheat.

When driving down hills, reduce your speed, and shift down to S position, or use the paddle shifters to the lower gear (3, 2 or 1) in the S position. When towing a trailer, do not "ride" the brakes, and remember, it will take longer to slow down and stop when towing a trailer.

Handling Crosswinds and Buffeting
Crosswinds and air turbulence caused by passing trucks can disrupt your steering and cause the trailer to sway. When being passed by a large vehicle, keep a constant speed, and steer straight ahead. Do not try to make quick steering or braking corrections.

Backing Up
Always drive slowly and have someone guide you when backing up. Grip the *bottom* of the steering wheel; turn the wheel to the left to get the trailer to move to the left, and turn the wheel right to move the trailer to the right.

Parking
Follow all normal precautions when parking, including firmly setting the parking brake and putting the transmission in Park. Also, place wheel chocks at each of the trailer's tires.

Towing Your Vehicle
Your vehicle is not designed to be towed behind a motor home. If your vehicle needs to be towed in an emergency, see page 513 .

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

This section explains why it is important to keep your vehicle well maintained and how to follow basic maintenance safety precautions.

This section also includes instructions on how to read the maintenance minder messages on the multi-information display, and instructions for simple maintenance tasks you may want to take care of yourself.

If you have the skills and tools to perform more complex maintenance tasks on your vehicle, you may want to purchase the service manual. See page 535 for information on how to obtain a copy, or see your dealer.

Maintenance Safety 438
Maintenance Minder 439
Fluid Locations 449
Engine Compartment Covers 450
Adding Engine Oil 452
Changing the Engine Oil and Filter 453
Engine Coolant 455
Windshield Washers 458
Automatic Transmission Fluid 458
Brake Fluid 460
Power Steering Fluid 460
Timing Belt 461
Lights 462
Dust and Pollen Filter 470
Cleaning the Seat Belts 470
Floor Mats 471
Wiper Blades 472
Wheels 474
Tires 474
Checking the Battery 483
Vehicle Storage 486

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Maintenance Safety

All service items not detailed in this section should be performed by a certified technician or other qualified mechanic.

Important Safety Precautions
To eliminate potential hazards, read the instructions before you begin, and make sure you have the tools and skills required.

- Make sure your vehicle is parked on level ground, the parking brake is set, and the engine is off.
- To clean parts, use a commercially available degreaser or parts cleaner, not gasoline.
- To reduce the possibility of fire or explosion, keep cigarettes, sparks, and flames away from the battery and all fuel-related parts.
- Wear eye protection and protective clothing when working with the battery or compressed air.

⚠WARNING

Improperly maintaining this vehicle, or failing to correct a problem before driving can cause a crash in which you can be seriously hurt or killed.

Always follow the inspection and maintenance recommendations and schedules in this owner's manual.

Potential Vehicle Hazards

- **Carbon Monoxide poison from engine exhaust.** Be sure there is adequate ventilation whenever you operate the engine.
- **Burns from hot parts.** Let the engine and exhaust system cool down before touching any parts.
- **Injury from moving parts.** Do not run the engine unless instructed to do so.

⚠WARNING

Failure to properly follow maintenance instructions and precautions can cause you to be seriously hurt or killed.

Always follow the procedures and precautions in this owner's manual.

Some of the most important safety precautions are given here. However, we cannot warn you of every conceivable hazard that can arise in performing maintenance. Only you can decide whether or not you should perform a given task.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

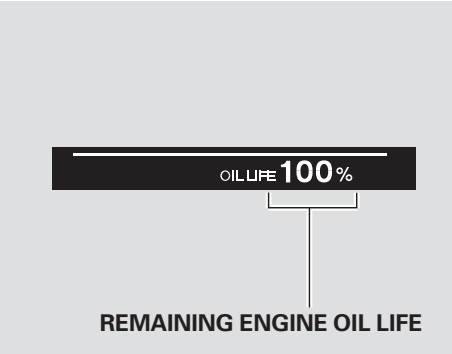
Maintenance Minder

One of the most convenient and important features of the multi-information display on your vehicle is the maintenance minder.

Based on engine operating conditions and accumulated engine revolutions, the onboard computer in your vehicle calculates the remaining engine oil life.

The system also displays the code for other scheduled maintenance items needing service.

Engine Oil Life Display



To see the remaining engine oil life displayed on the lower right corner on the multi-information display as a percentage, turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position, and press the SEL/RESET button on the steering wheel repeatedly until the engine oil life appears (see page 73).

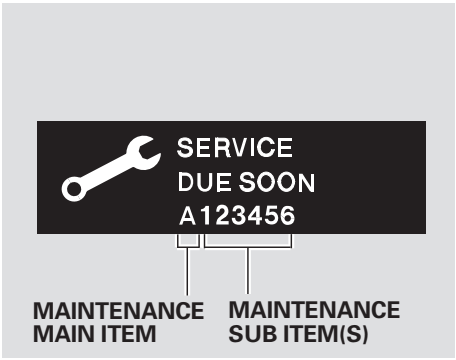
The remaining engine oil life is displayed according to the table shown below.

Calculated Engine Oil Life (%)	Displayed Engine Oil Life (%)
100% — 91%	100%
90% — 81%	90%
80% — 71%	80%
70% — 61%	70%
60% — 51%	60%
50% — 41%	50%
40% — 31%	40%
30% — 21%	30%
20% — 16%	20%
15% — 11%	15%
10% — 6%	10%
5% — 1%	5%
0%	0%

CONTINUED

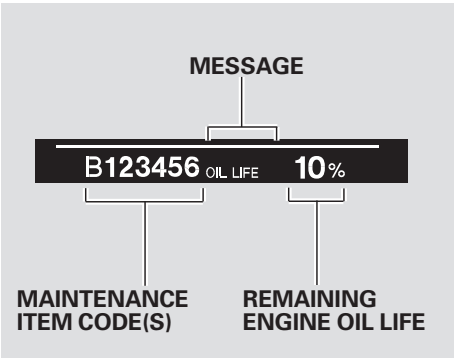
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Maintenance Minder



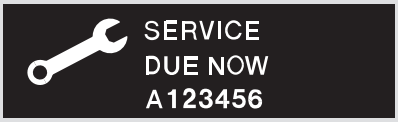
When the remaining engine oil life is 15 to 6 percent, the multi-information display shows a “SERVICE DUE SOON” message along with the maintenance schedule code indicating the main and sub items required at the time of the oil change. Refer to page 447 and 448 for a complete list of the maintenance main items and sub items.

The message will be canceled if the ▼ or ▲ button on the steering wheel is pressed. Press the ▼ or ▲ button to see the message again.



Press the SEL/RESET button on the steering wheel repeatedly to select the engine oil life. The message “OIL LIFE” along with the percentage of oil life remaining and the maintenance item code(s), appear on the lower part of the multi-information display.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



When the remaining engine oil life is 1 to 5 percent, the multi-information display shows a “SERVICE DUE NOW” message with the maintenance items. When you see this message have the indicated maintenance performed as soon as possible.

The message will be canceled if the ▼ or ▲ button on the steering wheel is pressed. Press the ▼ or ▲ button to see the message again.

Press the SEL/RESET button on the steering wheel repeatedly to select the engine oil life. The message “SERVICE OIL LIFE”, along with “5%”, and the maintenance item code(s) are displayed on the lower part of the multi-information display when the calculated engine oil life is 1 to 5 percent (see page 439).

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Maintenance Minder

The maintenance item code or codes indicate the main and sub items required at the time of the oil change (see page 447).

Your dealer will reset the display after completing the required maintenance service. You will see “OIL LIFE 100%” on the display the next time you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position.

If maintenance service is done by someone other than your dealer, reset the maintenance minder as follows:

1. Turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position.
2. If the oil life minder is not displayed, press the SEL/RESET button on the steering wheel repeatedly until it is.

U.S.

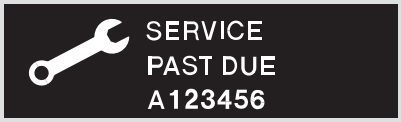
CANADA

3. Press and hold the SEL/RESET button on the steering wheel for more than 10 seconds. The remaining engine oil life reset mode will be shown on the multi-information display.

- To reset the engine oil life, press the ▼ or ▲ button on the steering wheel to select RESET on the display, and press the SEL/RESET button.
- To cancel resetting the oil life, press the ▲ or ▼ button on the steering wheel to select CANCEL on the display, and press the SEL/RESET button.

If you do not complete the reset procedure within 30 seconds after selecting the reset mode, the mode will be canceled automatically.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



If the indicated maintenance service is not done and the remaining engine oil life reaches 0%, the multi-information display will show the message “SERVICE PAST DUE” and the maintenance item code(s). This message is displayed when the total distance traveled is less than 10 miles (for U.S. models) or 10 km (for Canadian models) after the engine oil life became 0%.

Immediately have the service performed, and make sure to reset the oil life minder as previously described.

The message will be canceled if the ▼ or ▲ button on the steering wheel is pressed. Press the ▼ or ▲ button to see the message again.

Press the SEL/RESET button on the steering wheel repeatedly to select the engine oil life minder. The message “SERVICE OIL LIFE”, along with “0%”, and the maintenance item code are displayed on the lower part of the multi-information display when the calculated engine oil life is 0 percent.

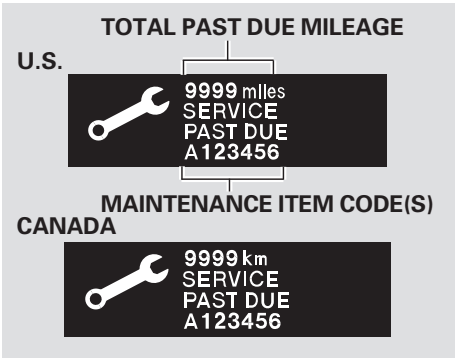
CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Maintenance Minder

Also, the percentage “0” keeps blinking on the display.

This particular message is displayed when the mileage after the engine oil life became 0% reaches 10 miles (for U.S. models)/10 km (for Canadian models).



If the indicated required service is not done and the remaining engine oil life becomes 0%, the multi-information display will show a “SERVICE PAST DUE” message, the total distance traveled after the remaining oil life became 0%, and the maintenance item code(s).

This message is displayed again when you drive over 10 miles (for U.S. models) or 10 km (for Canadian models) after seeing the 0% message.

Immediately have the service performed, and make sure to reset the display as previously described.

The maximum total mileage shown with this message is “9999 mile” (for U.S. models) or “9999 km” (for Canadian models).

The message will be canceled if the ▼ or ▲ button on the steering wheel is pressed. Press the ▼ or ▲ button to see the message again.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

U.S.

CANADA

When you press the SEL/RESET button to select the engine oil life minder, the message "SERVICE", along with the maintenance item code and the total negative mileage after the oil life became 0 percent, will be displayed on the lower part of the multi-information display.

This particular message is displayed when you drive over 10 miles (for U.S. models) or 10 km (for Canadian models) after seeing 0%.

The maximum total negative mileage is "−9999 mile" (for U.S. models) or "−9999 km" (for Canadian models).

Important Maintenance Precautions

If you have the required service performed but do not reset the display, or reset the display without performing the service, the system will not show the proper maintenance intervals. This can lead to serious mechanical problems because you will no longer have an accurate record of when maintenance is needed.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Maintenance Minder

Your authorized dealer knows your vehicle best and can provide competent, efficient service. However, service at a dealer is not mandatory to keep your warranties in effect. Maintenance may be done by any qualified service facility or person who is skilled in this type of automotive service. Keep all receipts as proof of completion, and have the person who does the work fill out your Maintenance Journal or Canadian Maintenance Log. Check your warranty booklet for more information.

We recommend using Acura parts and fluids whenever you have maintenance done. These are manufactured to the same high quality standards as the original components, so you can be confident of their performance and durability.

U.S. Vehicles:
Maintenance, replacement, or repair of emissions control devices and systems may be done by any automotive repair establishment or individual using parts that are "certified" to EPA standards.

According to state and federal regulations, failure to perform maintenance on the items marked with # will not void your emissions warranties. However, Acura recommends that all maintenance services be performed in accordance with the intervals indicated by the multi-information display.

Owner's Maintenance Checks
You should check the following items at the specified intervals. If you are unsure of how to perform any check, turn to the appropriate page listed.

- Engine oil level — Check every time you fill the fuel tank. See page 383 .
- Engine coolant level — Check the radiator reserve tank every time you fill the fuel tank. See page 383 .
- Automatic transmission — Check the fluid level monthly. See page 458 .
- Brakes — Check the fluid level monthly. See page 460 .
- Tires — Check the tire pressure monthly. Examine the tread for wear and foreign objects. See page 474 .
- Lights — Check the operation of the headlights, parking lights, taillights, high-mount brake light, and license plate lights monthly. See page 462 .

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Maintenance Minder

Symbol	Maintenance Main Items
A	● Replace engine oil*
B	● Replace engine oil and oil filter ● Inspect front and rear brakes ● Check parking brake adjustment ● Inspect these items: ● Tie rod ends, steering gear box, and boots ● Suspension components ● Driveshaft boots ● Brake hoses and line (including ABS) ● All fluid levels and condition of fluids ● Exhaust system# ● Fuel lines and connections#

*: If the message ''SERVICE DUE NOW'' does not appear more than 12 months after the display is reset, change the engine oil every year.

#: See information on maintenance and emissions warranty on page 446.

NOTE: ● Independent of the maintenance messages on the multi-information display, replace the brake fluid every 3 years.
● Inspect idle speed every 160,000 miles (256,000 km).
● Adjust the valves during services A, B, 1, 2, or 3 only if they are noisy.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

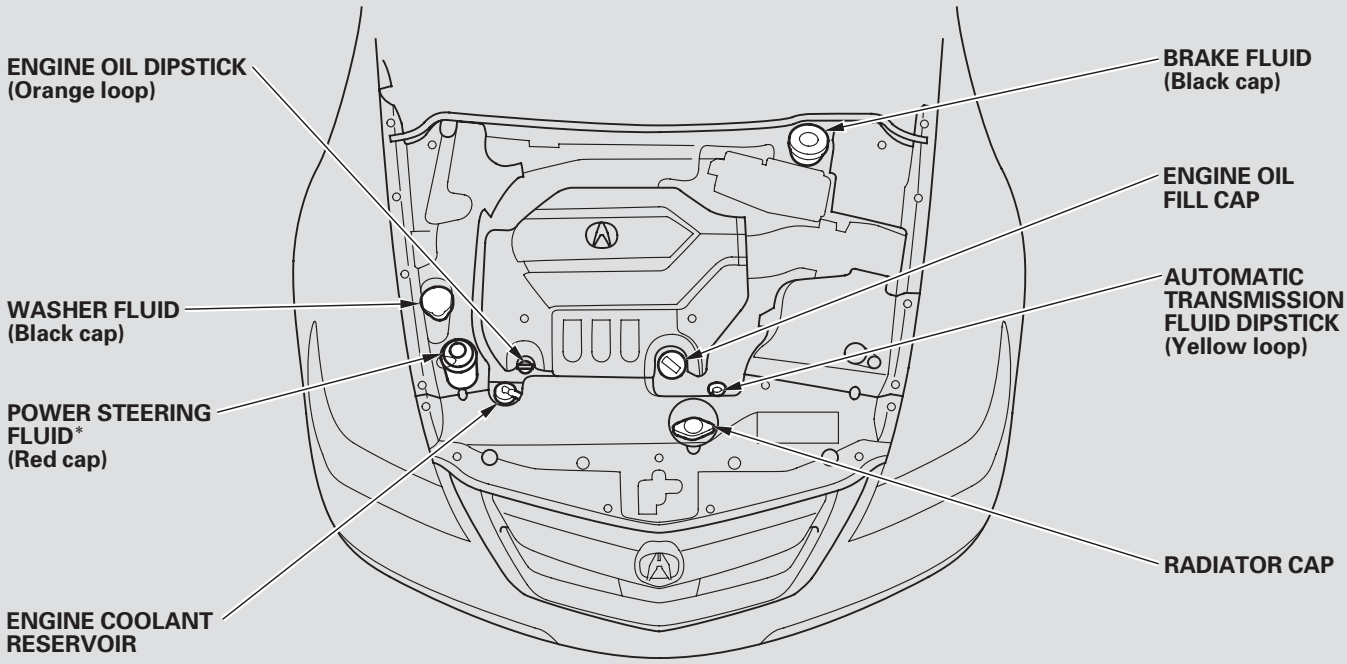
Maintenance Minder

Symbol	Maintenance Sub Items
1	• Rotate tires
2	• Replace air cleaner element If you drive in dusty conditions, replace every 15,000 miles (24,000 km). • Replace dust and pollen filter If you drive primarily in urban areas that have high concentrations of soot in the air from industry and from diesel-powered vehicles, replace every 15,000 miles (24,000 km). • Inspect drive belt
3	• Replace transmission and transfer fluid Driving in mountainous areas at very low vehicle speeds or trailer towing results in higher transmission and transfer temperatures. This requires transmission and transfer fluid changes more frequently than recommended by the Maintenance Minder. If you regularly drive your vehicle under these conditions, have the transmission and transfer fluid changed at 60,000 miles (100,000 km), then every 30,000 miles (48,000 km).
4	• Replace spark plugs • Replace timing belt and inspect water pump If you drive regularly in very high temperatures (over 110°F, 43°C), or in very low temperatures (under −20°F, −29°C), replace every 60,000 mile (U.S.)/ 100,000 km (Canada). • Inspect valve clearance
5	• Replace engine coolant

Symbol	Maintenance Sub Items
6	• Replace rear differential fluid Driving in mountainous areas at very low vehicle speeds or trailer towing results in higher level of mechanical (shear) stress to fluid. This requires differential fluid changes more frequently than recommended by the Maintenance Minder. If you regularly drive your vehicle under these conditions, have the differential fluid changed at 7,500 miles (12,000 km), then every 15,000 miles (24,000 km).

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Fluid Locations



*: The power steering fluid reservoir is located under the right compartment cover.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Engine Compartment Covers

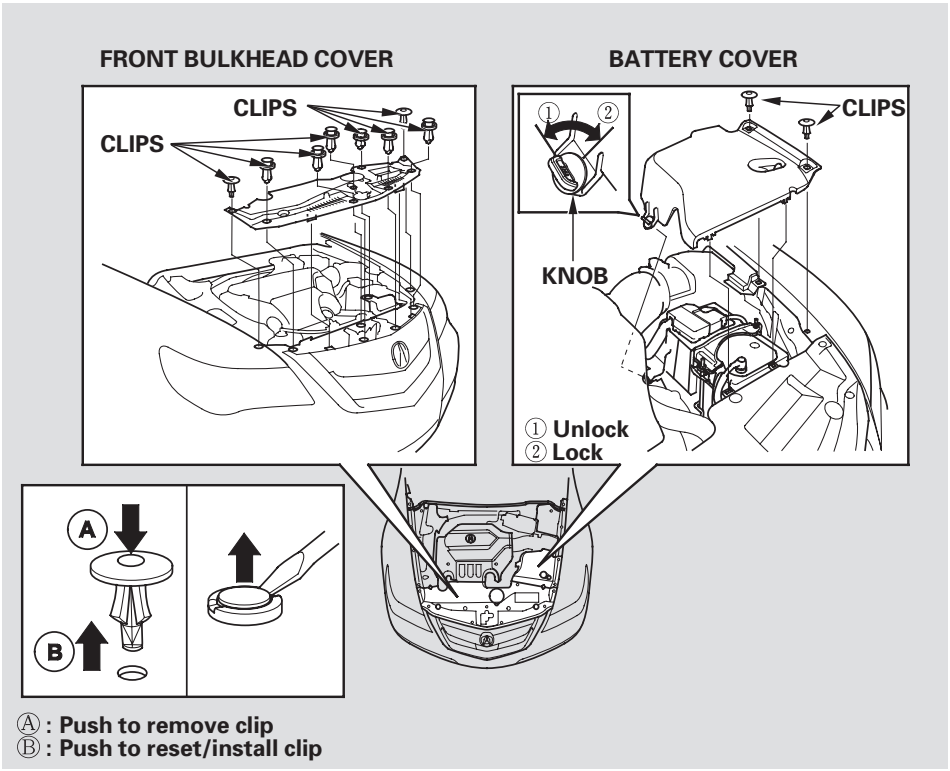
The component parts in the engine compartment are protected by several covers. You may need to remove the covers when you perform some simple maintenance work.

All of the covers are secured by holding clips.

To remove the battery cover, turn the knob of the fastener and remove the holding clips by pushing on the center of each fastener head.

To remove the front bulkhead cover:

1. Remove the battery cover.
2. Remove the holding clips by pushing on the center of each fastener head.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Engine Compartment Covers

To remove the left engine compartment cover:

1. Remove the battery cover (see page 450).

2. Remove the holding clips by pushing on the center of each fastener head.

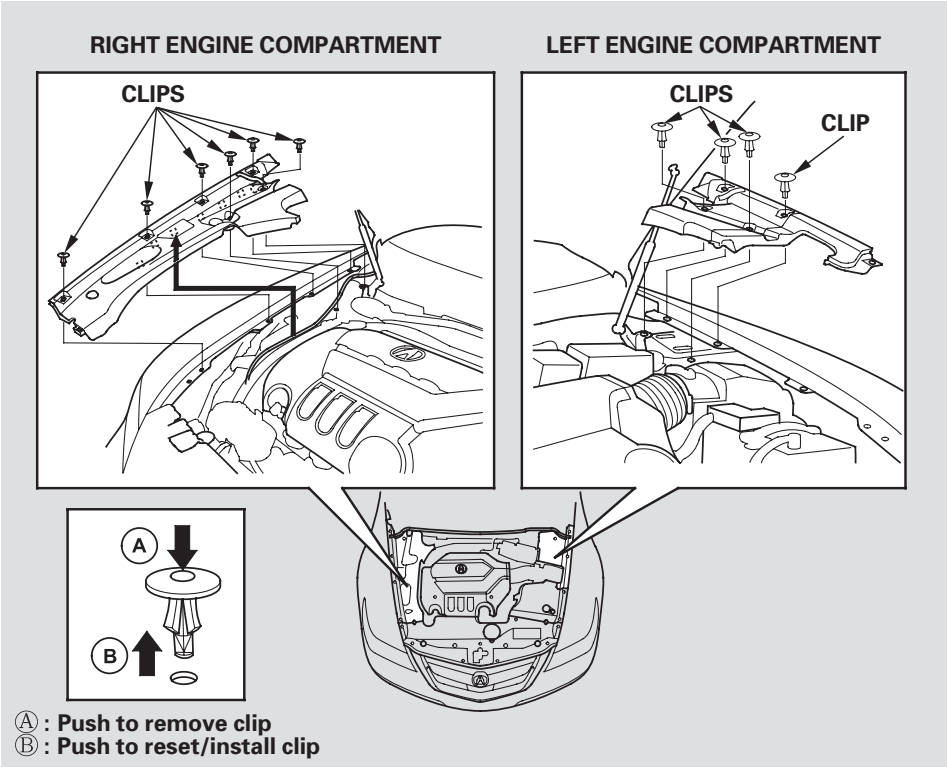
To remove the right engine compartment cover:

1. Remove the battery and front bulkhead covers (see page 450).

2. Remove the holding clips by pushing on the center of each fastener head.

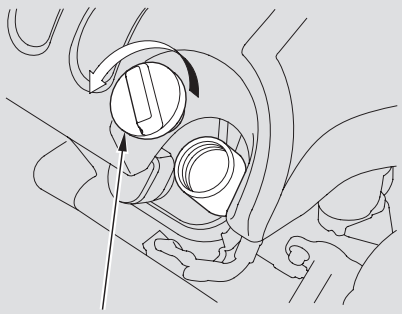
3. Take the windshield washer hose out from the holder on the bottom side of the cover.

When reinstalling the covers, make sure the pins and tabs are in their proper positions.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Adding Engine Oil



ENGINE OIL FILL CAP

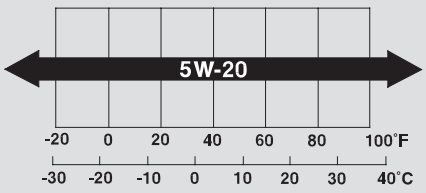
Unscrew and remove the engine oil fill cap on top of the valve cover. Pour in the oil slowly and carefully so you do not spill any. Clean up any spills immediately. Spilled oil could damage components in the engine compartment.

Install the engine oil fill cap, and tighten it securely. Wait a few minutes, and recheck the oil level. Do not fill above the upper mark; you could damage the engine.

Recommended Engine Oil

Oil is a major contributor to your engine's performance and longevity. Always use a premium-grade 5W-20 detergent oil displaying the API Certification Seal. This seal indicates the oil is energy conserving, and that it meets the American Petroleum Institute's latest requirements.

API CERTIFICATION SEAL



Ambient Temperature

Acura Motor Oil is the preferred 5W-20 lubricant for your vehicle. It is highly recommended that you use Acura Motor Oil in your vehicle for optimum engine protection. Make sure the API Certification Seal says "For Gasoline Engines."

The oil viscosity or weight is provided on the container's label. 5W-20 oil is formulated for year-round protection of your vehicle to improve cold weather starting and fuel economy.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Adding Engine Oil, Changing the Engine Oil and Filter

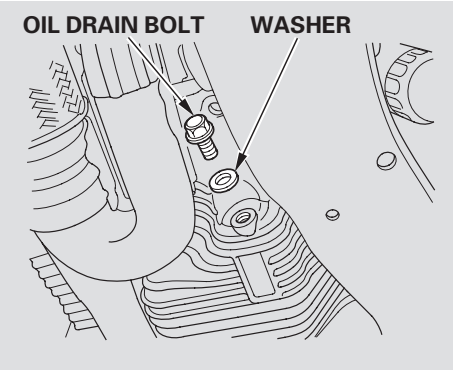
Synthetic Oil
You may use a synthetic motor oil if it meets the same requirements given for a conventional motor oil, it displays the API certification seal, and it is the proper weight. You must follow the oil and filter change intervals shown on the maintenance minder display.

Engine Oil Additives
Your vehicle does not require any oil additives. Additives may adversely affect the engine or transmission performance and durability.

Changing the Engine Oil and Filter
Always change the oil and filter according to the maintenance messages shown on the multi-information display. The oil and filter collect contaminants that can damage your engine if they are not removed regularly.

Changing the oil and filter requires special tools and access from underneath the vehicle. The vehicle should be raised on a service station-type hydraulic lift for this service. Unless you have the knowledge and proper equipment, you should have this maintenance done by a skilled mechanic.

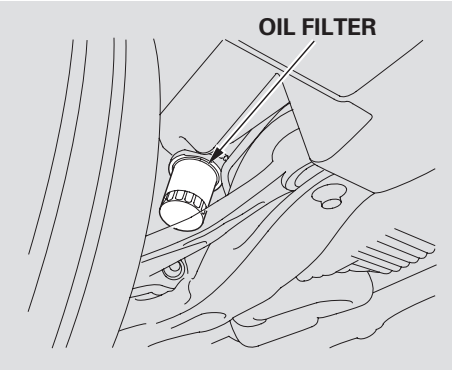
1. Run the engine until it reaches normal operating temperature, then shut it off.



2. Open the hood, and remove the engine oil fill cap. Remove the oil drain bolt and washer from the bottom of the engine. Drain the oil into an appropriate container.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Changing the Engine Oil and Filter



3. Remove the oil filter, and let the remaining oil drain. A special wrench (available from your dealer) is required.

   Make sure the oil filter gasket is not stuck to the contacting surface of the engine. If it is, remove it before installing a new oil filter.

4. Install a new oil filter according to the instructions that come with it.

5. Put a new washer on the drain bolt, then reinstall the drain bolt. Tighten the drain bolt to:
   29 lbf·ft (39 N·m , 4.0 kgf·m)

6. Refill the engine with the recommended oil.
   Engine oil change capacity (including filter):
   4.5 US qt (4.3 ℓ)

7. Replace the engine oil fill cap. Start the engine. The oil pressure indicator should go out within 5 seconds. If it does not, turn off the engine, and check your work.

8. Let the engine run for several minutes, then check the drain bolt and oil filter for leaks.

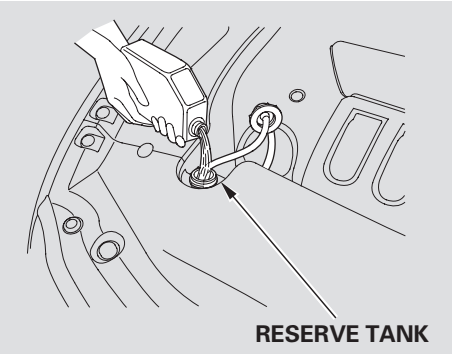
9. Turn off the engine and let it sit for several minutes, then check the oil level on the dipstick. If necessary, add more oil.

NOTICE

Improper disposal of engine oil can be harmful to the environment. If you change your own oil, please dispose of the used oil properly. Put it in a sealed container, and take it to a recycling center. Do not discard it in a trash bin or dump it on the ground.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Adding Engine Coolant



If the coolant level in the reserve tank is at or below the MIN line, add coolant to bring it up to the MAX line. Inspect the cooling system for leaks.

Always use Honda Long-life Anti-freeze/Coolant Type 2. This coolant is pre-mixed with 50 percent antifreeze and 50 percent distilled water. Never add straight antifreeze or plain water.

If Honda antifreeze/coolant is not available, you may use another major-brand non-silicate coolant as a temporary replacement. Make sure it is a high-quality coolant recommended for aluminum engines. Continued use of any non-Honda coolant can result in corrosion, causing the cooling system to malfunction or fail. Have the cooling system flushed and refilled with Honda antifreeze/coolant as soon as possible.

If the reserve tank is completely empty, you should also check the coolant level in the radiator.

⚠WARNING

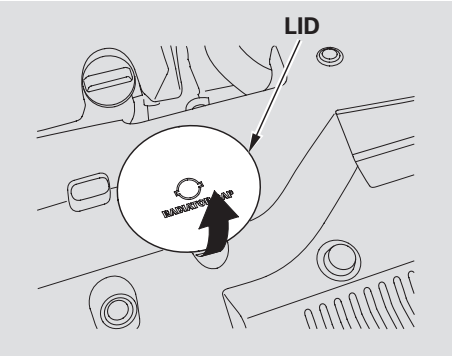
Removing the radiator cap while the engine is hot can cause the coolant to spray out, seriously scalding you.

Always let the engine and radiator cool down before removing the radiator cap.

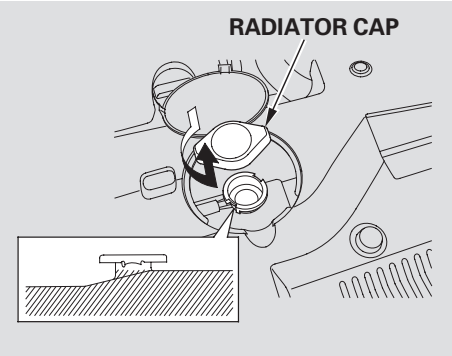
CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Engine Coolant

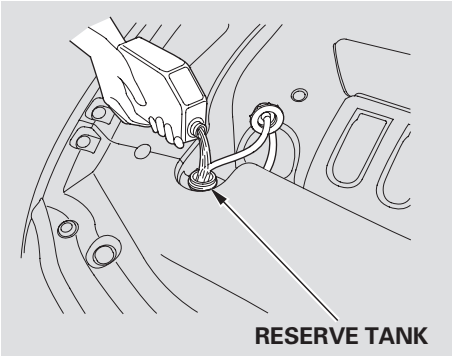


1. Lift up the lid on the front bulkhead cover from the front.



2. When the radiator and engine are cool, relieve any pressure in the cooling system by turning the radiator cap counterclockwise, without pressing down.

3. Remove the radiator cap by pushing down and turning counterclockwise.



4. The coolant level should be up to the base of the filler neck. Add coolant if it is low.

   Pour the coolant slowly and carefully so you do not spill any. Clean up any spill immediately; it could damage components in the engine compartment.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

5. Put the radiator cap back on, and tighten it fully.

6. Pour coolant into the reserve tank. Fill it to halfway between the MAX and MIN marks. Put the cap back on the reserve tank.

7. Reinstall the lid.

Do not add any rust inhibitors or other additives to your vehicle's cooling system. They may not be compatible with the coolant or engine components.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

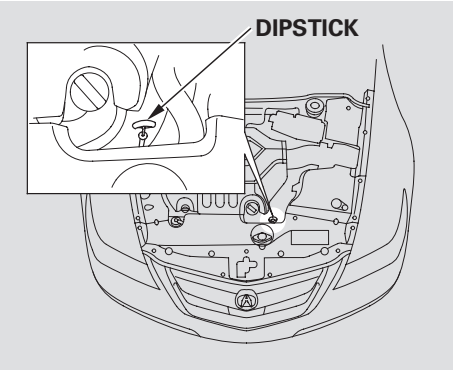
Windshield Washers, Automatic Transmission Fluid

Windshield Washers
Check the fluid level in the windshield washer reservoir at least monthly during normal use.
If the washer fluid is low, a "WASHER FLUID LOW" message appears on the multi-information display.
Fill the reservoir with a good-quality windshield washer fluid. This increases the cleaning capability and prevents freezing in cold weather.
When you refill the reservoir, clean the edges of the windshield wiper blades with windshield washer fluid on a clean cloth. This will help to condition them.

NOTICE: *Do not use engine antifreeze or a vinegar/water solution in the windshield washer reservoir. Antifreeze can damage your vehicle's paint, while a vinegar/water solution can damage the windshield washer pump. Use only commercially-available windshield washer fluid.*

Automatic Transmission Fluid
Check the fluid level with the engine at normal operating temperature.

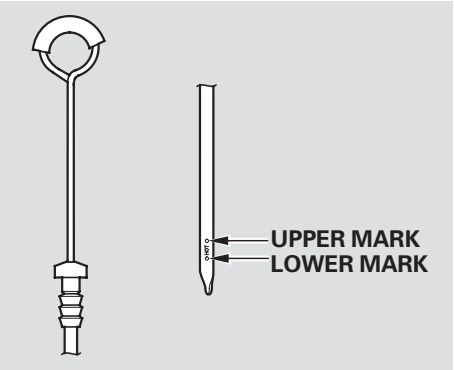
1. Park the vehicle on level ground. Start the engine, let it run until the radiator fan comes on, then shut off the engine. For accurate results, wait about 60 seconds (but no longer than 90 seconds) before doing step 2.



2. Remove the dipstick (yellow loop) from the transmission, and wipe it with a clean cloth.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Automatic Transmission Fluid



3. Insert the dipstick all the way into the transmission as shown.

4. Remove the dipstick and check the fluid level. It should be between the upper and lower marks.

5. If the level is below the lower mark, add fluid into the dipstick hole to bring it to the level between the upper and lower marks.

Pour the fluid slowly and carefully so you do not spill any. Clean up any spill immediately; it could damage components in the engine compartment.

Always use Acura ATF-Z1 (automatic transmission fluid).

NOTICE

Use only Acura ATF-Z1 (automatic transmission fluid). Do not mix with other transmission fluids.
Using transmission fluid other than Acura ATF-Z1 may cause deterioration in transmission operation and durability, and could result in damage to the transmission.
Damage resulting from the use of transmission fluid other than Acura ATF-Z1 is not covered by the Acura new vehicle warranty.

6. Insert the dipstick all the way back into the transmission securely as shown in the illustration.

The transmission should be drained and refilled with new fluid when this service is shown by a maintenance message on the multi-information display.

If you are not sure how to add fluid, contact your dealer.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

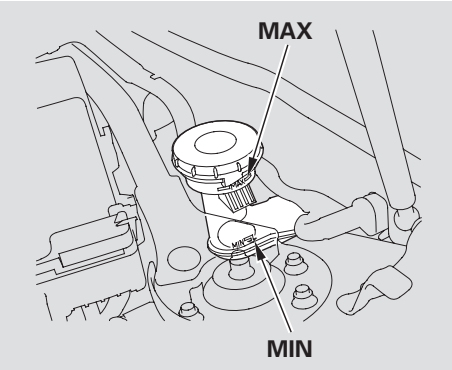
Brake Fluid, Power Steering Fluid

Brake Fluid

Check the brake fluid level in the reservoirs monthly.

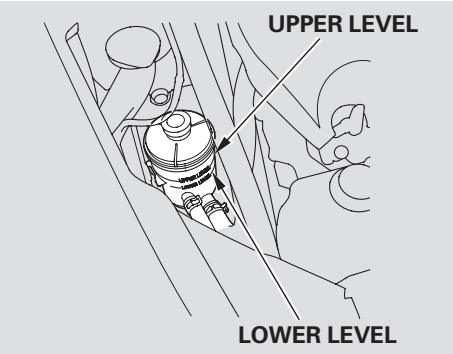
To check the fluid level, remove the left engine compartment cover (see page 451).

Replace the brake fluid every 3 years, independent of mileage.
Always use Honda Heavy Duty Brake Fluid DOT 3. If it is not available, you should use only DOT 3 or DOT 4 fluid, from a sealed container, as a temporary replacement.
Using any non-Honda brake fluid can cause corrosion and decrease the life of the system. Have the brake system flushed and refilled with Honda Heavy Duty Brake Fluid DOT 3 as soon as possible.
Brake fluid marked DOT 5 is not compatible with your vehicle's braking system and can cause extensive damage.



The fluid level should be between the MIN and MAX marks on the side of the reservoir. If the level is at or below the MIN mark, your brake system needs attention. Have the brake system inspected for leaks or worn brake pads.

Power Steering Fluid



After removing the right engine compartment cover (see page 451), check the level on the side of the reservoir when the engine is cold. The fluid should be between the UPPER LEVEL and LOWER LEVEL. If not, add power steering fluid to the UPPER LEVEL mark.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Pour the fluid slowly and carefully so you do not spill any. Clean up any spill immediately; it could damage components in the engine compartment.

Always use Acura Power Steering Fluid. You may use another power steering fluid as an emergency replacement, but have the power steering system flushed and refilled with Acura PSF as soon as possible.

A low power steering fluid level can indicate a leak in the system. Check the fluid level frequently, and have the system inspected as soon as possible.

NOTICE

Turning the steering wheel to full left or right lock and holding it there can damage the power steering pump.

Timing Belt

The timing belt should be replaced at the intervals shown on the maintenance minder. Replace the belt at 60,000 miles (100,000 km) if you regularly drive your vehicle in one or more of these conditions:

- In very high temperatures (over 110°F, 43°C).
- In very low temperatures (under −20°F, −29°C).
- If you frequently tow a trailer.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Lights

Headlight Aiming
Your vehicle is equipped with an automatic headlight adjusting system that adjusts the vertical angle of the headlights automatically. Refer to page 145 for more information.

The headlights were properly aimed when your vehicle was new. If you regularly carry heavy items in the trunk or pull a trailer (if applicable), readjustment may be required. Adjustments should be done by your dealer or another qualified technician.

The low beam headlight bulbs are high voltage discharge tube bulbs. High voltage can remain in the circuit even with the light switch off and the key removed. Because of this, you should not attempt to examine or change a low beam headlight bulb yourself. If a low beam headlight bulb fails, take the vehicle to your dealer to have it replaced.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Replacing a Headlight/Daytime Running Light Bulb

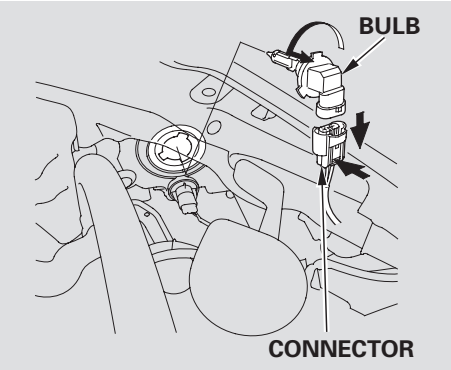
Your vehicle has halogen high beam headlight bulbs which are also used for the daytime running light. Handle it by its base and protect the glass from contact with your skin or hard objects. If you touch the glass, clean it with denatured alcohol and a clean cloth.

NOTICE

Halogen bulbs get very hot when lit. Oil, perspiration, or a scratch on the glass can cause the bulb to overheat and shatter.

1. Remove the left or right side engine compartment cover from the side you are working on by carefully pulling the cover out (see page 451).

   If you are replacing the bulb on the driver's side, remove the battery cover (see page 485).



2. Remove the electrical connector from the bulb by pushing on the tab and pulling the connector down.

3. Remove the bulb by turning it one-quarter turn counterclockwise.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

4. Insert the new bulb into the hole, and turn it one-quarter turn clockwise to lock it in place.

5. Push the electrical connector back onto the bulb. Make sure it is on all the way.

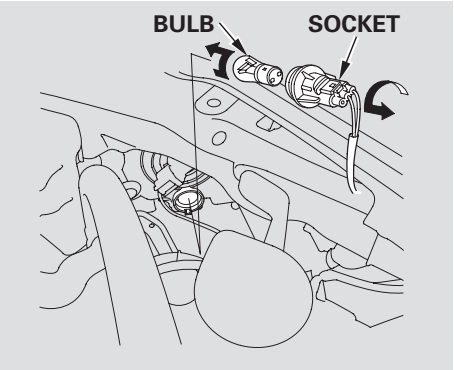
6. Turn on the headlights to test the new bulb.

7. Reinstall the engine compartment side cover.

8. (Driver's side)
Reinstall the battery cover.

Replacing a Front Turn Signal Light Bulb

1. Remove the left or right side engine compartment cover from the side you are working on by carefully pulling the cover out (see page 451).



2. Remove the socket from the headlight assembly by turning it one-quarter turn counterclockwise.

3. Push the bulb in slightly, and turn it counterclockwise.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

4. Install the new bulb into the socket.

5. Insert the socket back into the headlight assembly. Turn it clockwise to lock it in place.

6. Turn on the lights to make sure the new bulb is working.

7. Reinstall the engine compartment side cover.

8. (Driver's side)
Reinstall the battery cover.

Replacing a Front Parking/Side Marker Bulb

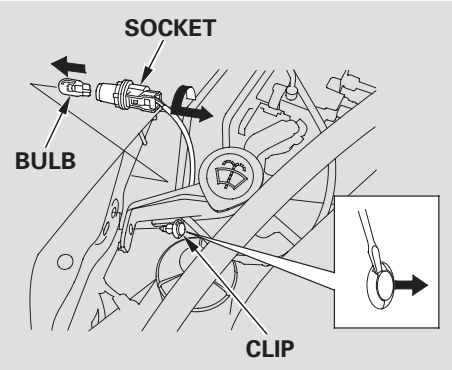
1. Remove the left or right side engine compartment cover (see page 451).

2. (Passenger's side)
Use a flat-tip screwdriver to remove the holding clip from the windshield washer reservoir.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Lights



3. Remove the socket from the headlight assembly by turning it one-quarter turn counterclockwise.

4. Pull the bulb straight out of its socket.

5. Install the new bulb into the socket.

6. Insert the socket back into the headlight assembly. Turn it clockwise to lock it in place.

7. Turn on the lights to make sure the new bulb is working.

8. (Passenger's side)
   Reinstall the windshield washer reservoir.

   Reinstall the engine compartment side cover.

9. (Driver's side)
   Reinstall the battery cover.

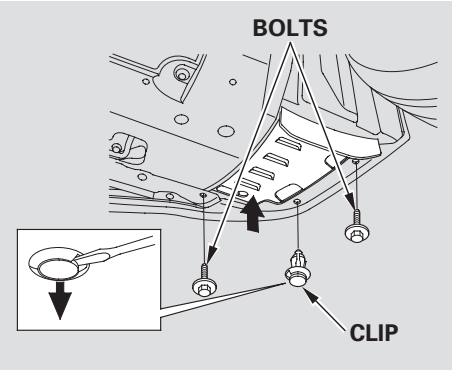
Replacing a Fog Light Bulb

Your vehicle uses halogen light bulbs. When replacing a bulb, handle it by its plastic case, and protect the glass from contact with your skin or hard objects. If you touch the glass, clean it with denatured alcohol and a clean cloth.

NOTICE

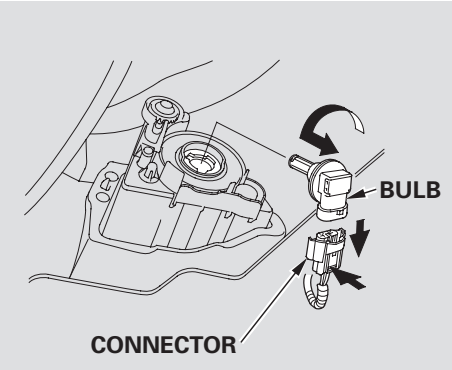
Halogen bulbs get very hot when lit. Oil, perspiration, or a scratch on the glass can cause the bulb to overheat and shatter.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



1. Use a Phillips-head screwdriver to remove the two undercover bolts, and remove the holding clip with a flat-tip screwdriver.

2. Carefully push up the side under cover into the bumper.



3. Remove the electrical connector from the bulb by pushing on the tab and pulling the connector down.

4. Remove the bulb by turning it one-quarter turn counterclockwise.

5. Insert the new bulb into the hole, and turn it one-quarter turn clockwise to lock it in place.

6. Push the electrical connector back onto the bulb. Make sure it is on all the way.

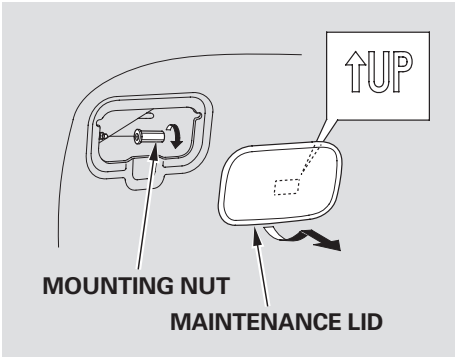
7. Turn on the fog lights to test the new bulb.

8. Reinstall the two undercover bolts on the side under cover and tighten them securely. Put the holding clip back on the side undercover and push on the center until it locks (the center is flush with the head).

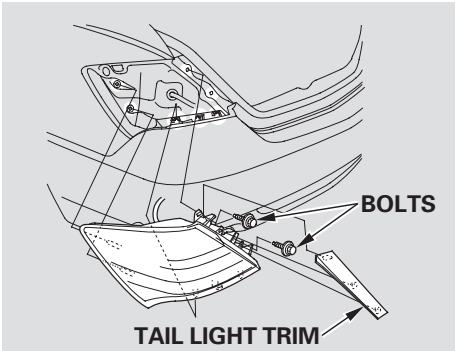
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Lights

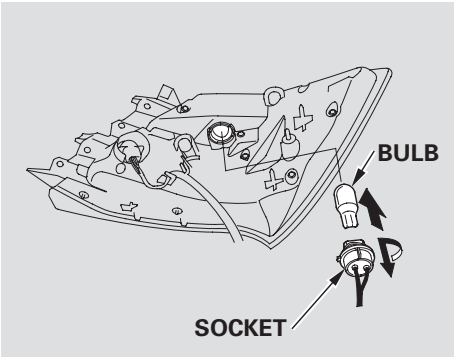
Replacing a Rear Turn Signal Light Bulb



1. Open the trunk lid, and remove the left or right maintenance lid.
2. Remove the mounting nut with an 8 mm wrench.



3. Carefully pry in the top or bottom edge of the trim with a small flat-tip screwdriver, and pull the trim straight back.
4. Remove the two mounting bolts with an 8 mm wrench.
5. Pull the taillight assembly straight back out of the body.



6. Remove the socket by turning it one-quarter turn counterclockwise.
7. Remove the burned out bulb by pulling it straight out of its socket.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

8. Install the new bulb in the socket by pushing it straight in the socket until it bottoms.

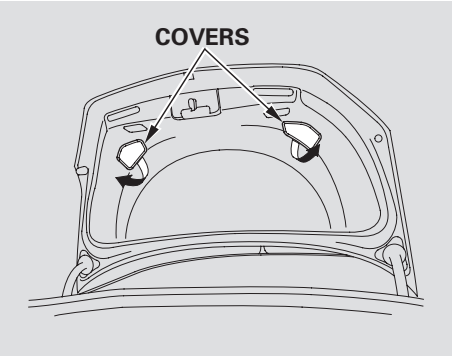
9. Reinstall the socket into the light assembly. Turn it clockwise to lock it in place.

10. Test the lights to make sure the new bulb is working.

11. When reinstalling the taillight assembly, align and pop the snap fasteners in place. Tighten the two mounting bolts and reinstall the trim in place.

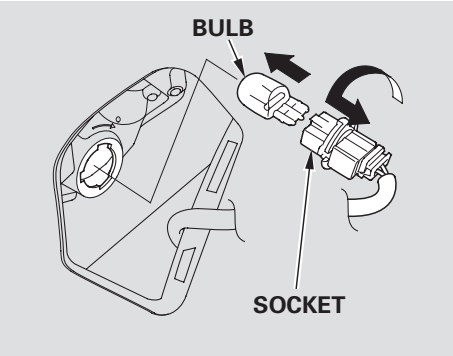
12. Tighten the mounting nut securely, and reinstall the maintenance lid.

Replacing a Back-up Light Bulb



1. Open the trunk.

2. Remove the light assembly cover by pulling its outside edge.



3. Remove the socket from the light assembly by turning it one-quarter turn counterclockwise.

4. Pull the bulb straight out of its socket. Push the new bulb straight into the socket until it bottoms.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Lights, Dust and Pollen Filter, Cleaning the Seat Belts

5. Reinstall the socket into the light assembly. Turn it clockwise to lock it in place.

6. Test the lights to make sure the new bulb is working.

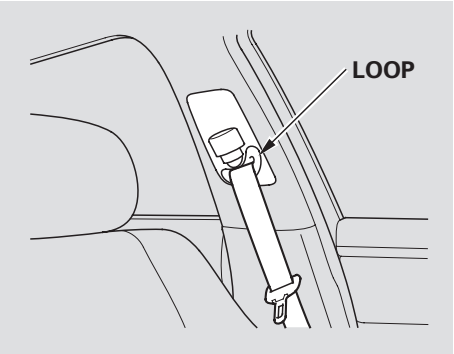
7. Reinstall the back-up light cover.

Dust and Pollen Filter

This filter removes the dust and pollen that is brought in from the outside through the climate control system.

Have your dealer replace the filter when this service is indicated by a maintenance message on the multi-information display. It should be replaced every 15,000 miles (24,000 km) if you drive primarily in urban areas that have high concentrations of soot in the air, or if the flow from the climate control system becomes less than usual.

Cleaning the Seat Belts



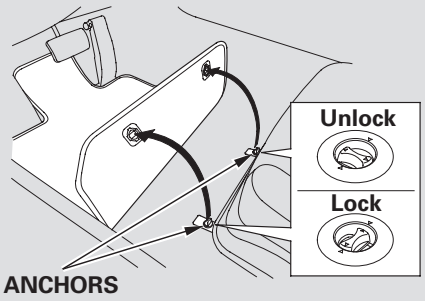
If your seat belts get dirty, use a soft brush with a mixture of mild soap and warm water to clean them. Do not use bleach, dye, or cleaning solvents. Let the belts air-dry before you use the vehicle.

Dirt build-up in the loops of the seat belt anchors can cause the belts to retract slowly. Wipe the insides of the loops with a clean cloth dampened in mild soap and warm water or isopropyl alcohol.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Floor Mats

DRIVER'S SIDE FLOOR MAT

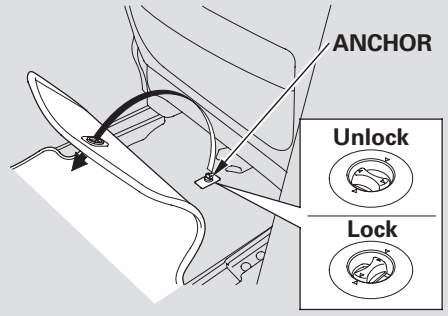


The floor mats that came with your vehicle hook over the floor mat anchors. To lock each anchor, turn the knob clockwise. This keeps the floor mats from sliding forward (possibly interfering with the pedals), or backwards (making the front passenger's weight sensors ineffective).

If you remove a floor mat, make sure to re-anchor it when you put it back in your vehicle.

If you use a non-Acura floor mat, make sure it fits properly and that it can be used with the floor mat anchors. Do not put additional floor mats on top of the anchored mats.

REAR PASSENGER'S FLOOR MAT

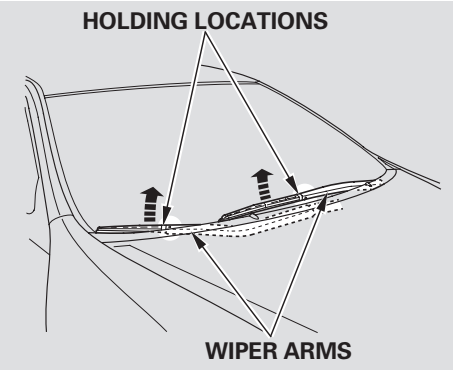


Make sure the rear floor mats are properly hooked to the floor mat anchors. Your vehicle is equipped with front passenger's seat weight sensors. If the rear passenger's floor mat is on the seat rail of the front passenger's seat, the sensors will detect the decreased weight on the seat, and they may not work properly.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Wiper Blades

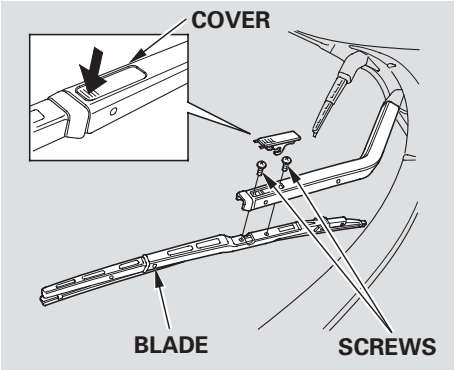
Check the condition of the wiper blades at least every 6 months. Replace them if you find signs of cracking in the rubber, areas that are getting hard, or if they leave streaks and unwiped areas when used.



1. Adjust the windshield wiper arms to the winter position by holding both wiper arms as shown in the illustration at the same time (see page 139). Raise the wiper arms off the windshield.

NOTICE

Do not open the hood when the wiper arms are raised, or you will damage the hood and the wiper arms.

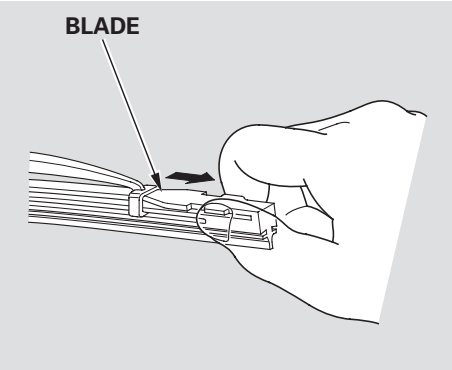


2. Push the end of the cover on the blade assembly until the other end is pivoted out, and remove the cover.

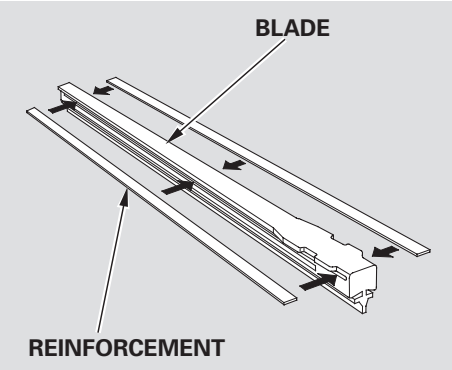
3. Disconnect the blade assembly from the wiper arm by removing the two screws from the arm.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Wiper Blades



4. Remove the blade from its holder by grabbing the tabbed end of the blade. Pull up firmly until the tabs come out of the holder.



5. Examine the new wiper blades. If they have no plastic or metal reinforcement along the back edge, remove the metal reinforcement strips from the old wiper blade, and install them in the slots along the edge of the new blade.

6. Slide the new wiper blade into the holder until the tabs lock.

7. Reinstall the blade assembly to the wiper arm and tighten the two screws securely. Reinstall the cover by pushing it in.

8. Set the wiper arms back on the windshield. Adjust the windshield wipers to their previously parked position.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Wheels, Tires

Wheels

Clean the wheels as you would the rest of the exterior. Wash them with the same solution, and rinse them thoroughly.

Aluminum alloy wheels have a protective clear-coat that keeps the aluminum from corroding and tarnishing. Cleaning the wheels with harsh chemicals (including some commercial wheel cleaners) or a stiff brush can damage the clear-coat. To clean the wheels, use a mild detergent and a soft brush or sponge.

Tires

To safely operate your vehicle, your tires must be the proper type and size, in good condition with adequate tread, and correctly inflated.

The following pages give more detailed information on how to take care of your tires and what to do when they need to be replaced.

⚠WARNING

Using tires that are excessively worn or improperly inflated can cause a crash in which you can be seriously hurt or killed.

Follow all instructions in this owner's manual regarding tire inflation and maintenance.

Inflation Guidelines

Keeping the tires properly inflated provides the best combination of handling, tread life, and riding comfort.

- Underinflated tires wear unevenly, adversely affect handling and fuel economy, and are more likely to fail from being overheated.
- Overinflated tires can make your vehicle ride more harshly, are more prone to damage from road hazards, and wear unevenly.

The tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS) will warn you when a tire pressure is low. See page 423 for information on the TPMS.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Even though your vehicle is equipped with TPMS, we recommend that you visually check your tires every day. If you think a tire might be low, check it immediately with a tire gauge.

Use a gauge to measure the air pressure in each tire at least once a month. Even tires that are in good condition may lose one to two psi (10 to 20 kPa, 0.1 to 0.2 kgf/cm²) per month. Remember to check the spare tire at the same time.

Check the pressure in the tires when they are cold. This means the vehicle has been parked for at least three hours, or driven less than 1 mile (1.6 km).

Add or release air, if needed, to match the recommended cold tire pressures on page 476 .

If you check the pressure when the tires are hot [driven for several miles (kilometers)], you will see readings 4 to 6 psi (30 to 40 kPa, 0.3 to 0.4 kgf/cm²) higher than the cold reading. This is normal; do not release air to match the cold pressure. The tires will be underinflated.

You should get your own tire pressure gauge and use it whenever you check your tire pressures. This will make it easier for you to tell if a pressure loss is due to a tire problem and not due to a variation between gauges.

While tubeless tires have some ability to self-seal if they are punctured, you should look closely for punctures if a tire starts losing pressure.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Tires

Recommended Tire Pressures

The following charts show the recommended cold tire pressures for most normal and high-speed driving conditions.

Normal Driving

Tire Size/Type	Cold Tire Pressure
P245/45R18 96V	Front 32 psi (220 kPa , 2.2 kgf/cm²) Rear 30 psi (210 kPa , 2.1 kgf/cm²)
Compact Spare T155/70D17 110M	60 psi (420 kPa , 4.2 kgf/cm²)

For convenience, the recommended tire sizes and cold tire pressures are on a label on the driver's doorjamb.

For additional technical information about your tires, see page 520 .

High Speed Driving

U.S. model only

We strongly recommend that you do not drive faster than the posted speed limits and conditions allow. If you ever drive in a sanctioned competitive event at sustained high speeds (over 112 mph or 181 km/h), be sure to adjust the cold tire pressures as shown below. If you do not, excessive heat can build up and cause sudden tire failure.

High Speed Driving

Tire Size	Cold Tire Pressure
P245/45R18 96V	Front 36 psi (250 kPa , 2.5 kgf/cm²) Rear 35 psi (240 kPa , 2.4 kgf/cm²)

The recommended tire pressures for high speed driving are not on the label on the driver's doorjamb, contact your dealer for more information about the tire pressures.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

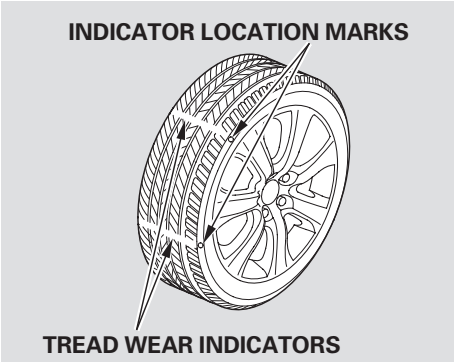
When you return to normal speed driving, be sure to readjust the tire pressure for normal driving. You should wait until the tires are cold before adjusting the tire pressure.

Tire Inspection

Every time you check inflation, you should also examine the tires for damage, foreign objects, and wear.

You should look for:

- Bumps or bulges in the tread or side of the tire. Replace the tire if you find either of these conditions.
- Cuts, splits, or cracks in the side of the tire. Replace the tire if you can see fabric or cord.
- Excessive tread wear.



Your tires have wear indicators molded into the tread. When the tread wears down, you will see a 1/2 inch (12.7 mm) wide band across the tread. This shows there is less than 1/16 inch (1.6 mm) of tread left on the tire.

A tire this worn gives very little traction on wet roads. You should replace the tire if you can see three or more tread wear indicators.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Tires

Tire Service Life
The service life of your tires is dependent on many factors, including, but not limited to, driving habits, road conditions, vehicle loading, inflation pressure, maintenance history, speed, and environmental conditions (even when the tires are not in use).

In addition to your regular inspections and inflation pressure maintenance, it is recommended that you have annual inspections performed once the tires reach five years old. It is also recommended that all tires, including the spare, be removed from service after 10 years from the date of manufacture, regardless of their condition or state of wear.

The last four digits of the TIN (tire identification number) are found on the sidewall of the tire and indicate the date of manufacture (See **Tire Labeling** on page 522).

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Tire Maintenance

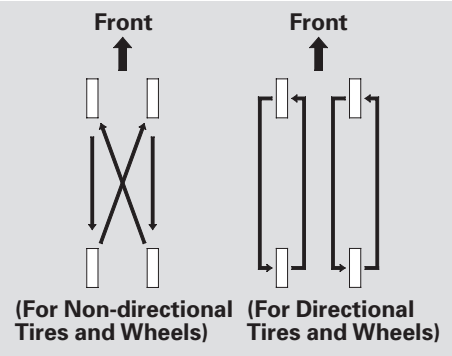
In addition to proper inflation, correct wheel alignment helps to decrease tire wear. If you find a tire is worn unevenly, have your dealer check the wheel alignment.

Have your dealer check the tires if you feel a consistent vibration while driving. A tire should always be rebalanced if it is removed from the wheel. When you have new tires installed, make sure they are balanced. This increases riding comfort and tire life. For best results, have the installer perform a dynamic balance.

NOTICE

Improper wheel weights can damage your vehicle's aluminum wheels. Use only Acura wheel weights for balancing.

Tire Rotation



To help increase tire life and distribute wear more evenly, rotate the tires according to the maintenance messages displayed on the multi-information display. Move the tires to the positions shown in the illustration each time they are rotated. If you purchase directional tires, rotate only front-to-back.

When the tires are rotated, make sure the air pressures are checked.

Replacing Tires and Wheels

Replace your tires with radial tires of the same size, load range, speed rating, and maximum cold tire pressure rating (as shown on the tire's sidewall).

Mixing radial and bias-ply tires on your vehicle can reduce braking ability, traction, and steering accuracy. Using tires of a different size or construction can cause the ABS and vehicle stability assist system (VSA) to work inconsistently.

The ABS and VSA system work by comparing the speed of each wheel. When replacing tires, use the same size originally supplied with the vehicle. Tire size and construction can affect wheel speed and may cause the system to activate.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Tires

It is best to replace all four tires at the same time. If that is not possible or necessary, replace the two front tires or two rear tires as a pair. Replacing just one tire can seriously affect your vehicle's handling.

Also be sure you use only TPMS specific wheels. If you do not, the tire pressure monitoring system will not work on that tire.

If you ever need to replace a wheel, make sure the wheel's specifications match those of the original wheel that came on your vehicle. Replacement wheels are available at your Acura dealer.

⚠WARNING

Installing improper tires on your vehicle can affect handling and stability. This can cause a crash in which you can be seriously hurt or killed.

Always use the size and type of tires recommended in this owner's manual.

Wheels and Tires

Wheels:
18 x 8.0J AL (TPMS)

Tires:
P245/45R18 96V

See page 520 for DOT tire quality grading information, and page 522 for tire size explanation.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Winter Driving

Tires marked "M + S" or "All Season" on the sidewall have an all-weather tread design suitable for most winter driving conditions.

For the best performance in snowy or icy conditions, you should install snow tires or tire chains. They may be required by local laws under certain conditions.

Snow Tires

If you mount snow tires on your vehicle, make sure they are radial tires of the same size and load range as the original tires. Mount snow tires on all four wheels. The traction provided by snow tires on dry roads may be lower than your original tires. Check with the tire dealer for maximum speed recommendations.

Tire Chains

Mount tire chains on your tires when required by driving conditions or local laws. Install them only on the front tires.

Because your vehicle has limited tire clearance, Acura strongly recommends using the chain listed below, made by Security Chain Company (SCC).

Cable-type: SCC Radial Chain SC1042

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Tires

When installing cables, follow the manufacturer's instructions, and mount them as tight as you can. Make sure they are not contacting the brake lines or suspension. Drive slowly with them installed. If you hear them coming into contact with the body or chassis, stop and investigate. Remove them as soon as you begin driving on cleared roads.

⚠WARNING

Using the wrong chains, or not properly installing chains, can damage the brake lines and cause a crash in which you can be seriously injured or killed.

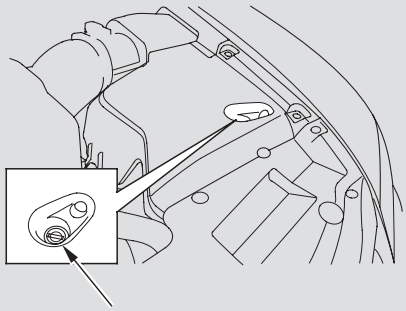
Follow all instructions in this owner's manual regarding the selection and use of tire chains.

NOTICE

Traction devices that are the wrong size or improperly installed can damage your vehicle's brake lines, suspension, body, and wheels. Stop driving if they are hitting any part of the vehicle.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Checking the Battery



TEST INDICATOR WINDOW

Check the condition of the battery monthly by looking at the test indicator window. The label on the battery explains the test indicator's colors.
To see the label, remove the battery cover (see page 485).

Check the terminals for corrosion (a white or yellowish powder). To remove it, cover the terminals with a solution of baking soda and water. It will bubble up and turn brown. When this stops, wash it off with plain water. Dry off the battery with a cloth or paper towel. Coat the terminals with grease to help prevent future corrosion.

If additional battery maintenance is needed, see your dealer or a qualified technician.

WARNING: Battery posts, terminals, and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds. **Wash your hands after handling.**

If you need to connect the battery to a charger, disconnect both cables to prevent damaging your vehicle's electrical system. Always disconnect the negative (−) cable first, and reconnect it last.

⚠WARNING

The battery gives off explosive hydrogen gas during normal operation.

A spark or flame can cause the battery to explode with enough force to kill or seriously hurt you.

Wear protective clothing and a face shield, or have a skilled technician do the battery maintenance.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Checking the Battery

If your vehicle's battery is disconnected or goes dead, all stored driving positions will be lost. To store the driving positions again, see the storing procedure on page 163 .

On vehicles with navigation system
The navigation system will also disable itself. The next time you turn on the ignition switch, the system will require you to enter a PIN before it can be used. Refer to the navigation system manual.

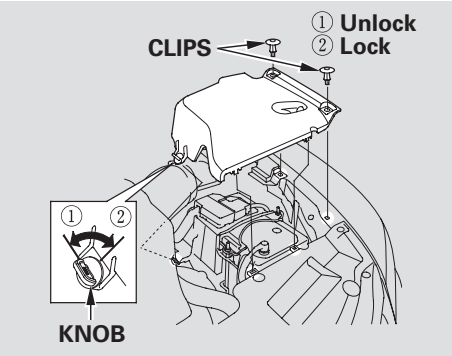
On vehicles without navigation system
The compass system will also disable itself. The next time you turn on the ignition switch, the system will require you to enter a PIN before it can be used. Enter the four-digit anti-theft security code (see page 298). You will also need to reset the clock according to the instruction of setting the clock (see page 313).

If your vehicle's battery is disconnected or goes dead, the audio system may disable itself. The next time you turn on the radio you will see "ENTER CODE" in the frequency display. Use the preset buttons to enter the code (see page 280).

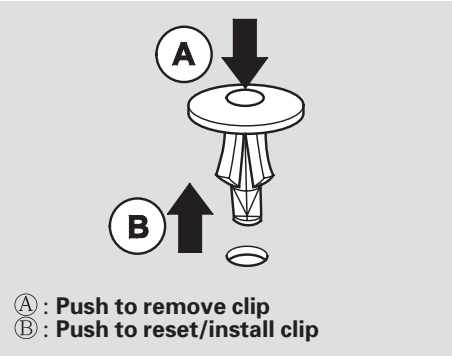
If your vehicle's battery is disconnected or goes dead, the power tilt and telescopic steering wheel system will be disabled. The system needs to be reset after reconnecting the battery (see page 149).

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Removing the Battery Cover



1. Turn the knob of the battery cover to UNLOCK as shown in the illustration.



2. Remove the holding clips by pushing on the center of each fastener head.

3. To reinstall the cover, reinstall the two holding clips and secure them by pushing on the center of each fastener head.

4. Turn the knob of the cover to LOCK position as shown in the illustration.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Vehicle Storage

If you need to park your vehicle for an extended period (more than 1 month), there are several things you should do to prepare it for storage. Proper preparation helps prevent deterioration and makes it easier to get your vehicle back on the road. If possible, store your vehicle indoors.

- Fill the fuel tank.
- Wash and dry the exterior completely.
- Clean the interior. Make sure the carpeting, floor mats, etc., are completely dry.
- Leave the parking brake off. Put the transmission in Park.
- Block the rear wheels.
- If the vehicle is to be stored for a longer period, it should be supported on jackstands so the tires are off the ground.
- Leave one window open slightly (if the vehicle is being stored indoors).
- Disconnect the battery.
- Support the front wiper blade arms with a folded towel or rag so they do not touch the windshield.
- To minimize sticking, apply a silicone spray lubricant to all door and trunk seals. Also, apply a vehicle body wax to the painted surfaces that mate with the door and trunk seals.
- Cover the vehicle with a “breathable” cover, one made from a porous material such as cotton. Non-porous materials, such as plastic sheeting, trap moisture, which can damage the paint.
- If possible, periodically run the engine until it reaches full operating temperature (the cooling fans cycle on and off twice). Preferably, do this once a month.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Taking Care of the Unexpected

This section covers the more common problems that motorists experience with their vehicles. It gives you information about how to safely evaluate the problem and what to do to correct it. If the problem has stranded you on the side of the road, you may be able to get going again. If not, you will also find instructions on getting your vehicle towed.

Compact Spare Tire 488
Changing a Flat Tire 489
If the Engine Won't Start 493
Jump Starting 494
If the Engine Overheats 497
Low Oil Pressure Indicator 500
Charging System Indicator 500
Malfunction Indicator Lamp 501
Brake System Indicator 502
Opening the Fuel Fill Door Manually 503
Fuses 504
Fuse Locations 510
Emergency Towing 513
If Your Vehicle Gets Stuck 513

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Compact Spare Tire

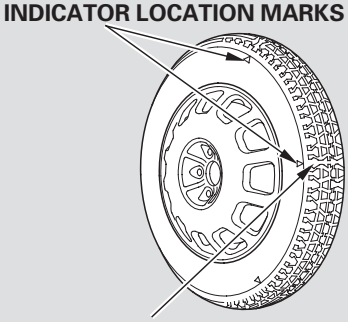
Use the compact spare tire as a temporary replacement only. Get your regular tire repaired or replaced, and put it back on your vehicle as soon as you can.

Check the air pressure of the compact spare tire every time you check the other tires. It should be inflated to:

60 psi (420 kPa , 4.2 kgf/cm²)

Follow these precautions:

- Never exceed 50 mph (80 km/h).
- This tire gives a harsher ride and less traction on some road surfaces. Use greater caution while driving.
- Do not mount snow chains on the compact spare tire.
- Do not use your compact spare tire on another vehicle unless it is the same make and model.
- After the flat tire is replaced with the spare tire, the low tire pressure/TPMS indicator stays on. After several miles (kilometers) driving with the spare, this indicator begins to flash, then stays on again. You will also see a "CHECK TPMS SYSTEM" message on the multi-information display (see page 427).



Replace the tire when you can see the tread wear indicator bars. The replacement should be the same size and design tire, mounted on the same wheel. The spare tire is not designed to be mounted on a regular wheel, and the spare wheel is not designed for mounting a regular tire.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Changing a Flat Tire

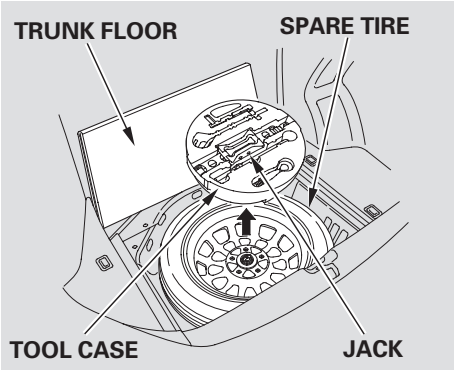
⚠WARNING

The vehicle can easily roll off the jack, seriously injuring anyone underneath.

Follow the directions for changing a tire exactly, and never get under the vehicle when it is supported only by the jack.

1. Park the vehicle on firm, level, and non-slippery ground. Put the transmission in Park. Apply the parking brake.
   If you are towing a trailer, unhitch it.

2. Turn on the hazard warning lights, and turn the ignition switch to the LOCK (0) position. Have all passengers get out of the vehicle while you change the tire.



3. Open the trunk, and fold the trunk floor forward.

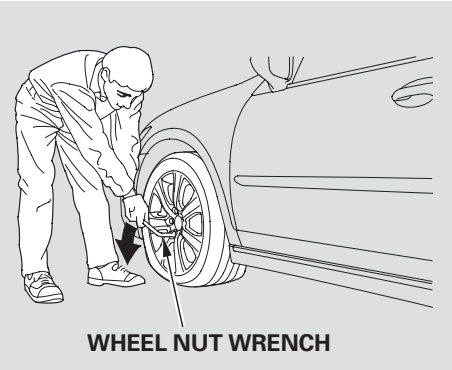
4. Take the tool case out of the spare tire.

5. Unscrew the wing bolt, and remove the spacer cone. Then take the spare tire out of its well.

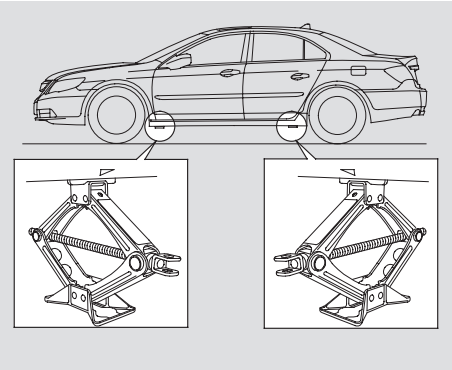
CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

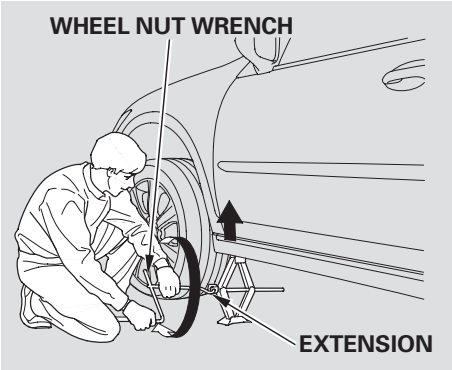
Changing a Flat Tire



6. Loosen each wheel nut 1/2 turn with the wheel nut wrench.



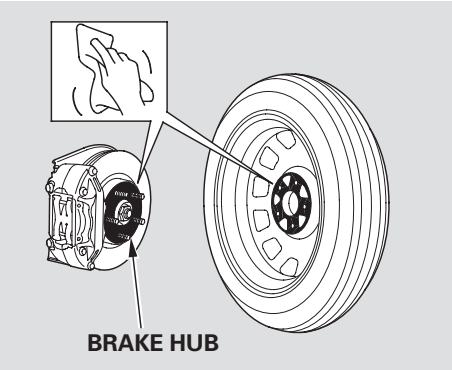
7. Place the jack under the jacking point nearest the tire you need to change. It is pointed to by a △ mark molded into the underside of the body. Turn the end bracket clockwise until the top of the jack contacts the jacking point. Make sure the jacking point tab is resting in the jack notch.



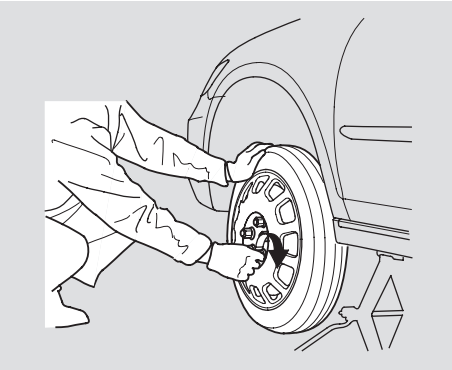
8. Use the extension and the wheel nut wrench as shown to raise the vehicle until the flat tire is off the ground.

9. Remove the wheel nuts, then remove the flat tire. Temporarily place the flat tire on the ground with the outside surface of the wheel facing up. You could scratch the wheel if you put it face down.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



10. Before mounting the spare tire, wipe any dirt off the mounting surface of the wheel and hub with a clean cloth. Wipe the hub carefully; it may be hot from driving.



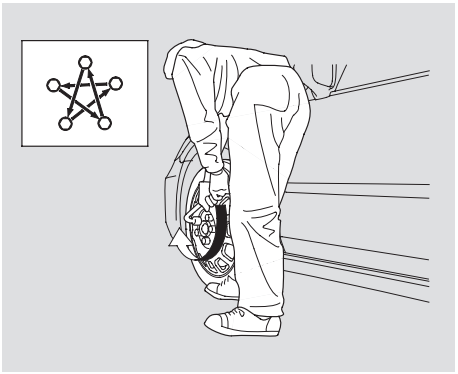
11. Put on the spare tire. Put the wheel nuts back on finger-tight, then tighten them in a crisscross pattern with the wheel nut wrench until the wheel is firmly against the hub. Do not try to tighten the wheel nuts fully.

12. Lower the vehicle to the ground, and remove the jack.

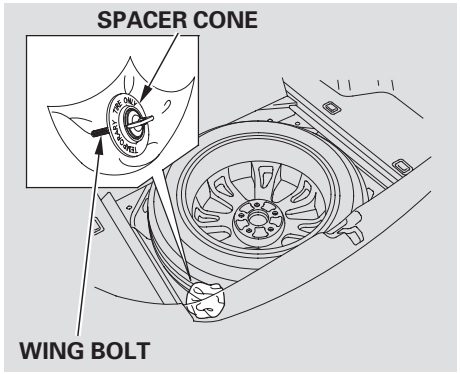
CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Changing a Flat Tire



13. Tighten the wheel nuts securely in the same crisscross pattern. Have the wheel nut torque checked at the nearest automotive service facility.
Tighten the wheel nuts to:
94 lbf·ft (127 N·m , 13 kgf·m)



14. Place the flat tire face down in the spare tire well.

15. Wrap the spacer cone and spare tire wing bolt with cloth or paper, and store them in the spare tire well.

16. Store the jack and tools in the tool case. Place the tool case in the flat tire.

⚠ WARNING

Loose items can fly around the interior in a crash and could seriously injure the occupants.

Store the wheel, jack, and tools securely before driving.

17. Lower the trunk floor, then close the trunk lid.

18. Your vehicle's original tire has a tire pressure monitoring system sensor. To replace a tire, refer to **Changing a Tire with TPMS** (see page 424).

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Diagnosing why the engine won't start falls into two areas, depending on what you hear when you turn the ignition switch to the START (III) position:

- You hear nothing, or almost nothing. The engine's starter motor does not operate at all, or operates very slowly.
- You can hear the starter motor operating normally, or the starter motor sounds like it is spinning faster than normal, but the engine does not start up and run.

Nothing Happens or the Starter Motor Operates Very Slowly

When you turn the ignition switch to the START (III) position, you do not hear the normal noise of the engine trying to start. You may hear a clicking sound, a series of clicks, or nothing at all.

Check these things:

- Make sure the remote is with you, inside the vehicle.
- Check the transmission interlock. The transmission must be in Park or neutral or the starter will not operate.
- Turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position. Turn on the headlights, and check their brightness. If the headlights are very dim or do not come on at all, the battery is discharged. See **Jump Starting** on page 494 .
- Turn the ignition switch to the START (III) position. If the headlights do not dim, check the condition of the fuses. If the fuses are OK, there is probably something wrong with the electrical circuit for the ignition switch or starter motor. You will need a qualified technician to determine the problem. See **Emergency Towing** on page 513 .

If the headlights dim noticeably or go out when you try to start the engine, either the battery is discharged or the connections are corroded. Check the condition of the battery and terminal connections (see page 483). You can then try jump starting the vehicle from a booster battery (see page 494).

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

If the Engine Won't Start, Jump Starting

The Starter Operates Normally
In this case, the starter motor's speed sounds normal, or even faster than normal, when you turn the ignition switch to the START (III) position, but the engine does not run.

- Are you using the proper starting procedure? Refer to **Starting the Engine** on page 397 .
- Are you using a properly coded built-in key or remote? An improperly coded built-in key or remote will cause the immobilizer system indicator in the instrument panel to blink rapidly (see page 64).
- Do you have fuel? Check the fuel gauge; the low fuel indicator may not be working.
- There may be an electrical problem, such as no power to the fuel pump. Check all the fuses (see page 506).

If you find nothing wrong, you will need a qualified technician to find the problem. See **Emergency Towing** on page 513 .

Jump Starting
Although this seems like a simple procedure, you should take several precautions.

⚠WARNING

A battery can explode if you do not follow the correct procedure, seriously injuring anyone nearby.

Keep all sparks, open flames, and smoking materials away from the battery.

You cannot start your vehicle by pushing or pulling it.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Jump Starting

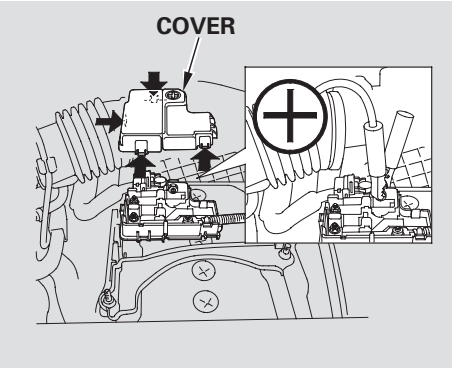
To Jump Start Your Vehicle:

1. Open the hood, and check the physical condition of the battery. In very cold weather, check the condition of the electrolyte. If it seems slushy or frozen, do not try jump starting until it thaws.

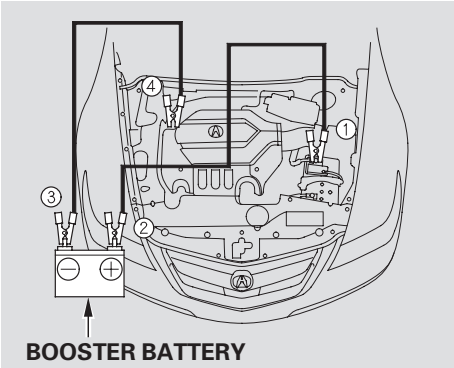
NOTICE

If a battery sits in extreme cold, the electrolyte inside can freeze. Attempting to jump start with a frozen battery can cause it to rupture.

2. Turn off all the electrical accessories: heater, A/C, climate control, stereo system, lights, etc. Put the transmission in Park, and set the parking brake.



3. Remove the battery cover (see page 485), then remove the secondary under-hood fuse box cover from the positive (+) terminal on the battery.



The numbers in the illustration show you the order to connect the jumper cables.

4. Connect one jumper cable to the positive (+) terminal on your vehicle's battery. Connect the other end to the positive (+) terminal on the booster battery.

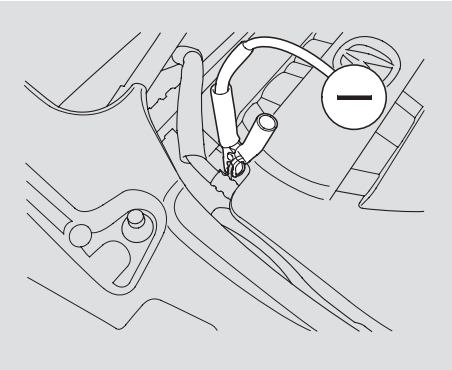
CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Jump Starting

NOTICE

Connecting the jumper cable to the secondary under-hood fuse box causes the fuses to blow.



5. Connect the second jumper cable to the negative (−) terminal on the booster battery. Connect the other end to the grounding point as shown. Do not connect this jumper cable to any other part of the engine.

6. If the booster battery is in another vehicle, have an assistant start that vehicle and run it at a fast idle.

7. Start your vehicle. If the starter motor still operates slowly, check that the jumper cables have good metal-to-metal contact.

8. Once your vehicle is running, disconnect the negative cable from your vehicle, then from the booster battery. Disconnect the positive cable from your vehicle, then from the booster battery.

9. Reinstall the secondary under-hood fuse box cover over the positive (+) terminal of the battery, then reinstall the battery cover.

Keep the ends of the jumper cables away from each other and any metal on the vehicle until everything is disconnected. Otherwise, you may cause an electrical short.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

If the Engine Overheats

The pointer of the vehicle's temperature gauge should stay in the midrange. If it climbs to the red mark, you should determine the reason (hot day, driving up a steep hill, etc.).

If your vehicle overheats, you should take immediate action. The only indication may be the temperature gauge climbing to or above the red mark. Or you may see steam or spray coming from under the hood.

NOTICE

Driving with the temperature gauge pointer at the red mark can cause serious damage to the engine.

⚠WARNING

Steam and spray from an overheated engine can seriously scald you.

Do not open the hood if steam is coming out.

1. Safely pull to the side of the road. Put the transmission in Park, and set the parking brake. Turn off all the accessories, and turn on the hazard warning lights.
2. If you see steam and/or spray coming from under the hood, turn off the engine. Wait until you see no more signs of steam or spray, then open the hood.
3. If you do not see steam or spray, leave the engine running and watch the temperature gauge. If the high heat is due to overloading, the engine should start to cool down almost immediately. If it does, wait until the temperature gauge comes down to the midpoint, then continue driving.
4. If the temperature gauge stays at the red mark, turn off the engine.
5. Look for any obvious coolant leaks, such as a split radiator hose. Everything is still extremely hot, so use caution. If you find a leak, it must be repaired before you continue driving (see **Emergency Towing** on page 513).

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

If the Engine Overheats

6. If you do not find an obvious leak, check the coolant level in the radiator reserve tank. Add coolant if the level is below the MIN mark.

7. If there was no coolant in the reserve tank, you may need to add coolant to the radiator. Let the engine cool down until the pointer reaches the middle of the temperature gauge, or lower, before checking the radiator.

⚠WARNING

Removing the radiator cap while the engine is hot can cause the coolant to spray out, seriously scalding you.

Always let the engine and radiator cool down before removing the radiator cap.

8. Using gloves or a large heavy cloth, turn the radiator cap counterclockwise, without pushing down, to the first stop. After the pressure releases, push down on the cap, and turn it until it comes off.

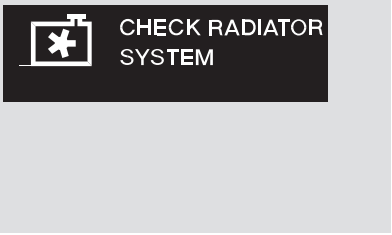
9. Start the engine, and set the interior temperature to maximum (climate control to FULL AUTO at " H "). Add coolant to the radiator up to the base of the filler neck. If you do not have the proper coolant mixture available, you can add plain water. Remember to have the cooling system drained and refilled with the proper mixture as soon as you can.

10. Put the radiator cap back on tightly. Run the engine, and check the temperature gauge. If it goes back to the red mark, the engine needs repair (see **Emergency Towing** on page 513).

11. If the temperature stays normal, check the coolant level in the radiator reserve tank. If it has gone down, add coolant to the MAX mark. Put the cap back on tightly.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Check Radiator System



If there is a problem with the radiator system, you will see a "CHECK RADIATOR SYSTEM" on the multi-information display.

If you see this message, the engine has probably overheated. You should take your vehicle to a dealer, and have it repaired as soon as possible.

You can still drive your vehicle even if this message appears on the multi-information display, however you should check the temperature gauge while driving.

If you notice the temperature gauge climbing to or above the red mark, safely pull to the side of the road. Follow the instructions on pages 497 and 498.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Low Oil Pressure Indicator, Charging System Indicator

Low Oil Pressure Indicator

This indicator should never come on when the engine is running. If it starts flashing or stays on, or if you see a "CHECK ENGINE OIL LEVEL" message on the multi-information display, the oil pressure has dropped very low or lost pressure. Serious engine damage is possible, and you should take immediate action.

NOTICE

Running the engine with low oil pressure can cause serious mechanical damage almost immediately. Turn off the engine as soon as you can safely get the vehicle stopped.

1. Safely pull off the road and shut off the engine. Turn on the hazard warning lights.
2. Let the vehicle sit for a minute. Open the hood, and check the oil level (see page 383). An engine very low on oil can lose pressure during cornering and other driving maneuvers.
3. If necessary, add oil to bring the level back to the full mark on the dipstick (see page 452).
4. Start the engine, and watch the oil pressure indicator. If it does not go out within 10 seconds, turn off the engine. There is a mechanical problem that needs to be repaired before you can continue driving (see **Emergency Towing** on page 513).

Charging System Indicator

If the charging system indicator comes on brightly when the engine is running, or if you see a "CHECK CHARGING SYSTEM" message on the multi-information display, the battery is not being charged.

Immediately turn off all electrical accessories. Try not to use other electrically operated controls such as the power windows. Keep the engine running; starting the engine will discharge the battery rapidly.

Go to a dealer or a service station where you can get technical assistance.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Malfunction Indicator Lamp

If this indicator comes on while driving, or if you see a "CHECK EMISSION SYSTEM" message on the multi-information display, it means one of the engine's emissions control systems may have a problem. Even though you may feel no difference in your vehicle's performance, it can reduce your fuel economy and cause increased emissions. Continued operation may cause serious damage.

If you have recently refueled your vehicle, the indicator coming on could be due to a loose or missing fuel fill cap. You will also see a "TIGHTEN FUEL CAP" message on the multi-information display. Tighten the cap until it clicks at least once (see page 381). Tightening the cap will not turn the indicator off immediately; it can take several days of normal driving.

If the indicator comes on repeatedly, even though it may go off as you continue driving, have the vehicle checked by your dealer as soon as possible.

NOTICE

If you keep driving with the malfunction indicator lamp on, you can damage your vehicle's emissions controls and engine. Those repairs may not be covered by your vehicle's warranties.

Readiness Code

Your vehicle has certain "readiness codes" that are part of the on-board diagnostics for the emissions systems. In some states, part of the emissions testing is to make sure these codes are set. If they are not set, the test cannot be completed.

If the battery in your vehicle has been disconnected or gone dead, these codes may be erased. It can take several days of driving under various conditions to set the codes again.

To check if they are set, turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position, without starting the engine. The malfunction indicator lamp will come on for 20 seconds. If it then goes off, the readiness codes are set. If it blinks five times, the readiness codes are not set. If possible, do not take your vehicle for an emissions test until the readiness codes are set. Refer to **Emissions Testing** for more information (see page 529).

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Brake System Indicator

U.S. Canada

The brake system indicator normally comes on when you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position and as a reminder to check the parking brake. If you do not release the parking brake, the indicator will stay on, and you will see a "RELESE PARKING BRAKE" message on the multi-information display.

If the brake system indicator comes on while driving, the brake fluid level is probably low. You will see a "BRAKE FLUID LOW" message on the multi-information display. Press lightly on the brake pedal to see if it feels normal. If it does, check the brake fluid level the next time you stop at a service station (see page 460).

If the fluid level is low, take your vehicle to a dealer, and have the brake system inspected for leaks or worn brake pads.

However, if the brake pedal does not feel normal, you should take immediate action. A problem in one part of the system's dual circuit design will still give you braking at two wheels. You will feel the brake pedal go down much farther before the vehicle begins to slow down, and you will have to press harder on the pedal.

You will also see a "CHECK BRAKE SYSTEM" message on the multi-information display.

Slow down by shifting to a lower gear, and pull to the side of the road when it is safe. Because of the long distance needed to stop, it is hazardous to drive the vehicle. You should have it towed and repaired as soon as possible (see **Emergency Towing** on page 513).

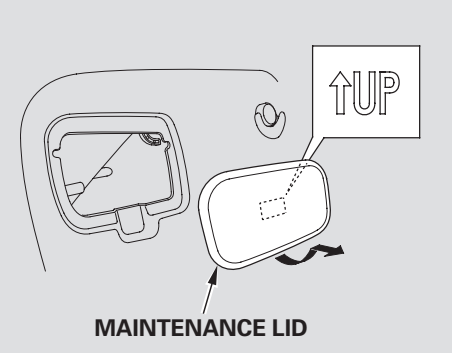
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Brake System Indicator, Opening the Fuel Fill Door Manually

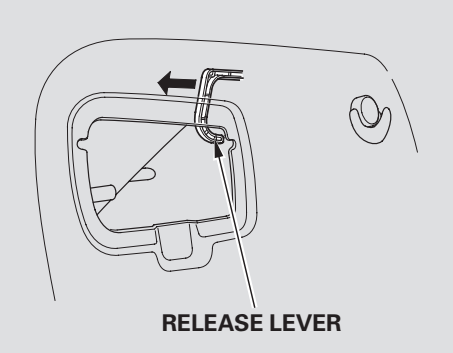
If you must drive the vehicle a short distance in this condition, drive slowly and carefully.

If the ABS indicator and the VSA system indicator come on with the brake system indicator, have your vehicle inspected by your dealer immediately.

Opening the Fuel Fill Door Manually



If the fuel fill door release button does not work, use the release lever inside the left maintenance lid in the trunk.

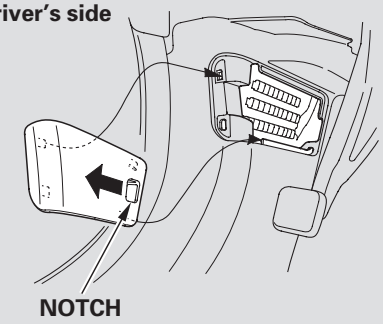


To open the fuel fill door, pull the release lever rearward.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Fuses

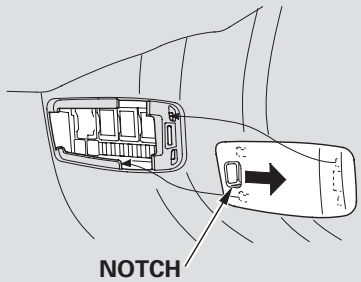
INTERIOR FUSE BOX
Driver's side



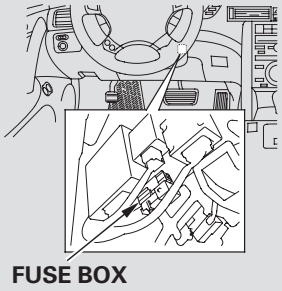
The fuses are located in five fuse boxes. The interior fuse boxes are located under the dashboard on the driver's and passenger's side.

To remove the fuse box lid, put your finger in the notch on the lid, pull it toward you, and take it out of its hinges.

INTERIOR FUSE BOX
Passenger's side



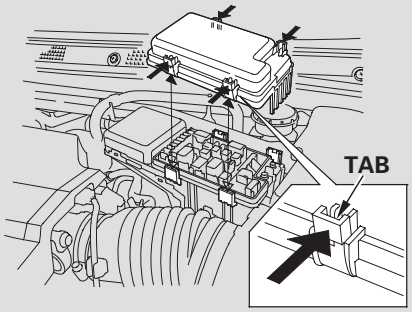
SECONDARY INTERIOR FUSE BOX
Driver's side



To open the secondary fuse box lid, push the tab in the direction as shown in the illustration.

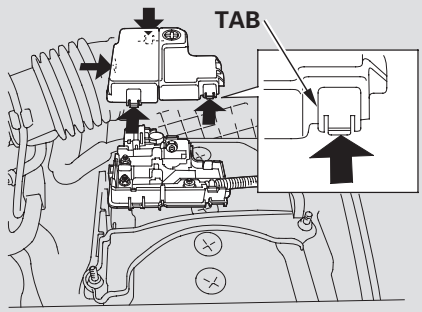
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

PRIMARY UNDER-HOOD FUSE BOX



The primary under-hood fuse box is in the engine compartment on the driver's side. To open it, push the tabs as shown.

SECONDARY UNDER-HOOD FUSE BOX



The secondary under-hood fuse box is on the battery. To open it, push the tabs as shown.

To check the fuse box, remove the battery cover first (see page 485).

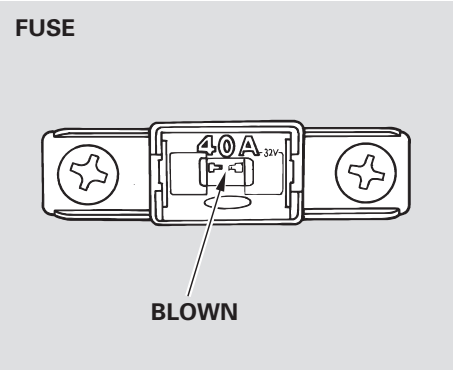
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Fuses

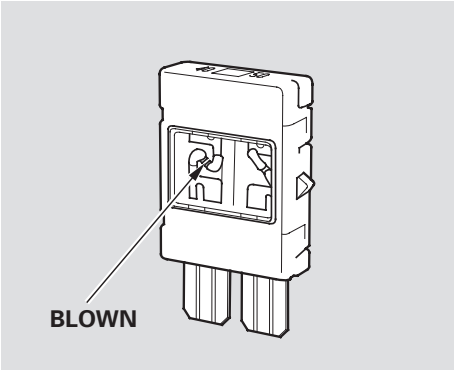
Checking and Replacing Fuses
If something electrical in your vehicle stops working, the first thing you should check for is a blown fuse. Determine from the chart on pages 510, 511, and 512, or the diagram on the fuse box lid, which fuse or fuses control that device. Check those fuses first, but check all the fuses before deciding that a blown fuse is the cause. Replace any blown fuses, and check if the device works.

1. Turn the ignition switch to the LOCK (0) position. Make sure the headlights and all other accessories are off.

2. Remove the cover from the fuse box.

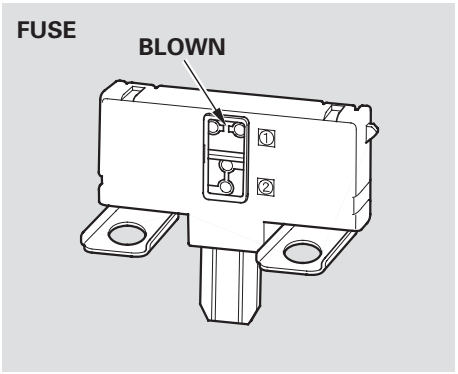


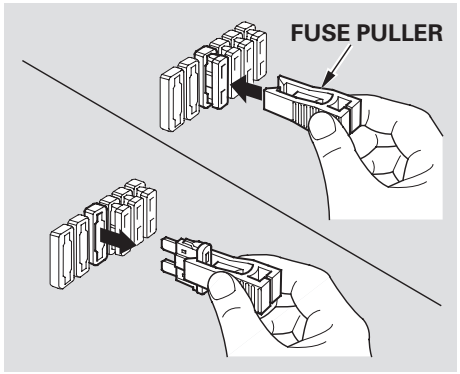
3. Check each of the large fuses in the under-hood fuse box by looking through the top at the wire inside. Removing these fuses requires a Phillips-head screwdriver.



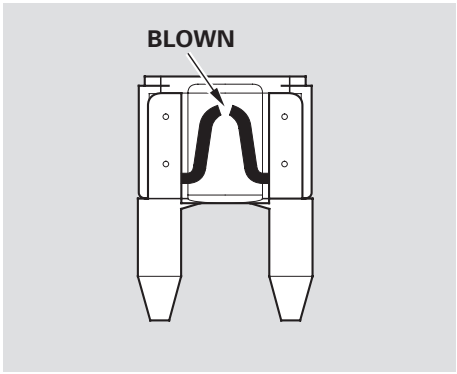
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Fuses





4. Check the smaller fuses in the under-hood fuse box and all the fuses in the interior fuse boxes by pulling out each fuse with the fuse puller. The fuse puller is inside the primary under-hood fuse box.

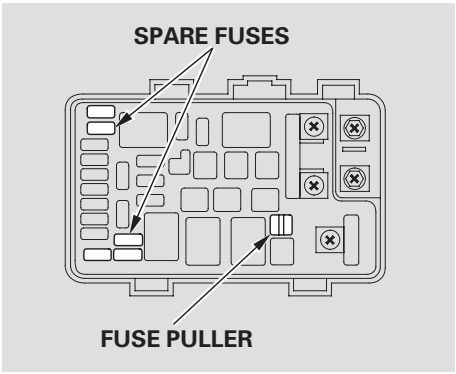


5. Look for a blown wire inside the fuse. If it is blown, replace it with one of the spare fuses of the same rating or lower.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Fuses



If you cannot drive the vehicle without fixing the problem, and you do not have a spare fuse, take a fuse of the same rating or a lower rating from one of the other circuits with the fuse puller provided in the under-hood fuse box. Make sure you can do without that circuit temporarily (such as the accessory power socket or radio).

If you replace the blown fuse with a spare fuse that has a lower rating, it might blow out again. This does not indicate anything wrong. Replace the fuse with one of the correct rating as soon as you can.

NOTICE

Replacing a fuse with one that has a higher rating greatly increases the chances of damaging the electrical system. If you do not have a replacement fuse with the proper rating for the circuit, install one with a lower rating.

6. If the replacement fuse of the same rating blows in a short time, there is probably a serious electrical problem with your vehicle. Leave the blown fuse in that circuit, and have your vehicle checked by a qualified technician.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

If the fuse for the driving position memory system is removed, all stored driving positions will be lost. To store the driving positions again, see page 163 .

On vehicles with navigation system
If the navigation system fuse is removed, the navigation system will disable itself. The next time you turn on the ignition switch, the system will require you to enter a PIN before it can be used. Refer to the navigation system manual.

On vehicles without navigation system
If the compass system fuse is removed, the compass system will disable itself. The next time you turn on the ignition switch, the system will require you to enter a PIN before it can be used. Enter the four-digit anti-theft security code (see page 298). You will also need to reset the clock according to the setting the clock instructions (see page 313).

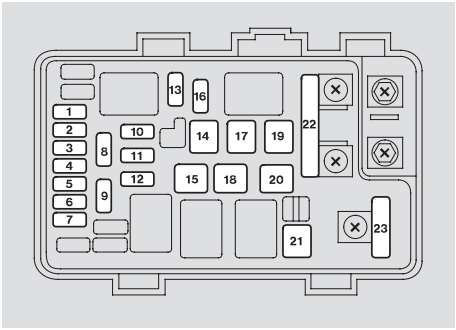
If the radio fuse is removed, the audio system will disable itself. The next time you turn on the audio system you will see "ENTER CODE" in the frequency display. Use the preset buttons to enter the five-digit code (see page 280).

If the fuse for the power tilt telescopic steering is removed, the system will be disabled. The system needs to be reset after reinstalling the fuse (see page 149).

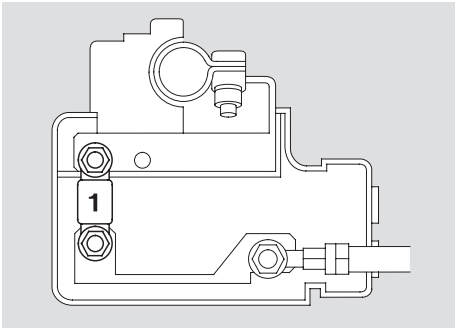
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Fuse Locations

PRIMARY UNDER-HOOD FUSE BOX



SECONDARY UNDER-HOOD FUSE BOX



No.	Amps.	Circuits Protected
1	15 A	Left headlight low beam
2	30 A	Rear defroster coil
3	10 A	Left headlight high beam
4	15 A	Small light
5	10 A	Right headlight high beam
6	15 A	Right headlight low beam
7	7.5 A	Back-up
8	15 A	FI ECU
9	30 A	Wiper
10	30 A	Headlight washer*
11	10 A	Fog lights
12	7.5 A	MG clutch
13	15 A	Horn, Stop
14	40 A	Rear defroster

No.	Amps.	Circuits Protected
1	50 A	Radiator fan

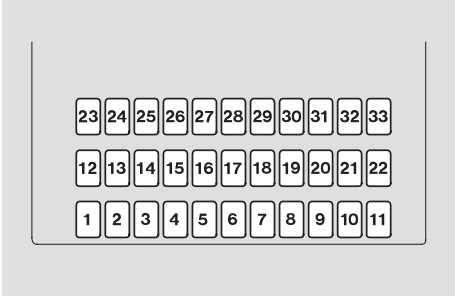
No.	Amps.	Circuits Protected
15	40 A	Back-up, ACC
16	15 A	Hazard
17	30 A	ABS/VSA motor
18	40 A	ABS/VSA
19	40 A	Drive by wire, LAF heater
20	(40 A)	Option
21	40 A	Heater motor
22	70 A	Passenger's fuse box
	120 A	Battery
23	50 A	IG main
	50 A	Power window

*: On Canadian models

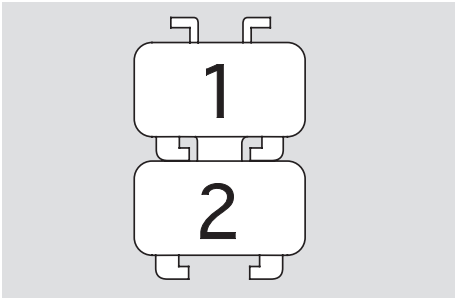
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Fuse Locations

INTERIOR FUSE BOX
Driver's side



SECONDARY INTERIOR FUSE BOX
Driver's side



No.	Amps.	Circuits Protected
1	15 A	Drive by Wire
2	15 A	Ignition coil
3	10 A	Daytime running light
4	15 A	LAF heater
5	7.5 A	Radio
6	7.5 A	Interior light
7	10 A	Back-up
8	20 A	Door lock
9	20 A	Accessory socket
10	7.5 A	Occupant position detection system
11	15 A	Wiper
12	15 A	Rear heated seat
13	20 A	Passenger's power seat reclining
14	20 A	Driver's power seat sliding
15	7.5 A	Tire pressure monitoring system
16	20 A	Driver's power seat reclining

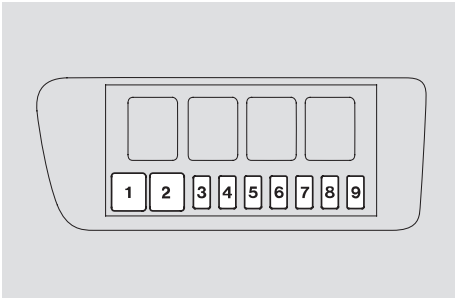
No.	Amps.	Circuits Protected
1	7.5 A	Starter diag.
2	7.5 A	Starter signal

No.	Amps.	Circuits Protected
17	20 A	Passenger's power seat sliding
18	15 A	ACG
19	20 A	Fuel Pump
20	15 A	IGN SOL
21	10 A	Meter
22	10 A	SRS
23	7.5 A	IGP (PGM-FI ECU)
24	20 A	Left rear power window
25	20 A	ETS (telescopic)
26	20 A	ETS (tilt)
27	30 A	Driver's power window
28	20 A	Moonroof
29	7.5 A	Adaptive Front Lighting System
30	7.5 A	Air Conditioner
31	7.5 A	e-pretensioner
32	10 A	ACC
33	(7.5 A)	Option

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Fuse Locations

INTERIOR FUSE BOX
Passenger's side



No.	Amps.	Circuits Protected
1	30 A	SH-AWD
2	30 A	Premium amplifier
3	30 A	Passenger's power window
4	30 A	Driver's automatic seat belt tensioner/e-pretensioner
5	20 A	Right rear power window

No.	Amps.	Circuits Protected
6	20 A	Heated seats
7	7.5 A	Illumination lights
8	30 A	Passenger's automatic seat belt tensioner/ e-pretensioner
9	7.5 A	Air conditioner

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Emergency Towing, If Your Vehicle Gets Stuck

Emergency Towing

If your vehicle needs to be towed, call a professional towing service or organization. Never tow your vehicle with just a rope or chain. It is very dangerous.

The only way you can safely tow your vehicle is with flat-bed equipment. The operator will load your vehicle on the back of a truck. Any other method of towing will damage the drive system. When you contact the towing agency, inform them a flat-bed is required.

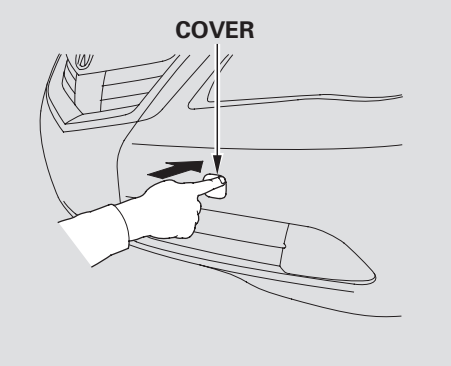
NOTICE

Towing with only two tires on the ground will damage parts of the all-wheel-drive system. Your vehicle should be transported on a flat-bed truck or trailer.

If Your Vehicle Gets Stuck

If your vehicle gets stuck in sand, mud, or snow, call a towing service to pull it out (see the previous column).

For very short distances, such as freeing the vehicle, you can use the detachable towing hook that mounts on the anchor in the front bumper.



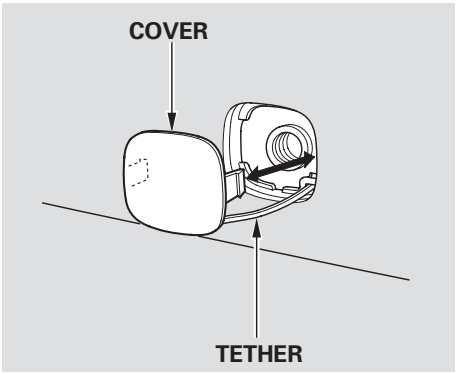
To use the towing hook:

1. Remove the cover from the front bumper by pushing the right corner edge of the cover with a finger until the cover comes out as shown in the illustration.

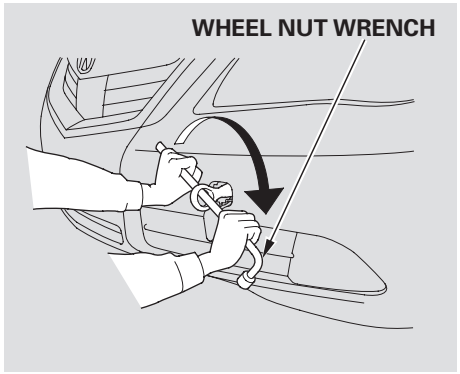
CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

If Your Vehicle Gets Stuck



The cover is attached to the bumper with a tether.



2. Remove the towing hook and wheel nut wrench from the tool case in the spare tire.

3. Screw the towing hook into the hole, and tighten it with the wheel nut wrench.

NOTICE

To avoid damage to your vehicle, use the towing hook for straight, flat ground towing only. Do not tow at an angle. The tow hook should not be used to tow the vehicle onto a flat bed. Do not use it as a tie down.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Technical Information

The diagrams in this section give you the dimensions and capacities of your vehicle, and the location of identification numbers. It also includes information you should know about your vehicle's tires and emissions control systems.

Identification Numbers 516
Specifications 518
DOT Tire Quality Grading (U.S. Vehicles) 520
- Treadwear 520
- Traction 520
- Temperature 521

Tire Labeling 522
Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) — Required Federal Explanation 524
Emissions Controls 526
- The Clean Air Act 526
- Crankcase Emissions Control System 526
- Evaporative Emissions Control System 526
- Onboard Refueling Vapor Recovery 526
- Exhaust Emissions Controls 527
  - PGM-FI System 527
  - Ignition Timing Control System 527
  - Exhaust Gas Recirculation (EGR) System 527
  - Three Way Catalytic Converter 527
- Replacement Parts 527

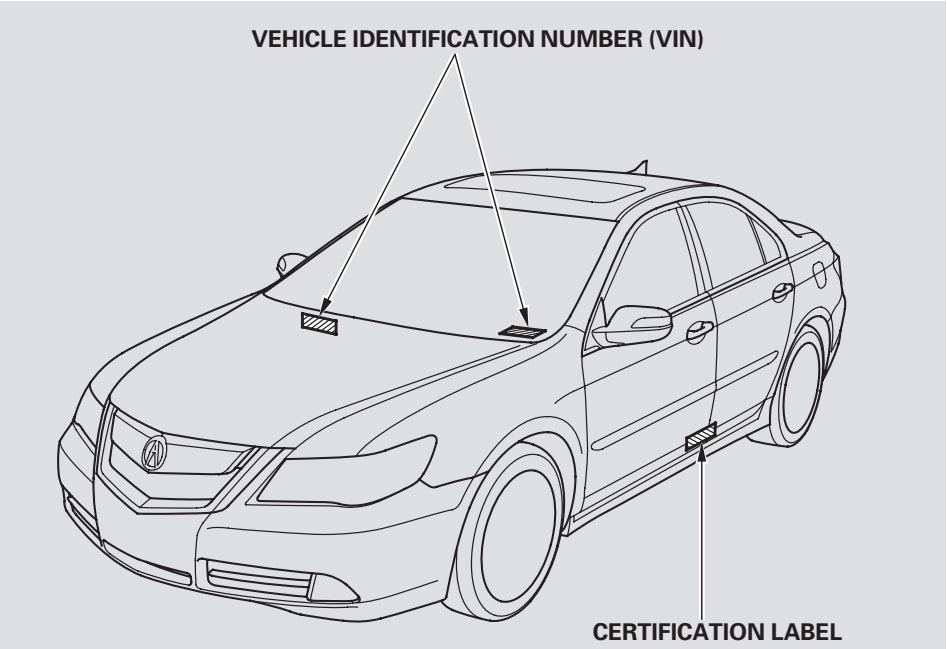
Three Way Catalytic Converters 528
Emissions Testing 529

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Identification Numbers

Your vehicle has several identifying numbers in various places.

The vehicle identification number (VIN) is the 17-digit number your dealer uses to register your vehicle for warranty purposes. It is also necessary for licensing and insuring your vehicle. The easiest place to find the VIN is on a plate fastened to the top of the dashboard. You can see it by looking through the windshield on the driver's side. It is also on the certification label attached to the driver's doorjamb, and is stamped on the engine compartment bulkhead. The VIN is also provided in bar code on the certification label.



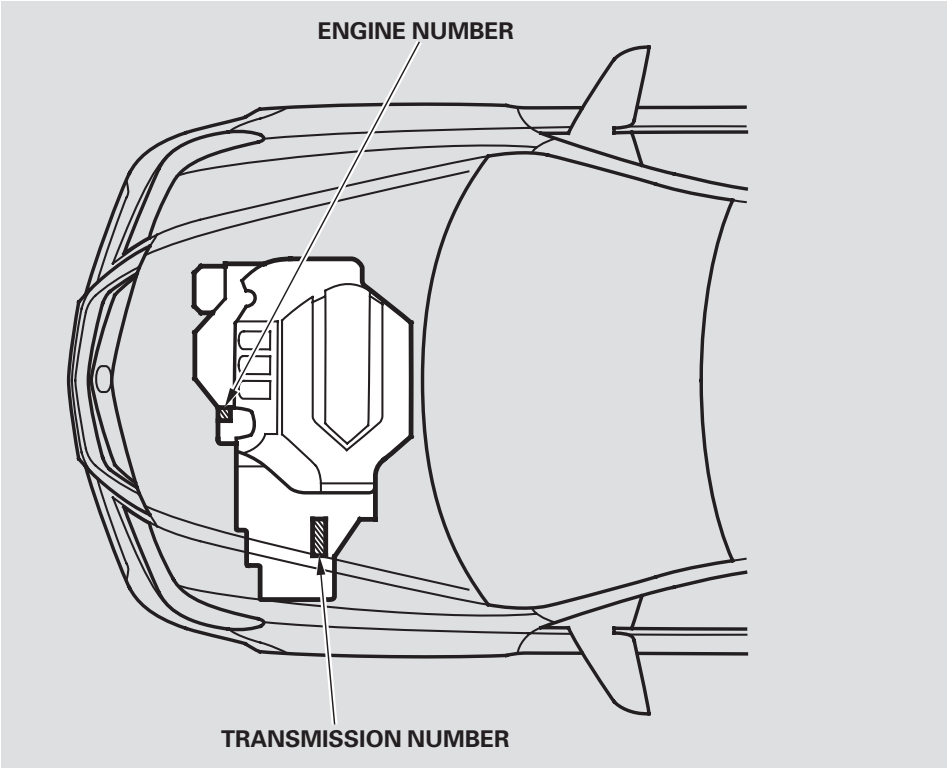
U.S. vehicle is shown.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Identification Numbers

The engine number is stamped into the engine block. It is on the front left, below the valve cover.

The transmission number is on a label on top of the transmission.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Specifications

Dimensions

Length		195.8 in (4,973 mm)
Width		72.7 in (1,847 mm)
Height		57.3 in (1,455 mm)
Wheelbase		110.2 in (2,800 mm)
Track	Front	62.0 in (1,575 mm)
	Rear	62.4 in (1,585 mm)

Weights

Gross vehicle weight rating	See the certification label attached to the driver's doorjamb.

Seating Capacities

Total	5
Front	2
Rear	3

Air Conditioning

Refrigerant type	HFC-134a (R-134a)
Charge quantity	15.8－17.60 oz (450－500 g)
Lubricant type	ND-OIL8

Capacities

Fuel tank		Approx. 19.4 US gal (73 ℓ)
Engine coolant	Change*1	1.59 US gal (6.0 ℓ)
	Total	2.27 US gal (8.6 ℓ)
Engine oil	Change*2	
	Including filter	4.5 US qt (4.3 ℓ)
	Without filter	4.2 US qt (4.0 ℓ)
	Total	5.3 US qt (5.0 ℓ)
Automatic transmission fluid	Change	3.0 US qt (2.8 ℓ)
	Total	8.1 US qt (7.7 ℓ)
Rear differential fluid		
SH-AWD differential case	Change	0.77 US qt (0.73 ℓ)
	Total	0.79 US qt (0.75 ℓ)
SH-AWD clutch case	Change	2.8 US qt (2.7 ℓ)
	Total	3.3 US qt (3.1 ℓ)
Transfer assembly fluid	Change	0.45 US qt (0.43 ℓ)
	Total	0.48 US qt (0.45 ℓ)
Windshield washer reservoir	U.S. vehicles	2.6 US qt (2.5 ℓ)
	Canadian vehicles	6.9 US qt (6.5 ℓ)

*1 : Including the coolant in the reserve tank and that remaining in the engine
Reserve tank capacity:
0.16 US gal (0.58 ℓ)

*2 : Excluding the oil remaining in the engine

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Specifications

Lights

Headlights* (High Beam)		12 V — 60 W (HB3)
Front turn signal		12 V — 24/2.2 CP (Amber)
Front side marker/Parking lights		12 V — 1.5 CP
Rear turn signal lights		12 V — 21 W (Amber)
Back-up light		12 V — 21 W
Fog lights		12 V — 35 W (H8)
License plate lights		12 V — 5 W
Ceiling lights	Front	12 V — 8 W
	Rear	12 V — 8 W
Vanity mirror lights		12 V — 2 W
Door courtesy lights		12 V — 2 CP
Trunk lights	inside trunk	12 V — 5 W
	trunk lid	12 V — 5 W

*: Low beam headlight bulbs are a type of high voltage discharge tube (D2S).

Battery

Capacity	12 V — 55 AH/5 HR 12 V — 72 AH/20 HR

Fuses

Interior	See page 511 and 512 or the fuse label attached to the inside of each fuse box cover.
Under-hood	See page 510 or the fuse box cover.

Engine

Type	SOHC VTEC V-6 gasoline engine
Bore x Stroke	3.54 x 3.78 in (90 x 96 mm)
Displacement	223.5 cu-in (3,664 cm^3)
Compression ratio	11.2 : 1
Spark plugs	NGK: ILZKR7B-11S DENSO: SXU22HCR11S

Alignment

Toe-in	Front	0.00 in (0.0 mm)
	Rear	0.08 in (2.0 mm)
Camber	Front	−0°8′
	Rear	−1°15′
Caster	Front	2°10′

Tires

Size	Front/Rear	P245/45R18 96V
	Spare	T155/70D17 110M
Pressure	Front	32 psi (220 kPa , 2.2 kgf/cm^2)
	Rear	30 psi (210 kPa , 2.1 kgf/cm^2)
	Spare	60 psi (420 kPa , 4.2 kgf/cm^2)

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

DOT Tire Quality Grading (U.S. Vehicles)

The tires on your vehicle meet all U.S. Federal Safety Requirements. All tires are also graded for treadwear, traction, and temperature performance according to Department of Transportation (DOT) standards. The following explains these gradings.

Uniform Tire Quality Grading
Quality grades can be found where applicable on the tire sidewall between tread shoulder and maximum section width. For example:

Treadwear 200
Traction AA
Temperature A

All passenger car tires must conform to Federal Safety Requirements in addition to these grades.

Treadwear
The treadwear grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course. For example, a tire graded 150 would wear one and one-half (1 1/2) times as well on the government course as a tire graded 100. The relative performance of tires depends upon the actual conditions of their use, however, and may depart significantly from the norm due to variations in driving habits, service practices and differences in road characteristics and climate.

Traction
The traction grades, from highest to lowest, are AA, A, B, and C. Those grades represent the tire's ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tire marked C may have poor traction performance.

Warning: The traction grade assigned to this tire is based on straight-ahead braking traction tests, and does not include acceleration, cornering, hydroplaning, or peak traction characteristics.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

DOT Tire Quality Grading (U.S. Vehicles)

Temperature
The temperature grades are A (the highest), B, and C, representing the tire's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel. Sustained high temperature can cause the material of the tire to degenerate and reduce tire life, and excessive temperature can lead to sudden tire failure. The grade C corresponds to a level of performance which all passenger car tires must meet under the Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard No. 109. Grades B and A represent higher levels of performance on the laboratory test wheel than the minimum required by law.

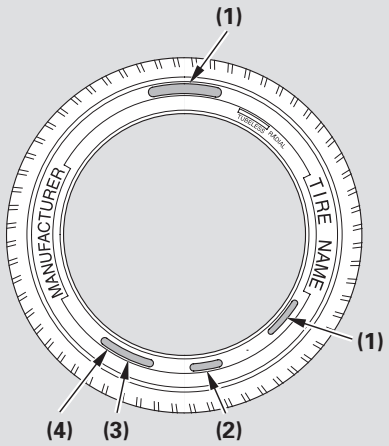
Warning: The temperature grade for this tire is established for a tire that is properly inflated and not overloaded. Excessive speed, underinflation, or excessive loading, either separately or in combination, can cause heat buildup and possible tire failure.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Tire Labeling

The tires that came on your vehicle have a number of markings. Those you should be aware of are described below.

TIRE LABELING EXAMPLE



(1) Tire Size
(2) Tire Identification Number (TIN)
(3) Maximum Tire Pressure
(4) Maximum Tire Load

Tire Size

Whenever tires are replaced, they should be replaced with tires of the same size. Following is an example of tire size with an explanation of what each component means.

P245/45R18 96V

P — Vehicle type (P indicates passenger vehicle).

245 — Tire width in millimeters.

45 — Aspect ratio (the tire's section height as a percentage of its width).

R — Tire construction code (R indicates radial).

18 — Rim diameter in inches.

96 — Load index (a numerical code associated with the maximum load the tire can carry).

V — Speed symbol (an alphabetical code indicating the maximum speed rating).

Tire Identification Number (TIN)

The tire identification number (TIN) is a group of numbers and letters that look like the following example. TIN is located on the sidewall of the tire.

DOT B97R FW6X 2202

DOT — This indicates that the tire meets all requirements of the U.S. Department of Transportation.

B97R — Manufacturer's identification mark.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Tire Labeling

FW6X — Tire type code.

2202 — Date of manufacture.
- Year
- Week

Glossary of Tire Terminology

Cold Tire Pressure — The tire air pressure when the vehicle has been parked for at least three hours or driven less than 1 mile (1.6 km).

Load Rating — Means the maximum load that a tire is rated to carry for a given inflation pressure.

Maximum Inflation Pressure — The maximum tire air pressure that the tire can hold.

Maximum Load Rating — Means the load rating for a tire at the maximum permissible inflation pressure for that tire.

Recommended Inflation Pressure — The cold tire inflation pressure recommended by the manufacturer.

Treadwear Indicators (TWI) — Means the projections within the principal grooves designed to give a visual indication of the degrees of wear of the tread.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) — Required Federal Explanation

Each tire, including the spare (if provided), should be checked monthly when cold and inflated to the inflation pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label.

(If your vehicle has tires of a different size than the size indicated on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label, you should determine the proper tire inflation pressure for those tires.)

As an added safety feature, your vehicle has been equipped with a tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS) that illuminates a low tire pressure telltale

when one or more of your tires is significantly under-inflated.

Accordingly, when the low tire pressure telltale illuminates, you should stop and check your tires as soon as possible, and inflate them to the proper pressure.

Driving on a significantly under inflated tire causes the tire to overheat and can lead to tire failure. Underinflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tire tread life, and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability.

Please note that the TPMS is not a substitute for proper tire maintenance, and it is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tire pressure, even if under-inflation has not reached the level to trigger illumination of the TPMS low tire pressure telltale.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) − Required Federal Explanation

Your vehicle has also been equipped with a TPMS malfunction indicator to indicate when the system is not operating properly. The TPMS malfunction indicator is combined with the low tire pressure telltale. When the system detects a malfunction, the telltale will flash for approximately one minute and then remain continuously illuminated. This sequence will continue upon subsequent vehicle start-ups as long as the malfunction exists.

When the malfunction indicator is illuminated, the system may not be able to detect or signal low tire pressure as intended.

TPMS malfunctions may occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of replacement or alternate tires or wheels on the vehicle that prevent the TPMS from functioning properly.

Always check the TPMS malfunction telltale after replacing one or more tires or wheels on your vehicle to ensure that the replacement or alternate tires and wheels allow the TPMS to continue to function properly.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Emissions Controls

The burning of gasoline in your vehicle's engine produces several by-products. Some of these are carbon monoxide (CO), oxides of nitrogen (NOx), and hydrocarbons (HC). Gasoline evaporating from the tank also produces hydrocarbons. Controlling the production of NOx, CO, and HC is important to the environment. Under certain conditions of sunlight and climate, NOx and HC react to form photochemical "smog." Carbon monoxide does not contribute to smog creation, but it is a poisonous gas.

The Clean Air Act
The United States Clean Air Act* sets standards for automobile emissions. It also requires that automobile manufacturers explain to owners how their emissions controls work and what to do to maintain them. This section summarizes how the emissions controls work. Scheduled maintenance is on pages 439 and 446 .

* In Canada, Acura vehicles comply with the Canadian emission requirements, as specified in an agreement with Environment Canada, at the time they are manufactured.

Crankcase Emissions Control System
Your vehicle has a positive crankcase ventilation system. This keeps gasses that build up in the engine's crankcase from going into the atmosphere. The positive crankcase ventilation valve routes them from the crankcase back to the intake manifold. They are then drawn into the engine and burned.

Evaporative Emissions Control System
As gasoline evaporates in the fuel tank, an evaporative emissions control canister filled with charcoal adsorbs the vapor. It is stored in this canister while the engine is off. After the engine is started and warmed up, the vapor is drawn into the engine and burned during driving.

Onboard Refueling Vapor Recovery
The onboard refueling vapor recovery (ORVR) system captures the fuel vapors during refueling. The vapors are adsorbed in a canister filled with activated carbon. While driving, the fuel vapors are drawn into the engine and burned off.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Exhaust Emissions Controls

The exhaust emissions controls include four systems: PGM-FI, ignition timing control, exhaust gas recirculation, and three way catalytic converter. These four systems work together to control the engine's combustion and minimize the amount of HC, CO, and NOx that come out the tailpipe. The exhaust emissions control systems are separate from the crankcase and evaporative emissions control systems.

PGM-FI System

The PGM-FI system uses sequential multiport fuel injection.
It has three subsystems: air intake, engine control, and fuel control. The powertrain control module (PCM) uses various sensors to determine how much air is going into the engine. It then controls how much fuel to inject under all operating conditions.

Ignition Timing Control System

This system constantly adjusts the ignition timing, reducing the amount of HC, CO, and NOx produced.

Exhaust Gas Recirculation (EGR) System

The exhaust gas recirculation (EGR) system takes some of the exhaust gas and routes it back into the intake manifold. Adding exhaust gas to the air/fuel mixture reduces the amount of NOx produced when the fuel is burned.

Three Way Catalytic Converter

The three way catalytic converters are in the exhaust system. Through chemical reactions, they convert HC, CO, and NOx in the engine's exhaust to carbon dioxide (CO_2), nitrogen (N_2), and water vapor.

Replacement Parts

The emissions control systems are designed and certified to work together in reducing emissions to levels that comply with the Clean Air Act. To make sure the emissions remain low, you should use only new Acura replacement parts or their equivalent for repairs. Using lower quality parts may increase the emissions from your vehicle.

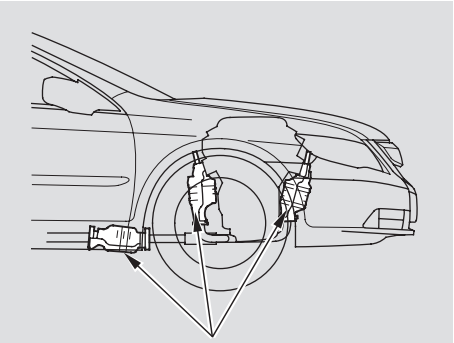
The emissions control systems are covered by warranties separate from the rest of your vehicle. Read your warranty manual for more information.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Three Way Catalytic Converters

The three way catalytic converters contain precious metals that serve as catalysts, promoting chemical reactions to convert the exhaust gasses without affecting the metals. The catalytic converters are referred to as three-way catalysts, since they act on HC, CO, and NOx. Replacement units must be original Acura parts or their equivalent.

The three way catalytic converters must operate at a high temperature for the chemical reactions to take place. They can set on fire any combustible materials that come near them. Park your vehicle away from high grass, dry leaves, or other flammables.



THREE WAY CATALYTIC CONVERTERS

A defective three way catalytic converter contributes to air pollution, and can impair your engine's performance. Follow these guidelines to protect your vehicle's three way catalytic converters.

- Always use unleaded gasoline. Even a small amount of leaded gasoline can contaminate the catalyst metals, making the three way catalytic converters ineffective.
- Keep the engine well maintained.
- Have your vehicle diagnosed and repaired if it is misfiring, backfiring, stalling, or otherwise not running properly.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Testing of Readiness Codes

If you take your vehicle for an emissions test shortly after the battery has been disconnected or gone dead, it may not pass the test. This is because of certain "readiness codes" that must be set in the on-board diagnostics for the emissions systems. These codes are erased when the battery is disconnected, and set again only after several days of driving under a variety of conditions.

If the testing facility determines that the readiness codes are not set, you will be requested to return at a later date to complete the test. If you must get the vehicle retested within the next two or three days, you can condition the vehicle for retesting by doing the following.

1. Make sure the gas tank is nearly, but not completely, full (around 3/4).
2. Make sure the vehicle has been parked with the engine off for 6 hours or more.
3. Make sure the ambient temperature is between 40° and 95°F (4° and 35°C).
4. Without touching the accelerator pedal, start the engine, and let it idle for 20 seconds.
5. Keep the vehicle in Park. Increase the engine speed to 2,000 rpm, and hold it there until the temperature gauge rises to at least 1/4 of the scale (about 3 minutes).
6. Without touching the accelerator pedal, let the engine idle for 20 seconds.

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Emissions Testing

7. Select a nearby lightly traveled major highway where you can maintain a speed of 50 to 60 mph for at least 20 minutes. Drive on the highway in D. Do not use the cruise control. When traffic allows, drive for 90 seconds without moving the accelerator pedal. (Vehicle speed may vary slightly; this is okay.) If you cannot do this for a continuous 90 seconds because of traffic conditions, drive for at least 30 seconds, then repeat it two more times (for a total of 90 seconds).
8. Then drive in city/suburban traffic for at least 10 minutes. When traffic conditions allow, let the vehicle coast for several seconds without using the accelerator pedal or the brake pedal.
9. Stop the vehicle, turn off the ignition switch, and leave it off for 30 minutes.

If the testing facility determines the readiness codes are still not set, see your dealer.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Warranty and Client Relations

Client Service Information 532
Warranty Coverages 533
Reporting Safety Defects (U.S. Vehicles) 534
Authorized Manuals 535

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Client Service Information

Acura dealership personnel are trained professionals. They should be able to answer all your questions. If you encounter a problem that your dealership does not solve to your satisfaction, please discuss it with the dealership's management. The service manager or general manager can help. Almost all problems are solved in this way.

If you are dissatisfied with the decision made by the dealership's management, contact Acura Client Services.

U.S. Owners:
American Honda Motor Co., Inc.
Acura Client Services
Mail Stop 500-2N-7E
1919 Torrance Blvd.
Torrance, CA 90501-2746

Tel: (800) 382-2238

Canadian Owners:
Acura Client Services
Honda Canada Inc.
Visit www.acura.ca for contact information

Tel: 1-866-78-ACURA
Fax: (877) 939-0909

In Puerto Rico and the U.S. Virgin Islands:
Vortex Motor Corp.
Bella International
P.O. Box 190816
San Juan, PR 00919-0816

Tel: (787) 620-7546

When you call or write, please give us this information:

- Vehicle identification number (see page 516)
- Name and address of the dealer who services your vehicle
- Date of purchase
- Mileage on your vehicle
- Your name, address, and telephone number
- A detailed description of the problem
- Name of the dealer who sold the vehicle to you

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Warranty Coverages

U.S. Owners

Your new vehicle is covered by these warranties:

New Vehicle Limited Warranty — covers your new vehicle, except for the battery, emissions control systems, and accessories, against defects in materials and workmanship.

Emissions Control Systems Defects Warranty and Emissions Performance Warranty — these two warranties cover your vehicle's emissions control systems. Time, mileage, and coverage are conditional. Please read your warranty booklet for exact information.

Original Equipment Battery Limited Warranty — this warranty gives up to 100% credit toward a replacement battery.

Seat Belt Limited Warranty — a seat belt that fails to function properly is covered by a limited warranty. Please read your warranty booklet for details.

Rust Perforation Limited Warranty — all exterior body panels are covered for rust-through from the inside for the specified time period with no mileage limit.

Accessory Limited Warranty — Acura accessories are covered under this warranty. Time and mileage limits depend on the type of accessory and other factors. Please read your warranty manual for details.

Replacement Parts Limited Warranty — covers all Acura replacement parts against defects in materials and workmanship.

Replacement Battery Limited Warranty — provides prorated coverage for a replacement battery purchased from your dealer.

Replacement Muffler Lifetime Limited Warranty — provides coverage for as long as the purchaser of the muffler owns the vehicle.

Restrictions and exclusions apply to all these warranties. Please read the 2010 Acura Warranty Information booklet that came with your vehicle for precise information on warranty coverages. Your vehicle's original tires are covered by their manufacturer. Tire warranty information is in a separate booklet.

Canadian Owners

Please refer to the 2010 warranty manual that came with your vehicle.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Reporting Safety Defects (U.S. Vehicles)

If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA), in addition to notifying American Honda Motor Co., Inc.

If NHTSA receives similar complaints, it may open an investigation, and if it finds that a safety defect exists in a group of vehicles, it may order a recall and remedy campaign. However, NHTSA cannot become involved in individual problems between you, your dealer, or American Honda Motor Co., Inc.

To contact NHTSA, you may call the Vehicle Safety Hotline toll-free at 1-888-327-4236 (TTY: 1-800-424-9153); go to *http://www.safercar.gov*; or write to: Administrator, NHTSA, 1200 New Jersey Avenue, SE., Washington, DC 20590.
You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from *http://www.safercar.gov*.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Authorized Manuals

Purchasing Factory Authorized Manuals (U.S. only)

The publications shown below can be purchased from Helm Incorporated. You can order by phone or online:

- Call Helm Inc. at 1-800-782-4356 (credit card orders only)
- Go online at *www. helminc. com*

If you are interested in other years or models, contact Helm Inc. at 1-800-782-4356.

Publication Form Number	Form Description
61SJA05	2005-2010 Acura RL Service Manual
61SJA05EL	2005-2010 Acura RL Electrical Troubleshooting Manual
61SJA30 61SJA31	2005 Model Series Acura RL Body Repair Manual 2009 Acura RL Body Repair Manual Supplement
31SJA650	2010 Acura RL Owner's Manual
31SJA830	2010 Acura RL Navigation System Manual
31SJAM50	2010 Acura RL Maintenance Journal
31SJAQ50	2010 Acura RL Advanced Technology Guide
ACU-R	Order Form for Previous Years Indicate Year and Model Desired

Service Manual:
Covers maintenance and recommended procedures for repair to engine and chassis components. It is written for the journeyman mechanic, but it is simple enough for most mechanically inclined owners to understand.

Electrical Troubleshooting Manual:
Complements the Service Manual by providing in-depth troubleshooting information for each electrical circuit in your vehicle.

Body Repair Manual:
Describes the procedures involved in the replacement of damaged body parts.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

09/04/02 19:47:36 31SJA650 0541

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Index

A

Accessories 387
ACCESSORY (Ignition Switch Position) 152
Accessory Power Sockets 197
AcuraLink® 337
Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)
  Indicator 319
  Operation 321
Adaptive Front Lighting System (AFS) 144
Additives, Engine Oil 452
Airbag (SRS) 11, 26
Air Conditioning 204
Air Pressure, Tires 476
Alcohol in Gasoline 379
Antifreeze 455
Anti-lock Brakes (ABS)
  Indicator 64, 411
  Operation 411
Anti-theft, Audio System 280
Anti-theft Steering Column Lock 152
Audio System 213
Auto Control Mode, Starting Engine 397
Automatic Climate Control 211
Automatic Lighting 141
Automatic Seat Belt Tensioners 23
Automatic Speed Control 316
Automatic Transmission 399
  Capacity, Fluid 518
  Checking Fluid Level 458
  Shifting 399
  Shift Lever Position Indicators 399
  Shift Lever Positions 400
  Shift Lock Release 401
Auxiliary Input Jack 277

B

Battery
  Charging System Indicator 62, 500
  Jump Starting 494
  Maintenance 483
  Cover 485
  Specifications 519
Before Driving 377
Belts, Seat 10, 21
Beverage Holders 194
Bluetooth® HandsFreeLink® 354
Booster Seats 53
Brakes
  Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) 411
  Break-in, New Linings 378
  Fluid 460
  Parking 191
  System Indicator 63, 502
  Wear Indicators 410
Braking System 410
Break-in, New Vehicle 378
Brightness Control, Instruments 146
Bulb Replacement
  Back-up Lights 469
  Fog Lights 466
  Front Parking Lights 465
  Front Side Marker Lights 465
  Headlights 463
  Specifications 519
  Turn Signal Lights 464, 468

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Main Menu

Index

Built-in-key 167
Bulbs, Halogen 463

C

Capacities Chart 518
Carbon Monoxide Hazard 56
Cargo, How to Carry 389
CAUTION, Explanation of iii
CD Care 274
CD Error Message 271
CD Changer 236
Ceiling Lights 200
Certification Label 516
Chains, Tires 481
Changing a Flat Tire 489
Changing Oil
  How to 453
  When to 439
Charging System Indicator 500
Checklist, Before Driving 396
Child Safety 38
  Booster Seats 53
  Child Seats 45
  Important Safety Reminders 38
  Infants 43
  Larger Children 52
  LATCH 47
  Risks with Airbags 39
  Small Children 44
  Tethers 51
  Where Should a Child Sit? 39
Child Seats 43
  LATCH 47
  Tether Anchorage Points 51
Childproof Door Locks 155
Cleaning
  Seat Belts 470
Client Service Office 532
Climate Control System 204
Clock, Setting the 313
CO in the Exhaust 526
Cold Weather, Starting in 397
Collision Mitigation Brake System (CMBS)
  Indicator 418
  Operation 413
Compact Spare Tire 488
Compass System 281
Console Compartment 195
Consumer Information 532
Controls, Instruments and 59
Coolant
  Adding 455
  Checking 383
  Proper Solution 455
  Temperature Gauge 70
Crankcase Emissions Control System 526
Cruise Control Indicator 65
Cruise Control Operation 316
Cup Holders 194
Customize Settings 81
  ACC Setup 89
  Door/Window Setup 122
  KEYLESS ACCESS Setup 108
  Lighting Setup 115
  Meter Setup 94
  Position Setup 103
  Setting to Default 85
  Wiper Setup 133

D

DANGER, Explanation of iii
Dashboard 4, 60
Daytime Running Lights 142
  Indicator 65

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Index

Dead Battery 493
Defects, Reporting Safety..... 534
Defogger, Rear Window..... 147
Defrosting the Windows..... 210
Differential Fluid 518
Dimensions..... 518
Dimming the Headlights 140
Dipstick
  Automatic Transmission..... 458
  Engine Oil..... 383
Directional Signals..... 140
Disc Brake Wear Indicators..... 410
Disposal of Used Oil..... 454
Doors
  Locking and Unlocking..... 153
  Lockout Prevention..... 153
  Monitor Indicator 13, 79
  Power Door Locks..... 153
DOT Tire Quality Grading* 520
Driver and Passenger Safety..... 7
Driver's ID 81
Driving 395
  Economy..... 384
Driving Position Memory
  System..... 163
Dust and Pollen Filter 470

E

Economy, Fuel 384
Emergencies..... 487
  Battery, Jump Starting 494
  Brake System Indicator 502
  Changing a Flat Tire 489
  Charging System Indicator 500
  Checking the Fuses..... 506
  Hazard Warning Flashers 146
  Jump Starting 494
  Low Oil Pressure Indicator 500
  Malfunction Indicator Lamp 501
  Opening the Fuel Fill Door
    Manually 503
  Overheated Engine 497
  Towing 513
Emergency Brake..... 191
Emergency Flashers 146
Emergency Towing 513
Emergency Trunk Opener 155
Emissions Controls..... 526
Emissions Testing 529
Engine
  Check Starting System 398
  Compartment Covers..... 450
  Coolant Temperature Gauge 70
  If It Won't Start 493
  Malfunction Indicator
    Lamp 62, 501
  Oil life..... 439
  Oil Pressure Indicator..... 62, 500
  Oil, What Kind to Use..... 452
  Overheating..... 497
  Specifications 519
  Speed Limiter..... 401
  Starting..... 397
Engine Speed Limiter..... 401
Ethanol in Gasoline 379
Evaporative Emissions Controls.. 526
Exhaust Fumes 56
Exhaust Gas Recirculation
  System..... 527
Expectant Mothers, Use of Seat
  Belts by 19

F

Fan, Interior..... 206
Features..... 203

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Main Menu

Index

Filling the Fuel Tank 379
Filters
  Dust and Pollen 470
  Oil 453
Flashers, Hazard Warning 146
Flat Tire, Changing a 489
Floor Mats 471
Fluids
  Automatic Transmission 458
  Brake 460
  Power Steering 460
  Windshield Washer 458
Fog Lights 142
Four-way Flashers 146
Front Airbags 11, 29
Front Seat 156
  Adjusting 156
  Heaters 181
  Airbags 11, 29
  Air Ventilation 182
Fuel 378
  Fill Door and Cap 379
  Gauge 70
  Low Fuel Indicator 66
  Octane Requirement 378
  Opening the Fuel Fill Door Manually 503
  Oxygenated 379
  Tank, Refueling 379
  Tighten Fuel Cap 380
Fuses, Checking the 506

G

Gas Mileage Improving 385
Gasoline 378
  Gauge 70
  Low Fuel Indicator 66
  Octane Requirement 378
  Tank, Refueling 379
Gas Station Procedures 379
Gauges 70
  Engine Coolant Temperature 70
  Fuel 70
GAWR (Gross Axle Weight Rating) 432
Gearshift Lever Positions 399
Glove Box 193
GPS initialization 299
GVWR (Gross Vehicle Weight Rating) 432

H

Halogen Headlight Bulbs 463
HandsFreeLink®, *Bluetooth*® 354
Hazard Warning Flashers 146
Headlights
  Adaptive Front Lighting System (AFS) 144
  Aiming 462
  Automatic Lighting 141
  Daytime Running Lights 142
  High Beam Indicator 65
  Lights On Indicator 64
  Low Beams, Turning on 140
  Reminder Chime 140
  Replacing Halogen Bulbs 463
  High beams, Turning on 140
  Washer** 138
Head Restraints 157
Heated Mirror 162
Heater, Seat 181
High Altitude, Starting at 397
HomeLink® Universal Transceiver 334
Hood, Opening the 381
Horn 5, 136

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Index

I

Identification Number, Vehicle.... 516
Ignition
  Keys..... 150
  Switch..... 152
  Timing Control System..... 527
Immobilizer System..... 151
Important Safety Precautions 8
Indicators..... 62
  ABS (Anti-lock Brake System) 64, 411
  Adaptive Front lighting System (AFS)..... 69, 144
  Brake (Parking and Brake System) 63, 502
  Charging System 62, 500
  Collision Mitigation Brake System (CMBS)..... 69, 418
  Cruise Control..... 66
  Electronically Controlled Power Steering System (ECPS)..... 68
  Fog Light 65
  High Beam..... 65
  Key (Immobilizer System) 64
  Keyless Access System 68, 179
  Lights On..... 64
  Low Fuel..... 66
  Low Oil Pressure 62, 500
  Low Tire Pressure/TPMS Indicator..... 67, 423
  Malfunction (MIL) 62, 501
  Message..... 68
  Seat Belt Reminder 21, 62
  Security System 69, 315
  SH-AWD 66
  Side Airbag Off 63
  SRS 63
  Turn Signal and Hazard Warning 64
  VSA (Vehicle Stability Assist) ... 65
  VSA (Vehicle Stability Assist) Activation..... 65, 429
Indicators, Instrument Panel..... 61
Infant Restraint..... 43
Infant Seats..... 43
  Tether Anchorage Points 51
Inflation, Proper Tire 474
Inside Mirror..... 161
Inspection, Tire..... 477
Instrument Panel 61
Instrument Panel Brightness..... 146
Interface Dial 205, 213, 337
Interior Lights..... 200
Introduction..... i

J

Jacking up the Vehicle 490
Jack, Tire 489
Jump Starting 494

K

Keys..... 150
Keyless Access System..... 166
Keyless Access Remote..... 167
Keyless Memory Settings 173

L

Label, Certification..... 516
Lane Change, Signaling 140
Lap/Shoulder Belts..... 22
Lights On Indicator 64

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Main Menu

Index

Lights
  Bulb Replacement 463
  Indicator..... 61
  Position 140
  Turn Signal..... 140
Load Limit 431
LOCK (Ignition Key Position) 152
Locks
  Anti-theft Steering Column 152
  Childproof Door..... 155
  Fuel Fill Door 379
  Glove Box 193
  Power Door 153
  Trunk 154
  Trunk Pass-through Cover..... 160
Low Coolant Level..... 383
Low Fuel Indicator 66
Low Oil Pressure Indicator 62, 500
Lubricant Specifications Chart 518
Luggage, Storing 389

M

Maintenance..... 437
  Main Items 447
  Minder..... 439
  Owner's Maintenance Checks 446
  Safety..... 438
  Sub Items..... 448
Malfunction Indicator Lamp .. 62, 501
Memory, Driving Position 163
Message Display..... 78
Message Indicator 68
Meters, Gauges..... 70
Methanol in Gasoline 379
Mirrors, Adjusting 161
Modifications..... 387
Modifying Your Vehicle..... 388
Moonroof..... 187-190
MP3 243
Multi-Information Display 71

N

Neutral Gear Position..... 400
New Vehicle Break-in 378
NOTICE, Explanation of..... i
Numbers, Identification..... 516

O

Octane Requirement, Gasoline.... 378
Odometer..... 72
Odometer, Trip 72
Oil
  Change, How to 453
  Change, When to..... 439
  Checking Engine 383
  Life, Engine 439
  Pressure Indicator..... 62, 500
  Selecting Proper Viscosity Chart 452
ON (Ignition Switch Position)..... 152
Onboard Refueling Vapor Recovery 526
Outside Mirrors 161
Outside Temperature Indicator..... 73
Overheating, Engine 497
Owner's Maintenance Checks..... 446
Oxygenated Fuels..... 379

P

Paddle Shifters..... 403
Panel Brightness Control 146

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Index

Park Gear Position 400
Parking 409
Parking Brake 191
Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator 63, 502
Parking Over Things that Burn ... 409
PGM-FI System 527
Power Door Locks 153
Power Socket Locations 197
Power Windows 185
Pregnancy, Using Seat Belts 19
Protecting Adults and Teens 13
  Additional Safety Precautions 20
  Advice for Pregnant Women 19
Protecting Children 38
  Protecting Infants 43
  Protecting Larger Children 52
  Protecting Small Children 44
  Using Child Seats with Tethers 51
  Using LATCH 47

R

Radiator Overheating 497
Radio/CD Sound System 213
Readiness Codes 501
Rear Lights, Bulb Replacement ... 468
Rear View Mirror 161
Rear Window Defogger 147
Reclining the Seat Backs 156
Reminder Indicators 62
Remote 166
Replacement Information
  Engine Oil and Filter 453
  Fuses 504
  Light Bulbs 462
  Schedule 439
  Tires 474
  Wiper Blades 472
Replacing Seat Belts After a Crash 25
Reserve Tank, Engine Coolant 383
Restraint, Child 38
Reverse Gear Position 400
Reverse Tilt Door Mirror 162
Rearview Camera 375
Roof Rack 392
Rotation, Tire 479

S

Safety Belts 10, 21
Safety Defects, Reporting* 534
Safety Features 9
  Airbags 11
  Seat Belts 10
Safety Labels, Location of 57
Safety Messages iii
Satellite Digital Radio* 229
Seat Belts 10, 21
  Additional Information 21
  Automatic Seat Belt Tensioners 23
  Cleaning 470
  e-pretensioner 24
  Lap/Shoulder Belt 17, 22
  Maintenance 25
  Reminder Indicator and Beeper 21, 62
  System Components 21
  Use During Pregnancy 19
Seat Heaters 181
Seat Position Memory 163

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Index

Seat Ventilation** 182
Seats, Adjusting the..... 156
Security System 315
Sequential Sports Shift Mode 405
  Paddle Shifters..... 403
Serial Number 516
Service Intervals 439
Service Manual, Purchasing* 535
Service Station Procedures 379
Super Handling-All Wheel Drive™ (SH-AWD®) 407
  Torque Distribution Monitor ... 407
  Indicator..... 66
Shift Lever Position Indicators 399
Shift Lock Release..... 401
Side Airbags 11, 32
  How the Side Airbag off Indicator Works..... 35
  How Your Side Airbags Work.... 32
Side Curtain Airbags 11, 34
  How Your Side Curtain Airbags Work..... 34
Side Marker Lights, Bulb Replacement in 465
Signaling Turns..... 140
Snow Tires..... 481
Sound System..... 213
Spare Tire
  Inflating..... 488
  Specifications 519
Specification Charts 518
Speed Limiter..... 401
Spotlights..... 200
SRS, Additional Information..... 26
  Additional Safety Precautions.... 37
  How the SRS Indicator Works... 34
  How Your Airbags Work 29, 32, 34
  SRS Components 26
  SRS Service..... 36
SRS Indicator..... 34, 63
START (Ignition Switch Position) 152
Starting the Engine..... 397
  Auto Control Mode..... 397
  In Cold Weather at High Altitude 397
  With a Dead Battery 494
Steam Coming from Engine..... 497
Steering Wheel
  Adjustments 148
  Anti-theft Column Lock 152
  Position Memory 163
Steering Wheel Buttons/ Switches..... 136
Stereo Sound System 213
Storing Your Vehicle..... 486
Sun Visors..... 196
Supplemental Restraint System..... 11, 26
  Servicing 36
  SRS Indicator..... 34, 63
  System Components..... 26
Synthetic Oil..... 453

T

Taking Care of the Unexpected .. 487
Technical Descriptions
  DOT Tire Quality Grading 520
  Emissions Control Systems..... 526
  Three Way Catalytic Converters..... 528
Temperature Gauge 70
Temperature, Inside Sensor..... 212
Temperature, Outside..... 73
Tether Anchorage Points 51

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Index

Three Way Catalytic Converters 528
Tilt/Telescopic Steering Wheel 148
Timing Belt 461
Tire Chains 481
Tire, How to Change a Flat 489
Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) 423, 524
  Monitoring Tire Pressure Reading 423
  TPMS System Warning 423
Tires 474
  Air Pressure 476
  Chains 481
  Checking Wear 477
  Compact Spare 488
  DOT Tire Quality Grading 520
  Inflation 474
  Inspection 477
  Labeling 522
  Low Tire Pressure Indicator 67, 423
  Pressure Monitor 425
  Pressure Monitor System 423
  Replacing 479
  Rotating 479
  Snow 481
  Specifications 519
Tools, Tire Changing 489
Torque Distribution Monitor (SH-AWD) 407
Towing
  A Trailer 431
  Equipment and Accessories 432
  Weight Limit 431
TPMS (Tire Pressure Monitoring System) 423
  Required Federal Explanation 524
  Warning Message 427
Trailer Loading 431
Trailer Towing Tips 435
Transmission
  Checking Fluid Level, Automatic 458
  Fluid Selection 459
  Identification Number 517
  Shifting the Automatic 399
Treadwear 477, 488
Trip Meter 72
Trunk 154
  Emergency Opener 155
  Opening the 154
  Open Monitor Indicator 13, 79
Turn Signals 140

U

Unexpected, Taking Care of the 487
Uniform Tire Quality Grading 520
Unleaded Gasoline 378
Used Oil, How to Dispose of 454

V

Vehicle Capacity Load 390
Vehicle Dimensions 518
Vehicle Identification Number 516
Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System 429
  VSA Activation Indicator 65, 429
  VSA Off Switch 430
  VSA System Indicator 65, 429

CONTINUED

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Main Menu

Index

Vehicle Storage 486
VIN 516
Viscosity, Oil 452
Voice Control System 304

W

WARNING, Explanation of iii
Warning Labels, Location of 57
Warranty Coverages 533
Washer, Windshield
  Checking the Fluid Level 458
  Operation 137
Wheels
  Adjusting the Steering 148
  Alignment and Balance 479
  Compact Spare 488
  Nut Wrench 490
Windows
  Auto Reverse 186
  Operating the Power 185
  Rear, Defogger 147
Windshield
  Cleaning 137
  Defroster 207
  Washers 137
Wipers, Windshield
  Changing Blades 472
  Operation 137
  Summer/Winter Position 139
WMA 243
Worn Tires 477
Wrecker, Emergency Towing 513

X

XM® Radio 229

**: Canada only

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Main Menu

Service Information Summary

Gasoline:
Premium unleaded gasoline, pump octane number of 91 or higher.

Fuel Tank Capacity:
19.4 US gal (73 ℓ)

Recommended Engine Oil:
API Premium grade 5W-20 detergent oil (see page 452).

Oil change capacity (including filter):
4.5 US qt (4.3 ℓ)

Automatic Transmission Fluid:
Acura ATF-Z1 (automatic transmission fluid) (see page 459).

Rear Differential Fluid:
Use Acura ATF-Z1 (automatic transmission fluid) only.

Capacity:
SH-AWD differential case
0.77 US qt (0.73 ℓ)
SH-AWD clutch case
2.8 US qt (2.7 ℓ)

Transfer Assembly Fluid:
SAE 90 or SAE 80W-90 viscosity hypoid gear oil, API service classified GL4 or GL5 only.

Power Steering Fluid:
Acura Power Steering Fluid preferred, or another brand of power steering fluid as a temporary replacement. Do not use ATF (see page 461).

Brake Fluid:
Honda Heavy Duty Brake Fluid DOT 3 preferred, or a DOT 3 or DOT 4 brake fluid as a temporary replacement (see page 460).

Tire Pressure (measured cold):
Front:
32 psi (220 kPa , 2.2 kgf/cm^2)

Rear:
30 psi (210 kPa , 2.1 kgf/cm^2)

Spare Tire Pressure:
60 psi (420 kPa , 4.2 kgf/cm^2)

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Main Menu

Owner's Identification

OWNER _____

_____

ADDRESS _____
STREET

_____ _____ _____
CITY STATE/PROVINCE/TERRITORY ZIP CODE/
POSTAL CODE

V. I. N. _____

DELIVERY DATE _____
(Date sold to original retail purchaser)

DEALER NAME _____ DEALER NO. _____

ADDRESS _____
STREET

_____ _____ _____
CITY STATE/PROVINCE/TERRITORY ZIP CODE/
POSTAL CODE

OWNER'S SIGNATURE _____

DEALER'S SIGNATURE _____

This owner's manual should be considered a permanent part of the vehicle and should remain with the vehicle when it is sold.

This owner's manual covers all models of the Acura RL. You may find descriptions of equipment and features that are not on your particular model.

The information and specifications included in this publication were in effect at the time of approval for printing. Honda Motor Co., Ltd. reserves the right, however, to discontinue or change specifications or design at any time without notice and without incurring any obligation whatsoever.

2010 RL

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine